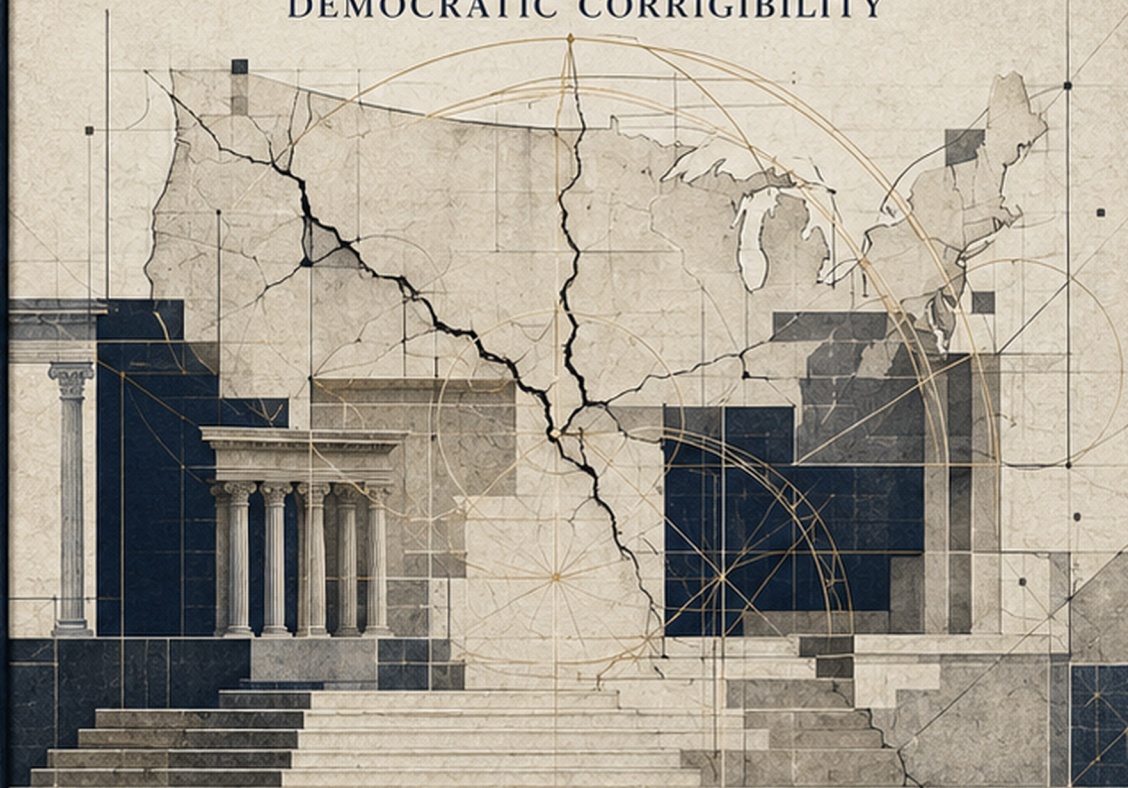


OF
DEMOCRACY
IN
AMERICA

INSTITUTIONS, POWER, AND
DEMOCRATIC CORRIGIBILITY



NOOSOPHE AI

at the initiative of Hieronymus Anonymus

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

Institutions, Power, and Democratic Corrigibility

A contemporary inquiry into power, correction, and democratic government

A NOTE ON TITLE AND METHOD

Of Democracy in America deliberately echoes Alexis de Tocqueville's Democracy in America. This book is not a new edition, abridgment, translation, or continuation of Tocqueville's work. It borrows his question and his method: to examine American democracy through institutions, mores, social conditions, and the unexpected effects produced when they interact.

Its central subject is contemporary American democracy: how power is gained, filtered, constrained, concentrated, challenged, and corrected. Donald Trump is therefore neither the book's sole subject nor a total explanation of its diagnosis. His political career provides an unusually revealing stress test because it exposes the relationship between electoral legitimacy, executive power, institutional friction, legal remedies, partisan reciprocity, and the habits that make peaceful correction possible.

The book's normative standard is not that democracy should avoid error. No system can. The harder standard is democratic corrigibility: whether errors remain detectable and verifiable; whether independent institutions retain corrective capacity; whether correction arrives in time; whether damage is practically reparable; whether lawful choices remain reversible; and whether governing coalitions can still be replaced through legitimate political competition.

Contemporary claims are distinguished, as far as possible, among settled facts, live procedural posture, institutional interpretation, and normative judgment. Where institutions or parties behave asymmetrically, the analysis preserves the asymmetry rather than manufacturing balance. Where a mechanism is genuinely bipartisan or structural, it is treated as such.

The inquiry ends where it began: not with the fantasy of a democracy without conflict, but with the question of whether a society can remain capable of correcting itself without destroying its capacity to govern.

First edition, 2026

CONTENTS

PART I — THE DEMOCRATIC PROMISE.....	4
1. Who Rules When “The People” Rule?.....	5
2. A Government Designed to Frustrate Itself.....	16
3. Federalism: Liberty Through Division, Inequality Through Place.....	27
4. The Courts: Restraint, Power, and Legitimacy.....	37
PART II — BEFORE THE BALLOT.....	50
5. The Right to Vote and the Ability to Use It.....	51
6. The Decision Before the Choice.....	64
7. The Politics of Association.....	78
8. Equal Citizens, Unequal Political Capacity.....	92
PART III — POWERS BETWEEN CITIZEN AND STATE.....	106
9. Money Without a Price Tag.....	107
10. Private Power in a Democratic Republic.....	122
11. The Collapse of a Common Factual World.....	136
12. Who Tells America What America Is?.....	152
PART IV — THE MODERN PRESIDENCY AND THE ADMINISTRATIVE STATE.....	170
13. Governing Through the Permanent State.....	171
14. Appointments, Acting Officials, and the Politics of Personnel.....	189
15. Emergency as a Method of Government.....	202
16. The President and the Machinery of Justice.....	219
PART V — TRUMP AS A STRESS TEST.....	232
17. 2016: Winning Through the System Against the System.....	233
18. Trump I: Discovering the Friction.....	248
19. 2020: Losing Without Accepting Loss.....	264
20. Project 2025 and the Professionalization of Presidential Power.....	279
21. Trump II: Governing With a Map.....	294
PART VI — CAN THE SYSTEM STILL CORRECT ITSELF?.....	311
22. The Institutions That Still Say No.....	312
23. Democracy Beyond Law.....	325
24. Corrigibility.....	337

PART I

THE DEMOCRATIC PROMISE

CHAPTER I

WHO RULES WHEN “THE PEOPLE” RULE?

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The sovereign people, divided into institutions

An American citizen in Los Angeles and an American citizen in Cheyenne possess the same national citizenship. Each can cast one ballot for a senator when a Senate seat is on the ballot in that citizen's state. Each can vote for a presidential candidate. Each can choose a member of the House of Representatives. Yet once those votes enter the constitutional machinery, they do not move through the same channels with the same representational weight. California and Wyoming each send two senators to Washington. California has fifty-four presidential electors; Wyoming has three. California is divided into dozens of congressional districts; Wyoming elects one representative at large. Before any of those arrangements can operate, the federal government must first count the populations of the states, assign House seats, and permit state institutions to draw or maintain the districts through which most House elections occur.

The point is not that one of these citizens is more American than the other. Nor is it that the Constitution accidentally forgot to make every national institution proportional to population. The asymmetry is deliberate. The American republic was built to represent more than one political unit at once. It represents people, but it also represents states. It counts populations, but it elects representatives through territories. It allows majorities to govern, but it also creates institutions in which a national numerical majority is not the only relevant form of political equality.

That is where any contemporary inquiry into American democracy has to begin. “The people” is not a self-executing political category. A population does not simply express a national preference and watch that preference become law. Votes must be converted into districts, seats, electoral votes, legislative majorities, appointments, and offices. The rules of that conversion are not a technical afterthought. They are part of the constitutional definition of who rules.

Tocqueville understood that popular sovereignty was the indispensable starting point for examining the United States. In the first volume of *Democracy in America*, he argued that the political laws of the country could not be understood without beginning from the sovereignty of the people. Yet even in the society he observed, that sovereignty never acted as a single national crowd. It operated through townships, states, elections, courts, legislatures, associations, and federal institutions. The twenty-first-century problem is not whether popular sovereignty disappeared. It is how sovereignty is filtered now, and whether those filters still allow citizens to translate durable political support into governing power.

The Great Compromise was a democratic disagreement, not a clerical solution

The central representational tension of the United States was already visible in Philadelphia in 1787. Large-state delegates wanted representation in the national legislature to reflect population. Small-state delegates feared that such a system would reduce their states to political spectators. The Constitutional Convention nearly broke over the question. The agreement that survived became the Great Compromise: representation by population in the House, equal representation of states in the Senate.

The compromise did not settle a technical dispute about legislative design. It embedded two different theories of political equality into Congress. In the House, a state with more people receives more seats. In the Senate, every state receives two senators. The same constitutional order therefore treats population as decisive in one chamber and irrelevant to the number of seats in the other.

That arrangement is sometimes described today as though one side were simply democratic and the other anti-democratic. The history is harder than that. Equal state representation was part of the price of creating the Union. A federal republic was not conceived merely as a large national electorate partitioned into administrative regions. The states were constituent political communities with their own governments, laws, and identities. Giving them equal standing in one chamber was a way of preserving their political existence inside a stronger national government.

But the bargain had a cost that was equally visible from the beginning. If states of radically different population receive the same number of senators, then citizens are not represented equally when representation is measured by population. The Constitution did not eliminate that contradiction. It institutionalized it.

Two senators, whatever the population

The Senate's rule is stark in its simplicity: two senators from every state. The Seventeenth Amendment, ratified in 1913, transformed how senators were selected by replacing election through state legislatures with direct popular election. It did not change the equality of the states. A state with fewer than 600,000 residents still elects the same number of senators as a state with nearly 40 million.

Using the Census Bureau's July 1, 2025 population estimates, California had about 39.36 million residents and Wyoming about 588,753. Dividing each state's population by its two Senate seats produces a difference of roughly sixty-seven to one in population represented per Senate seat. That is a real and enormous representational disparity. But precision matters. It does not mean that a Wyoming voter literally casts sixty-seven ballots, or that any individual vote is mathematically sixty-seven times more likely to determine an election. It means that, measured by resident population, each Senate seat from California corresponds to roughly sixty-seven times as many people as each Senate seat from Wyoming.

The distinction is more than pedantic. Democratic arguments often become distorted when one measure of political power is casually substituted for another. Population per seat is not turnout. Turnout is not registration. Registration is not the probability of casting the decisive ballot. The Senate's inequality is institutional: it lies in the allocation of seats before any voter enters the polling booth.

Nor is that inequality a defect that ordinary legislation can correct. Article V, the Constitution's amendment provision, gives equal state suffrage in the Senate a special protection. No state can be deprived of that equality without its consent. In a Constitution famous for making amendment difficult, Senate equality is even more deeply entrenched than most other rules. The Constitution does not merely create equal state representation. It protects that arrangement from being removed through the ordinary amendment process against a state's will.

This matters because the Senate's representational logic reaches far beyond legislation. Senators confirm federal judges, including Supreme Court justices. They confirm cabinet secretaries and many senior executive officials. They try impeachments. They participate in treaties and in every federal statute that must pass both chambers. A system that gives equal seats to unequal state populations therefore transmits that inequality into institutions whose decisions bind the entire nation.

The strongest case for the Senate

A serious democratic analysis cannot stop at the ratio. The best defense of the Senate is not that the arrangement is old or sacred. It is that a federal union may legitimately represent territorial political communities as communities. Without some protection for smaller states, defenders argue, a handful of highly populated regions could dominate national politics while less populated states became permanently marginal to the federal bargain.

This defense preserves a democratic good that a purely national-majoritarian account can miss: pluralism among political communities. A resident of Wyoming does not live in a federal administrative district called Wyoming. The state possesses its own constitution, elected government, courts, tax system, police powers, and public institutions. Equal representation in the Senate recognizes the states as constituent members of a union rather than as mere containers for individual voters.

But federalism cannot by itself end the argument, because the Senate exercises national power. A Wyoming senator does not vote only on Wyoming's affairs. The senator votes on laws, judges, budgets, confirmations, and treaties that govern Californians as well. The institution therefore protects the political existence of small states by accepting unequal population weight in decisions that apply to everyone.

The democratic question is not whether territorial representation is inherently illegitimate. It is how much territorial protection can be reconciled with the claim that citizens are political equals. A federal system may reasonably refuse to make every institution a simple mirror of national population. The harder question is what happens when several such filters overlap, and whether a large national constituency can repeatedly win votes while finding the route to governing power increasingly indirect.

The House looks more majoritarian, but it is not a national proportional election

If the Senate represents states, the House of Representatives is supposed to be the chamber closest to population. After each decennial census, the Census Bureau apportions 435 voting seats among the fifty states. Every state receives at least one seat. The remaining seats are assigned through the method of equal proportions. States with more people generally receive more representatives.

Even here, however, “the people” do not appear as one national electorate. Americans do not cast a single national House vote that is then converted proportionally into 435 party seats. They elect representatives in separate congressional districts. A party can win 70 percent of the vote in one district and obtain one seat, while another party can win 51 percent in another district and also obtain one seat. Votes above the threshold needed to win do not purchase additional representation in that district.

That is why the national House popular vote must be handled carefully. It is an important measure of national political support, but it is not the legal object that the electoral system converts into seats. Geography matters. District boundaries matter. Uncontested races matter. Third-party candidates matter. Turnout differs from place to place. A national difference between vote share and seat share may reveal a serious representational pattern, but it does not by itself prove partisan manipulation.

The distinction becomes especially important when discussing gerrymandering. Voters are not distributed randomly across the country. Democratic voters are often concentrated in urban areas; Republican voters may be more evenly distributed across other geographies, depending on the state and period. That geographic concentration can create inefficient vote distributions even under neutral districting criteria. Partisan mapmakers can then deliberately amplify those patterns through packing and cracking. The first effect is geography; the second is intentional design. A credible book on democracy has to keep them separate.

For the 119th Congress elected in 2024, the House’s official party division began at 220 Republicans and 215 Democrats. Whatever one concludes about individual maps, that narrow division is important evidence against a simple claim that the population-based chamber has ceased to be competitive. Control of the House remains capable of changing with relatively small shifts across a limited number of districts.

The existence of close national competition does not erase distortions inside particular states or districts. It does show why the democratic question must be stated more precisely than “Are votes proportional to seats?” A district-based chamber is designed to represent territories and constituencies, not to function as a national party-list parliament. The relevant tests include proportionality, but also contestability, responsiveness, and the practical possibility of alternation.

Why 435 matters

The number 435 feels constitutional because Americans have lived with it for so long. It is not. Congress fixed the modern size of the House by statute in the early twentieth century, and the Permanent Apportionment Act of 1929 established the enduring reapportionment framework. The Constitution requires that each state have at least one representative, but it does not command a House of exactly 435 voting members.

This fact reveals a recurring feature of American democracy: some of its most consequential structures are mixtures of constitutional rules and ordinary law. Equal representation in the Senate is extraordinarily difficult to alter. The size of the House could be changed by Congress. Those differences matter for democratic correction because they determine whether a representational problem is politically reversible.

A fixed House also produces an effect independent of partisan redistricting. As the national population grows, the average congressional constituency grows with it. A representative today speaks for vastly more people than a representative did when the House reached its modern size. That may affect responsiveness, constituent service, campaign costs, and the distance between representative and represented. Enlarging

the House would not eliminate gerrymandering or guarantee proportionality. It would, however, change the scale at which popular representation operates.

That possibility belongs mainly to a later discussion of reform. For now, its importance is analytical. Not every inequality in American representation is frozen at the same constitutional depth. Some are core features of the federal bargain. Others are policy choices that Americans have grown accustomed to treating as constitutional facts.

Before representation comes counting

Before a House seat can be assigned, the government has to know how many people live in each state. The census is therefore not merely a statistical exercise. It is part of the machinery of political power.

The Constitution requires an “actual Enumeration” every ten years. The Census Bureau then uses the apportionment population to distribute House seats among the states. For the 2020 apportionment, that population included the resident population of the fifty states, plus certain U.S. military and federal civilian personnel overseas and their dependents who could be allocated to a home state. The District of Columbia and Puerto Rico were counted, but they were not included in the population used to distribute the 435 voting House seats because they do not have voting representation in the House.

This sequence is easy to overlook. Citizens usually encounter democracy at the moment of voting. Representation begins earlier, with decisions about who is counted, where a person is counted, which population measure is used, and how whole seats are divided among states. A small change near the apportionment cutoff can determine which state receives the final seat, and that allocation can last for a decade.

The census also exposes a conceptual distinction that becomes politically explosive when ignored: population is not the same thing as electorate. Children are counted. Noncitizen residents are counted under the current apportionment framework. People who never register or never vote are counted. Representatives legislate for all of them.

There are coherent arguments on both sides of that design. One view holds that representation belongs to persons who live under the laws, whether or not they can vote. Representatives allocate schools, transportation, emergency assistance, public health resources, and federal programs that affect children and noncitizens as well as voters. Another view argues that political representation should track citizens, or citizens of voting age, more closely because elections are exercises of political membership rather than general population service.

The dispute is not just statistical. It asks what a representative represents: voters, citizens, or inhabitants. Those categories overlap, but they are not identical. Chapter 5 will return to the contemporary legal disputes over citizenship verification and access to the ballot. Here the important point is simpler. The American people become politically countable before they become electorally active, and the unit used for representation is not identical to the unit used for voting.

The Electoral College mixes the two logics

The presidency brings the two representational systems together. Each state receives a number of electors equal to its total congressional representation: its House seats plus

its two Senate seats. The Electoral College therefore contains both a population-sensitive component and an equal-state component.

In the 2024 election, California had fifty-four electoral votes and Wyoming three. The ratio per resident is far less extreme than in the Senate because the House component gives populous states many more electors. Still, every state receives the equivalent of its two Senate seats in addition to its House representation, so smaller states receive somewhat more electoral votes per resident.

The more politically consequential distortion, however, often comes from a different rule: the way states allocate their electors. Most states use winner-take-all. Maine and Nebraska do not; both award two electors to the statewide winner and allocate the remainder by congressional district. Nothing in the Constitution creates one universal national winner-take-all rule. State law determines much of the mechanism.

This produces two distinct inequalities that are often collapsed into the single phrase “the Electoral College.” The first is allocation: small states receive a modest representational premium because of the Senate component. The second is strategic importance: winner-take-all encourages campaigns to focus intensely on closely divided states while spending less effort on additional votes in states whose outcome appears secure.

A Republican voter in a strongly Democratic state still casts a real vote. A Democratic voter in a strongly Republican state does too. Their votes contribute to the state result and can matter if coalitions change over time. But campaigns behave rationally. If one additional vote in Pennsylvania, Wisconsin, or Arizona is more likely to affect the allocation of electors than one additional vote in California or Oklahoma, candidates will concentrate visits, advertising, field operations, and policy attention accordingly.

Thus the Electoral College does not merely translate votes. It shapes the geography of political persuasion.

2016: a divergence the system permits

The 2016 presidential election is the contemporary case that makes the architecture impossible to ignore. Hillary Clinton received more votes nationwide than Donald Trump, but Trump won the presidency through the Electoral College. That result was not a recounting mistake or a constitutional anomaly. It was an outcome the system permits because the relevant legal contest is state by state for electors, not a single national popular vote.

The significance of 2016 should not be exaggerated. The Electoral College is not a machine that automatically reverses the national popular vote. In 2020, Joe Biden won both the national popular vote and the Electoral College. In 2024, Donald Trump did the same. The National Archives records the 2024 electoral result as 312 votes for Trump and 226 for Kamala Harris.

The proper conclusion is therefore structural, not partisan. The system permits divergence between national vote totals and presidential outcome. Whether that possibility benefits Republicans, Democrats, or neither in a future political geography cannot be read directly from the constitutional text. A rule can have a partisan effect in a given era without having been invented by that party or guaranteeing the same advantage forever.

This distinction matters throughout the book. A structural asymmetry should first be described as structure. Only then should we ask who benefits from it now, who benefited before, whether a party has deliberately intensified it, and whether the effect is reversible.

Four different meanings of “the people”

By this point, the phrase “the people” has fractured into at least four politically relevant units.

First is the person: the individual who lives under American law and whose presence may count toward representation. Second is the voter: the person legally eligible and practically able to participate in an election. Third is the district or state population: the territorial population used to apportion representation. Fourth is the state itself: a constitutional unit with political standing that does not rise and fall in direct proportion to population.

American representative government moves constantly among these units. Much of the country’s democratic argument consists of one side making a claim based on one unit and another side answering from a different one.

A critic says: Californians and Wyomingites are not represented equally in the Senate. The defender answers: California and Wyoming are represented equally as states. Both statements are true because they measure different political subjects.

A critic says: a presidential candidate won more votes nationwide and lost the election. The defender answers: the presidential election is conducted through electors allocated by states. Again, both statements can be true.

A critic says: House seat share differs from national party vote share. The defender answers: House elections occur in districts rather than through national proportional allocation. Once more, the disagreement is partly about which unit the institution is supposed to represent.

The existence of multiple units does not make every outcome democratically legitimate. It does explain why arguments about American democracy so often talk past one another. Equality has to be specified. Equality of whom, in relation to what institution, for what purpose?

“One person, one vote” is not the whole constitutional system

Modern constitutional law strongly protects population equality among congressional districts within a state. The phrase “one person, one vote” captures a powerful democratic principle. But it should not be mistaken for a universal description of every federal institution.

The Senate explicitly rejects population-proportional representation among states. Interstate House districts cannot be mathematically identical because each state must receive at least one whole seat. The Electoral College incorporates both state equality and population-based House representation. The presidency is not decided by a national district of all voters.

That does not empty the principle of meaning. It clarifies where it applies. American democracy contains institutions designed to approximate individual equality and institutions designed to preserve territorial equality. The tension between them is not an exception to the system. It is one of the system’s foundations.

The danger of turning structure into partisan mythology

The current partisan map makes it tempting to narrate these institutions as weapons owned by one coalition. That is analytically dangerous. The Senate's equal state representation predates the Republican and Democratic parties in anything like their modern form. The Electoral College's structure predates the current urban-rural divide. The 435-seat House predates today's electoral coalitions. Political geography changes.

This does not mean partisan effects are imaginary. A structural rule can advantage one coalition for long periods. Nor does it mean parties are passive. They may redesign districts, alter election rules, or pursue institutional strategies that amplify an existing advantage. But describing the underlying structure as a partisan invention obscures the deeper question: would the rule remain defensible if the partisan advantage reversed?

That reciprocity test will recur throughout this book. A constitutional rule should not be judged solely by who benefits from it today. But neither should its age immunize it from democratic scrutiny. The relevant question is what the rule preserves, what it costs, and whether those costs remain compatible with genuine political competition.

Competition is a better test than perfect symmetry

No large representative democracy can translate every political preference into governing power with mathematical purity. Districts must have boundaries. Seats are whole numbers. Federal systems represent territories as well as persons. Electoral systems produce winners and losers. A demand for perfect symmetry can therefore become an abstraction as misleading as complacency about obvious inequality.

A more practical democratic test is competition. Can citizens who lose under the current arrangement organize, persuade, win elections, and eventually control government? Can a large national constituency translate support into a plausible path to power, even if not every institution mirrors its exact percentage of the population? Can a governing coalition lose?

That is why the House's narrow 220-215 division after the 2024 election matters. It does not prove that representation is fair in every district or state. It shows that the principal population-based chamber remains electorally contestable. That is also why 2024's alignment between the national presidential vote and Electoral College winner matters. It does not resolve the normative debate over the institution. It shows that the structure does not inevitably separate popular plurality from presidential victory.

The contrary evidence matters too. The Senate's population disparity is not temporary. Article V makes its core structure extraordinarily resistant to reform. The Electoral College can produce a president who did not win the national popular-vote plurality. A fixed House size can create ever larger constituencies. Census rules and districting decisions can shape representation before voters ever choose a candidate.

The democratic picture is therefore neither simple vindication nor simple indictment. It is a system of unequal channels that remains competitive but asks citizens to accept several different meanings of equality at once.

What the system is trying to preserve

The deepest mistake would be to treat every filter between a voter and national power as a defect. Democratic institutions often exist precisely because societies do not trust a single majority acting through a single mechanism.

The Senate preserves states. Bicameralism forces two differently constituted chambers to agree. The Electoral College preserves a state role in presidential selection. District-based House elections tie representatives to geographic constituencies rather than national party lists. Census-based apportionment gives representation to people who live under the laws, not merely to those who vote.

Each of these choices preserves something. Each also excludes an alternative form of equality.

If the Senate protects Wyoming as a political community, it reduces the relative population weight of Californians. If district elections protect geographic representation, they prevent national party vote totals from converting proportionally into seats. If total population is used for apportionment, nonvoters contribute to representation; if only citizens or eligible voters were used, large classes of residents would cease to count equally toward the size of representation even though representatives govern them.

Democratic design is not the elimination of contradiction. It is the institutionalization of contradictions a society believes it can live with.

The point at which protection becomes obstruction

That formulation still leaves a hard limit. A political system cannot answer every criticism of unequal representation by invoking federalism, history, or institutional complexity. If representational filters become so strong that a durable political majority cannot realistically turn electoral support into governing authority, then the system ceases merely to moderate majority rule and begins to obstruct democratic correction.

The threshold is not reached every time a party wins the national popular vote and loses one institution. Federal systems can legitimately produce such mismatches. Nor is it reached because one chamber is difficult to control. The danger becomes more serious when multiple filters reinforce one another across time: unequal Senate representation, a presidential allocation system capable of popular-vote divergence, district design, barriers to participation, and institutional vetoes that collectively make political loss difficult to translate into later political victory.

The relevant question is therefore longitudinal. Can a coalition that loses under the rules come back under the same rules? Can it win the House, Senate, presidency, states, and courts over time through elections and lawful appointments? Or do the representational channels increasingly lock one side out despite durable public support?

This is the first appearance of a test that will run through the rest of the book. Democracy does not require that every decision be immediately reversible. It requires that power remain corrigible: that those who do not currently control the system retain meaningful ways to become those who do.

The first act-evidence

A formal principle becomes politically real when it can be observed under conditions of cost. The claim that Americans govern themselves is therefore not fully proven by the existence of elections. The stronger evidence is that citizens can use the system to change who governs.

For this chapter, the act-evidence is straightforward: can a large, durable, politically coherent constituency convert its support into a realistic path to legislative and executive power without first changing the constitutional rules under which it competes?

A second test follows immediately: when a coalition loses, does it remain capable of returning?

Those questions are more demanding than asking whether every vote has identical institutional weight, because the Constitution plainly does not provide identical weight in every institution. They are also more useful. A democracy can tolerate many forms of representational imperfection while it remains genuinely competitive. It becomes something different when the losing side retains the ceremony of participation but no credible path back to power.

From representation to restraint

The American people do not rule through a single voice. They rule through a constitutional argument among persons, populations, districts, states, chambers, and elections. That argument has never been clean. It was not clean in 1787, when the Union nearly failed over representation. It is not clean now, when a citizen's relationship to national power depends on where that citizen lives, which institution is being chosen, how a state allocates electors, how districts are drawn, and how populations are counted.

Yet complexity is not itself democratic failure. The constitutional system was designed to disperse power rather than simply to count it once. Its legitimacy depends on whether that dispersion still leaves political power open to competition.

This is the first contradiction of American democracy: the people are sovereign, but the people never appear institutionally as one undivided body. They appear through forms that protect some equalities by sacrificing others.

The next question is what happens after those forms produce power. A system may convert votes into offices and still fail if the resulting government cannot act. Or it may act so efficiently that the institutions meant to restrain it become ornamental. The next chapter turns from representation to the architecture of frustration: a government deliberately designed to stop itself.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Senate Historical Office, "Equal State Representation."
<https://www.senate.gov/about/origins-foundations/senate-and-constitution/equal-state-representation.htm>
- U.S. Senate, Constitution of the United States.
https://www.senate.gov/civics/constitution_item/constitution.htm
- Constitution Annotated, Article V and equal suffrage in the Senate.
<https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/article-5/>

- Constitution Annotated, “Equal Representation of States in the Senate.” https://constitution.congress.gov/browse/essay/artI-S3-C1-1/ALDE_00013339/
- U.S. Census Bureau, QuickFacts / Vintage 2025 population estimates. <https://www.census.gov/quickfacts/>
- U.S. Census Bureau, “2020 Census Apportionment Results.” <https://www.census.gov/data/tables/2020/dec/2020-apportionment-data.html>
- U.S. Census Bureau, “Computing Apportionment.” <https://www.census.gov/topics/public-sector/congressional-apportionment/about/computing.html>
- U.S. House of Representatives, History, Art & Archives, “Determining Apportionment.” <https://history.house.gov/Institution/Apportionment/Determining-Apportionment/>
- U.S. House of Representatives, History, Art & Archives, “Party Divisions.” <https://history.house.gov/Institution/Party-Divisions/Party-Divisions/>
- National Archives, “2024 Electoral College Results.” <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2024>
- Federal Election Commission, “Election Results and Voting Information.” <https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/>
- Federal Election Commission, “Federal Elections 2016.” <https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/federal-elections-2016/>
- Federal Election Commission, “Federal Elections 2020.” <https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/federal-elections-2020/>
- Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, Part I, trans. Henry Reeve (1835), Project Gutenberg research text. <https://www.gutenberg.org/files/815/815-h/815-h.htm>

CHAPTER 2

A GOVERNMENT DESIGNED TO FRUSTRATE ITSELF

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

A mandate meets a machine built to resist it

Americans often speak about elections as though they deliver instructions. A candidate runs on a program, voters choose, a president takes office, congressional majorities are counted, and the new government is expected to act. Then the machinery begins. A bill must pass two chambers organized on different principles. Money must be appropriated. Senior officials may require Senate confirmation. Courts can review what the government does. Agencies must follow statutes and administrative procedures. Committees can subpoena records. A president may veto. Congress may refuse. A dispute can move into litigation and remain there long after the political moment that produced it has passed.

To a voter who believes an election has settled a question, the result can look like dysfunction. To the constitutional system, much of that dysfunction is the point. The American government was not designed merely to translate electoral victory into rapid national action. It was designed to make power negotiate with itself.

That design expresses a deep democratic suspicion. A majority may be legitimate and still be dangerous. A president may be elected and still exceed lawful authority. Congress may represent voters and still abuse its own powers. The judiciary may restrain the elected branches and still become too powerful. The constitutional answer is not to identify one institution that can be trusted permanently. It is to distribute authority among institutions that can frustrate one another.

The difficulty is that the Constitution separated branches, while modern politics connected them through parties. A president and a congressional majority may belong to the same coalition, depend on the same voters, raise money from overlapping networks, and fear the same primary electorate. Formal rivalry between institutions can then weaken precisely when the Constitution appears to expect it. When government is divided, by contrast, institutional rivalry and partisan rivalry can reinforce each other until ordinary governing becomes difficult.

The question is therefore not whether the United States has separation of powers. It plainly does. The harder question is when those separated powers are actually used, by whom, and at what political cost.

Friction is not an accident

The Constitution does not divide authority into watertight boxes. It overlaps powers deliberately. Congress legislates, but the president may veto. The president nominates many senior officers, but the Senate must consent. Congress appropriates money, but the executive administers the programs. The House impeaches, but the Senate tries the case. Courts interpret and enforce law, but judges are appointed through a political process that involves the president and Senate. Even constitutional amendment

bypasses the ordinary legislative process and imposes supermajority thresholds far beyond ordinary lawmaking.

This is not merely separation. It is structured dependence. A branch can possess an important power without possessing everything needed to make that power effective.

Congress can demand information, but may need courts or the executive branch to enforce a subpoena. Congress can appropriate money, but agencies and the Office of Management and Budget control much of the timing and mechanics of execution. A president can nominate, but may need Senate consent. The House can impeach by a simple majority, but removal requires two thirds of senators present. The vice president and Cabinet can invoke the Twenty-Fifth Amendment's inability process, but if the president contests the declaration, keeping the vice president in control ultimately requires two-thirds votes in both Houses.

The architecture is full of brakes. That is why the language of democratic efficiency can mislead. A government that moves slowly is not necessarily malfunctioning. Sometimes delay is the mechanism by which competing institutions expose the stakes, force justification, and prevent a temporary majority from making an irreversible decision too easily.

But a brake can protect a system only if the system is still capable of moving.

Congress can investigate, but knowing is not the same as compelling

Congressional oversight is one of the most visible forms of institutional checking. Committees hold hearings, demand documents, summon witnesses, issue reports, and sometimes subpoena people who would rather not cooperate. The constitutional basis is not a single clause saying "Congress shall conduct oversight." The power developed as an incident of legislation and the other functions Congress must perform. A legislature that cannot learn how laws are being administered cannot legislate intelligently, decide how much money to spend, or determine whether new safeguards are needed.

A subpoena therefore has legal force. Yet its power is less automatic than public debate often assumes. When a witness or executive official refuses to comply, Congress must choose an enforcement path. Criminal contempt can produce a referral to the Justice Department. Civil enforcement can ask a court to order compliance. Historically, Congress also possessed an inherent contempt power under which a chamber could detain someone obstructing its work, but that mechanism has largely disappeared from modern practice.

The criminal route contains an obvious structural weakness. Congress may find itself asking the executive branch to prosecute an executive-branch official for following the executive branch's position in a dispute with Congress. Administrations of both parties have resisted such prosecutions when officials acted under presidential claims of privilege. The names change. The institutional problem does not.

Civil litigation avoids that particular dependence because a judge can decide whether compliance is legally required. But litigation introduces another form of weakness: time. Congress can win after the information no longer matters politically. A subpoena dispute that lasts through an election, a change of congressional control, or the end of an administration may produce a legal precedent and still fail as an instrument of timely democratic correction.

Time is one of the least visible powers in the constitutional system. A branch does not always need to win a dispute if it can postpone the other branch's victory until the decision has lost practical value.

Oversight is political because politics chooses what to see

No congressional committee can investigate everything. Chairs choose subjects. Majorities choose which hearings to hold, which witnesses to call, which documents to demand, and which allegations deserve months of attention. Oversight is therefore selective by nature. A politically motivated investigation is not necessarily illegitimate. Political incentives can uncover real misconduct. Opposition parties often have the strongest reason to look for what an administration would prefer to hide.

The deeper problem is not partisanship itself. It is whether institutional scrutiny survives when partisan incentives reverse.

A Republican committee investigating a Democratic administration proves that Congress can act as an adversary to the executive. A Democratic committee investigating a Republican administration proves the same thing in reverse. The more demanding test comes when Congress and the president belong to the same party.

In 2025, the Republican-controlled House Oversight Committee subpoenaed the Justice Department for records related to Jeffrey Epstein while Donald Trump was president, and the department began producing documents. That episode does not establish that same-party oversight is generally vigorous. It matters because it prevents an equally simplistic conclusion that it is impossible. Institutional independence survives in degrees, and the strongest evidence appears when legislators impose a real cost on their own coalition.

The act matters more than the speech. A member of Congress can praise institutional independence while avoiding every vote that would burden a co-partisan president. The democratic test is whether Congress uses subpoenas, appropriations, confirmations, legislation, or public findings when doing so has an electoral price.

The power of the purse is harder than a hearing

Congress's most material check is money. The Constitution provides that no money may be drawn from the Treasury except through appropriations made by law. The principle sounds simple: Congress decides what funds are legally available; the executive spends according to law.

Modern administration makes the line less simple in practice. Agencies must schedule grants, review applications, manage contracts, prevent waste, respond to changing conditions, and sometimes delay spending for reasons the law permits. The executive therefore needs substantial discretion in how programs are administered.

That discretion becomes constitutionally sensitive when delay stops looking like administration and starts looking like cancellation. If Congress appropriates money for a program and the president opposes the policy, may the executive simply make the money unavailable?

The modern statutory answer grew out of Richard Nixon's conflicts with Congress. The Impoundment Control Act of 1974 was designed to prevent the president from turning administrative control over spending into a general power to cancel

congressional policy. The president can propose rescissions. Congress can agree. The executive can make legitimate programmatic adjustments. But a president does not possess a standing line-item veto over appropriations merely because the money has not yet left the Treasury.

This is separation of powers in one of its least theatrical forms. No troops are deployed. No impeachment vote occurs. A dispute over an apportionment schedule, grant pause, or budget account can nevertheless decide whether a law enacted by Congress remains law in practice.

Trump II and the return of impoundment

The second Trump administration turned that boundary into a major contemporary conflict. Beginning in 2025, executive orders and agency directives paused, reviewed, reduced, or redirected funding across a wide range of federal programs. The temptation for both supporters and critics was to generalize: either the president was merely managing the executive branch, or the administration was illegally impounding Congress's money.

The legal record is more useful because it is less tidy.

The Government Accountability Office, an institution in the legislative branch, issued a series of account-specific decisions. It found violations of the Impoundment Control Act in some cases. On June 16, 2025, for example, GAO concluded that the Institute of Museum and Library Services violated the Act by withholding appropriated funds after an executive order directed the agency to reduce its functions. GAO later found violations involving Head Start and certain National Institutes of Health grant funds.

But GAO did not declare every administration pause unlawful. It found no violation in other cases where the record supported a programmatic delay or otherwise lawful administration. That difference is critical. The democratic issue is not whether a president may ever delay spending. It is whether executive management remains subordinate to the legal choices Congress actually made.

The IMLS decision offers a clean institutional example. Congress had created functions and appropriated funds. The executive wished to reduce the agency's operations. GAO's conclusion was not a policy endorsement of libraries or museums. It was an allocation-of-authority judgment: executive policy could not simply make appropriated money unavailable when the law still required the agency to carry out the funded functions.

The value of that example lies in its impersonality. Separation of powers is strongest when the rule can be stated without asking whether the reader likes the program.

The same president can use the constitutional route

The events of 2025 also produced the counterexample that a polemical account would be tempted to omit. The Trump administration did not rely only on unilateral withholding. On June 3, 2025, the president transmitted a formal rescission proposal under the statutory process. Congress considered the cuts. A rescission bill passed, and President Trump signed the Rescissions Act of 2025 on July 24.

The substantive policy was the same kind of thing an impoundment dispute might concern: spending that the executive wanted to eliminate. The institutional route was different. The president proposed; Congress decided; the law changed.

That contrast is more important than the particular programs involved. It reveals what constitutional correction looks like when it works through ordinary authority. An elected president is not powerless to challenge spending enacted by a prior coalition. A new Congress is not bound forever by an old appropriation. Democratic correction permits policy reversal. The question is who has authority to reverse it.

If Congress changes its mind through legislation, the policy has changed democratically. If the president achieves the same result by preventing execution of a law Congress did not repeal, the constitutional question is entirely different.

The clock can transfer power without changing the text

The most difficult impoundment disputes show why legal form alone is insufficient. In late 2025, litigation over foreign-aid funds proposed for rescission close to their expiration dates raised the possibility of what critics called a pocket rescission: if funds expire while Congress is still considering a presidential proposal, inaction can begin to resemble cancellation.

In *Department of State v. AIDS Vaccine Advocacy Coalition*, the Supreme Court granted a stay on September 26, 2025, blocking a district-court order that would have required the executive to obligate certain funds. The Court explicitly said that the stay was not a final determination on the merits.

That procedural caution matters. It would be inaccurate to say the Supreme Court definitively recognized a broad presidential power to conduct pocket rescissions. Yet the interim order had a material effect because appropriations exist in time. If money expires before a final judgment arrives, a temporary procedural victory can become practically irreversible.

The episode exposes a recurring constitutional truth: a branch can gain power from timing without receiving a new constitutional power. Delay can change the real allocation of authority even when the legal text remains untouched.

The same problem appears in congressional subpoenas. It will appear again in immigration litigation, emergency powers, agency removals, and election disputes. Democratic correction must not only exist. It must arrive before the thing to be corrected becomes irreversible.

Appointments divide control too

The Constitution applies the same logic of shared power to personnel. For many principal federal officers, the President nominates and the Senate provides advice and consent.

The arrangement is not a search for political neutrality. Its democratic function is institutional: an elected President can choose a governing team, but designated permanent offices require a second institution to accept the choice.

Modern Senate procedure has reduced some of the friction surrounding nominations, while vacancies law allows temporary officials to keep government operating when offices are empty.

Those mechanisms create a familiar tradeoff. Governing capacity requires staffing and continuity; shared appointment requires visibility, time limits, and a meaningful role for the Senate.

The detailed machinery belongs later in the book. At the level of separation of powers, the point is simpler: personnel authority is another place where presidential control is deliberately incomplete.

Impeachment is powerful because it is almost unusable

The Constitution's ultimate congressional check on an executive officer is impeachment. The House has the sole power to impeach. The Senate tries the case. Conviction requires two thirds of senators present.

That threshold is not an arbitrary obstacle added to make accountability difficult. It protects the independent presidential mandate. If a bare congressional majority could remove a president for ordinary political disagreement, the United States would cease to operate as a presidential system in any meaningful sense. Every shift in congressional control could become an invitation to overturn the previous presidential election.

The same protection creates the opposite danger. In a polarized party system, two thirds of the Senate may be nearly impossible to assemble even when serious misconduct is credibly alleged. Impeachment then becomes strongest as law and weakest as politics at precisely the moment party loyalty is strongest.

The Constitution speaks of treason, bribery, and other high crimes and misdemeanors. Historical practice does not reduce the phrase to violations of the criminal code. Impeachment is a constitutional remedy for serious abuses of office and public trust. Nor does every criminal offense automatically become impeachable. The relevant question is the relationship between the conduct and the office.

This distinction matters because impeachment debates routinely borrow the vocabulary of criminal trials. An acquittal in the Senate does not mean a criminal court found the president innocent. A senator's vote to convict is not a criminal conviction. The process protects the constitutional system through political judgment, not through ordinary criminal punishment.

Nixon, Trump, and the missing variable in the constitutional diagram

Richard Nixon never received a final House impeachment vote. He resigned in August 1974 after the House Judiciary Committee approved articles of impeachment and his support among congressional Republicans deteriorated. The constitutional mechanism produced an effect before the formal sanction was completed because removal became politically credible.

Donald Trump was impeached twice. In 2020, after the first impeachment, Mitt Romney was the only Republican senator to vote for conviction on the first article. In 2021, after the second impeachment, seven Republican senators voted guilty on the article charging incitement of insurrection. The vote was 57 to 43 for conviction, a clear majority and still short of the constitutionally required two thirds.

The Constitution had not changed between Nixon and Trump. The threshold had not changed. What changed was the political environment in which members of the president's own party assessed the cost of abandoning him.

This is the point at which a constitutional diagram becomes insufficient. Branches are staffed by politicians. Politicians belong to parties. Parties organize elections, careers, fundraising, committee power, and future opportunities. Institutional loyalty therefore competes with partisan loyalty.

The most demanding act of separation of powers is not an opposition party investigating a president it already wants to defeat. It is a legislator deciding that protecting an institution requires imposing a cost on a president whose success is tied to that legislator's own coalition.

The high threshold also protects democracy

That observation should not become an argument for making impeachment easy. The best defense of the two-thirds requirement is powerful. Elections have to mean something. A president who pursues a controversial immigration policy, tax program, regulatory agenda, or foreign policy cannot become removable merely because enough members of Congress regard the program as destructive.

Recent impeachment practice reinforces the warning. The House impeached Homeland Security Secretary Alejandro Mayorkas in 2024 in a dispute deeply intertwined with immigration policy and executive enforcement. The Senate disposed of the articles without a full trial. In later years, members introduced additional impeachment resolutions against President Trump that did not command House support.

The existence of impeachment as a live partisan weapon can weaken the signal the remedy is supposed to send. If every intense disagreement becomes a candidate for impeachment, the public may stop distinguishing ordinary conflict from constitutional emergency.

Yet fear of normalization cannot make the remedy unusable. A safeguard that is treated as too sacred to employ under any circumstances ceases to safeguard anything. The system again relies on judgment rather than formula: serious enough to justify overriding an election, but not so narrowly defined that grave abuses become untouchable.

The Twenty-Fifth Amendment solves a different problem

American political language often throws impeachment and the Twenty-Fifth Amendment into the same category: ways to "remove" a president. Constitutionally they solve different problems.

Impeachment addresses misconduct. The Twenty-Fifth Amendment addresses vacancy and inability. Under Section 3, a president can voluntarily transfer the powers and duties of the office to the vice president and later reclaim them. George W. Bush did so during medical procedures. Joe Biden did so in 2021 while undergoing a colonoscopy. These moments are constitutional success precisely because they were routine rather than dramatic.

Section 4 addresses the harder case in which the president cannot or will not declare an inability. The vice president and a majority of the principal officers of the executive

departments can transmit a declaration that the president is unable to discharge the powers and duties of office. If the president contests that declaration, the dispute can move to Congress. Maintaining the vice president as Acting President ultimately requires two thirds of both Houses.

Again, the system is deliberately difficult. A cabinet should not be able to stage a political coup against the elected president by ordinary majority vote. The vice president is indispensable to the process, and Congress must meet a supermajority threshold if the president insists that no inability exists.

After January 6, 2021, members of Congress publicly urged Vice President Mike Pence to invoke Section 4. The House adopted a resolution calling on him to do so. He did not. The House then proceeded through the distinct mechanism of impeachment.

The episode should not be used here to retell January 6. Its importance is conceptual. A president who is capable of exercising the office but is accused of abusing it presents an impeachment question, not automatically an inability question. Constitutional categories matter most when political anger makes them tempting to blur.

Some friction protects continuity rather than restraint

Not every constitutional brake exists to stop an officeholder. Some exist to prevent a vacuum of authority.

The Twenty-Fifth Amendment clarified that when a president dies, resigns, or is removed, the vice president becomes president. It created a process for filling a vice-presidential vacancy through presidential nomination and confirmation by both Houses. It created procedures for temporary incapacity. The system thereby frustrates impulsive displacement while making continuity possible.

That is an important corrective to the idea that constitutional friction is merely obstruction. Resilience sometimes requires the opposite: a clear path for power to continue moving when a person can no longer exercise it.

The same logic explains acting officials, succession statutes, and temporary transfers. Democracy depends not only on preventing power from concentrating but also on preventing lawful power from disappearing.

The Constitution can make itself difficult to correct

Some disputes cannot be resolved by ordinary statute because the contested rule is part of the Constitution itself. Article V makes constitutional amendment intentionally difficult. Congress can propose an amendment with two-thirds approval in each chamber, or a convention can be triggered through applications from two thirds of state legislatures. Ratification then requires three quarters of the states.

The president has no formal veto over an Article V amendment. The process belongs to extraordinary supermajorities and the states.

The democratic defense is easy to understand. A Constitution that could be rewritten by the same narrow majority that passes ordinary laws would offer little protection against temporary political passions. Fundamental rules are supposed to outlast ordinary electoral swings.

The cost is corrigibility. When the source of a democratic problem lies in the constitutional structure, the threshold for change becomes extraordinarily high.

Equal suffrage in the Senate is the strongest example: Article V itself states that no state may be deprived of equal Senate suffrage without its consent.

The rule that most clearly departs from population equality is also the rule most deeply insulated from population-majoritarian correction.

Chapter 1 showed why that arrangement exists. Chapter 2 adds a second question: what happens when a system designed to frustrate power also frustrates reform of its own architecture?

Modern parties connect what the Constitution separates

The phrase “separation of powers” can create a false image of three institutions staring suspiciously at one another from separate constitutional islands. Modern American government is more entangled.

A Republican president usually prefers a Republican Congress. Republican members of Congress usually prefer the president’s political success to the success of the Democratic opposition. The same relationship operates in reverse under Democratic government. Shared electoral incentives can therefore suppress the institutional jealousy the constitutional design was expected to produce.

When government is divided, the opposite problem appears. Every disagreement can become an institutional confrontation because constitutional conflict and partisan conflict align. Oversight intensifies. Nominations slow. Appropriations become bargaining weapons. Shutdown threats become plausible. Executive orders and litigation become substitutes for legislation.

The result is not the disappearance of separation of powers. It is a transformation in how the checking function is distributed. Courts, states, inspectors general, career officials, individual legislators, minority-party committees, and public records may become more important when a co-partisan congressional majority declines to confront the executive.

The constitutional structure remains. Its effective guardians change with political alignment.

Too much restraint can produce more executive power

There is a final paradox. A constitutional system can become so difficult to move through ordinary legislation that presidents of both parties search for alternative routes.

If Congress cannot act, the executive can turn to executive orders, emergency statutes, enforcement discretion, regulatory interpretation, procurement, grants, sanctions, and administrative reorganization. Each tool may have a lawful basis. The accumulation changes the center of political gravity.

Gridlock can therefore strengthen the presidency indirectly. The more citizens expect national problems to be solved quickly, the greater the pressure on the only nationally elected official who can often act without assembling a new congressional coalition for every step.

This is why the democratic defense of friction cannot be absolute. A state that can never act through ordinary majoritarian channels does not become more democratic

simply because it has more veto points. It may become more dependent on emergency authority, judicial decisions, or administrative improvisation.

The question is not maximum restraint. It is the right amount of restraint for a government that must still govern.

The act-evidence is intra-party constraint

The Constitution can tell us that Congress possesses powers. It cannot tell us whether legislators will use them when the cost is political.

For this chapter, the strongest act-evidence is therefore simple to state and difficult to satisfy: will Congress impose a meaningful institutional cost on a president of its own party when doing so threatens the coalition's immediate interests?

That cost could take many forms. A committee can compel disclosure. Congress can preserve appropriated funds against executive resistance. Senators can reject or delay nominees. Legislators can amend a statute that the executive is exploiting. Members can vote to impeach or convict when they conclude that a constitutional boundary has been crossed.

The act does not need to be dramatic. Indeed, some of the strongest evidence may be technical: an appropriation enforced, an inspector general protected, a nominee rejected, a subpoena honored, a statutory condition restored.

The common element is that the institution behaves as an institution even when party makes that behavior expensive.

A government designed to frustrate itself

The American system asks citizens to accept an unusual democratic proposition. Winning an election gives a coalition power, but not permission to exercise every form of power available in the state. The constitutional order inserts institutions, procedures, supermajorities, confirmations, appropriations, courts, and time between political desire and governmental action.

This design can be infuriating. It can preserve bad policy after elections have changed public preferences. It can make accountability difficult because responsibility is dispersed. It can reward obstruction. It can allow political actors to blame institutions for outcomes they helped create. It can turn delay into a weapon.

It can also prevent a president from firing through the legal order at the speed of a personal command. It can force an executive to return to Congress for money. It can require public officials to answer questions. It can make removal hard enough that elections remain meaningful. It can provide orderly continuity when a president becomes unable to serve.

The democratic value of frustration is therefore conditional. Friction protects freedom when it slows concentration without making correction impossible. It becomes dangerous when it disables ordinary government so thoroughly that power migrates toward less accountable routes, or when party loyalty prevents institutions from using the checks they formally possess.

The first chapter asked how the people become governing power. This chapter asks what happens when governing power meets resistance. The next chapter moves outward from Washington. In a federal republic, the national government is not the

only place capable of saying no. States and local governments can resist the center, protect difference, and create alternative routes of correction. They can also produce their own forms of inequality. Federalism is another mechanism of democratic frustration—one that divides power geographically rather than by branch.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- Congressional Research Service, Congressional Oversight Manual and related materials. <https://crsreports.congress.gov/>
- U.S. Government Accountability Office, Impoundment Control Act. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/appropriations-law/impoundment-control-act>
- U.S. GAO, B-337375, Institute of Museum and Library Services, June 16, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337375>
- U.S. GAO, B-337581, Review of the President's June 3, 2025 Special Message. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337581>
- Public Law 119-28, Rescissions Act of 2025. <https://www.congress.gov/119/plaws/publ28/PLAW-119publ28.pdf>
- Supreme Court of the United States, Department of State v. AIDS Vaccine Advocacy Coalition, No. 25A269, stay order, Sept. 26, 2025. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/25a269_bp7c.pdf
- U.S. Senate Roll Call Vote 526, Sept. 18, 2025. https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/vote119/vote_119_1_00526.htm
- U.S. Senate Roll Call Vote 125, May 18, 2026. https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/vote119/vote_119_2_00125.htm
- Constitution Annotated, Impeachment. https://constitution.congress.gov/browse/essay/artI-S2-C5-1/ALDE_00001082/
- U.S. Senate, Impeachment Trials. <https://www.senate.gov/about/powers-procedures/impeachment/impeachment-list.htm>
- Constitution Annotated, Twenty-Fifth Amendment. <https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/amendment-25/>
- U.S. Congress, Presidential Vacancy and Disability: The Twenty-Fifth Amendment resources. <https://www.congress.gov/>
- Constitution Annotated, Article V. <https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/article-5/>

CHAPTER 3

FEDERALISM: LIBERTY THROUGH DIVISION, INEQUALITY THROUGH PLACE

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

A country with more than one place to say no

When an American president issues a national order, the first resistance does not always come from Congress. It may come from a state attorney general in California, New Jersey, Texas, or Missouri. A governor can refuse political cooperation. A state can go to federal court. A state election official can certify a result without asking the White House for permission. A city can decline to use its police for a federal purpose, if the law permits. A state court can interpret a state constitution more broadly than the federal minimum. A local board can regulate land use, schools, water, policing, or public health without waiting for Washington.

This multiplication of governments is one of the most important facts about American democracy and one of the easiest to overlook. The United States is not governed by Washington and then administratively divided into fifty provinces. State governments possess their own constitutions, legislatures, courts, executives, tax systems, and political mandates. Beneath them sit tens of thousands of local governments with their own powers and boundaries. Political authority is divided vertically as well as horizontally.

That division creates a democratic advantage that no single institution can provide: redundancy. Losing the presidency does not mean losing every government. Losing Congress does not eliminate state attorneys general. A national administration cannot automatically command every state officer. A coalition shut out of Washington can still govern states, litigate, organize locally, and create policies that may later spread.

But the same system produces another reality. A person's rights, public benefits, voting rules, labor protections, abortion access, education policy, criminal law, taxation, and local political power can depend heavily on where that person lives. The federal system disperses power by allowing political difference to become territorial difference.

Federalism therefore protects liberty through division and creates inequality through place. Both propositions can be true at the same time.

Tocqueville's local freedom in a much larger republic

Tocqueville saw local self-government as one of the practical schools of American democracy. The township mattered not because it was small, but because citizens could encounter government as something they participated in rather than something merely imposed from afar. Local institutions taught habits of cooperation, responsibility, taxation, officeholding, and public judgment.

That intuition remains recognizable. Americans still elect governors, attorneys general, sheriffs, school boards, county officials, mayors, judges in many states, and countless local boards. They vote on state constitutional amendments, ballot measures, local taxes, zoning disputes, school bonds, and criminal-justice offices. Public authority is experienced through many institutions that Tocqueville would have recognized as more immediate than the national government.

Yet the scale and complexity of modern federalism would be unfamiliar to him. The Census Bureau counted 91,438 local governments in 2025. The total included general-purpose governments such as counties, municipalities, and townships, and tens of thousands of special-purpose governments, including school districts and special districts. A metropolitan resident can live simultaneously under a city, county, school district, water district, transit authority, fire district, and state government, all while remaining subject to federal law.

The modern question is therefore not simply whether local institutions exist. It is whether citizens can still understand who governs them, participate meaningfully, and correct decisions across a landscape of overlapping authorities.

The Tenth Amendment is a boundary, not a declaration of absolute sovereignty

The Tenth Amendment reserves to the states or the people powers not delegated to the United States and not prohibited to the states. In political rhetoric, that sentence is often treated as though it creates two sealed jurisdictions: federal powers listed in one box, everything else belonging to the states.

American constitutional law has never been that simple. The federal government possesses enumerated powers, but those powers include authority that can be implemented through necessary and proper means. Congress can regulate in areas that overlap with state interests when the Constitution grants it authority. When valid federal law conflicts with state law, the Supremacy Clause makes federal law controlling.

At the same time, states are not merely subordinates. The national government generally cannot require a state legislature to enact a federal policy or command state executive officials to administer one. That principle, known as anti-commandeering, has been developed through cases including *New York v. United States*, *Printz v. United States*, and *Murphy v. NCAA*.

The two principles are often confused because they point in opposite directions. Federal law may be supreme, yet federal officials may still be required to enforce it with federal resources rather than converting state governments into federal field offices.

That combination is one of the signatures of American federalism: supremacy without complete administrative subordination.

A state may refuse to help without nullifying federal law

Anti-commandeering does not revive nullification. A state cannot declare a valid federal law void within its borders and forbid federal officers from enforcing it. What the state can often do is decline to use its own legislature, police, prisons, personnel, or administrative apparatus to carry out the federal program.

The distinction is practical. If Washington wants a national rule, it may have to pay for federal agents, build federal administrative capacity, and accept political responsibility for enforcement. It cannot always impose the policy and transfer the costs and blame to state institutions.

The doctrine therefore protects more than state dignity. It protects political accountability. Voters should be able to identify which government made the decision they dislike.

This becomes especially visible in immigration, where the federal government possesses strong national authority but depends in practice on a landscape of state and local police, jails, courts, and data systems that it does not fully control.

Immigration shows both sides of federalism

State attempts to conduct immigration enforcement provide one side of the boundary. In *Arizona v. United States*, the Supreme Court invalidated major parts of Arizona's S.B. 1070 because they intruded into or conflicted with the federal immigration system. A state could not simply create its own parallel regime for alien registration and removal in fields where Congress had established federal rules.

Recent state measures have continued testing that line. Texas S.B. 4 sought to criminalize certain unlawful entries and permit state judges to order some individuals to return across the border. Litigation has repeatedly turned not only on federal preemption but also on standing, injunctions, and procedural posture. That complexity is important: when a court lifts an injunction for lack of standing, it has not necessarily declared the state law valid on the merits.

Sanctuary policies present the reverse problem. A city or state that limits cooperation with federal immigration enforcement is not necessarily claiming that federal immigration law is invalid. It may be saying instead: use your agents, not ours.

That refusal can make federal enforcement more expensive. Anti-commandeering accepts some of that cost. Federal supremacy means states cannot obstruct federal officers performing lawful federal duties; it does not automatically mean that every state or local employee must assist.

The structural principle should survive ideological inversion. A conservative state invoking autonomy against a federal regulatory program and a progressive city refusing to supply local machinery for immigration enforcement are not identical cases. But both test whether Americans defend federalism as a rule or only as a tactic.

Birthright citizenship: states resist, the Constitution decides

The litigation over birthright citizenship during the second Trump administration offers an unusually clear example of federalism as democratic redundancy without state supremacy.

In January 2025, President Trump issued an executive order seeking to deny recognition of birthright citizenship to some children born in the United States when their parents were unlawfully or temporarily present. States and private plaintiffs challenged the order in multiple federal courts.

The first major Supreme Court decision, *Trump v. CASA* in June 2025, did not decide whether the executive order was constitutional. The Court addressed the remedial question of universal injunctions: how far a lower federal court could extend relief

beyond the parties before it. The decision narrowed a powerful tool of national judicial relief, but it did not settle the Citizenship Clause.

That distinction mattered because the litigation continued. In *Trump v. Barbara*, decided in June 2026, the Supreme Court reached the merits and held that children born in the United States to parents unlawfully or temporarily present are citizens at birth under the Fourteenth Amendment.

The institutional chain is more revealing than any partisan summary. A president acted nationally. States and individuals challenged him. Lower courts created legal resistance. The Supreme Court first limited the form of the remedy. Later litigation reached the substantive constitutional question. The final rule was national and binding.

This was not a victory of state sovereignty over federal power. It was federalism functioning as a route to contestation until a national constitutional rule was authoritatively established. States supplied independent institutions capable of forcing review. They did not supply the final law.

Preemption is the other half of the bargain

If anti-commandeering protects states from being turned into federal administrators, preemption protects national law from being defeated by contrary state rules.

The Supremacy Clause makes the Constitution and valid federal laws the supreme law of the land. When Congress acts within its constitutional authority, state law may be displaced. Lawyers divide preemption into categories such as express, field, and conflict preemption, but the deeper democratic point is simpler: federalism is not fifty separate legal sovereignties joined only by choice.

The federal government must still identify the source of supremacy. A presidential preference does not preempt state law by itself. The question is what the Constitution or Congress has actually authorized.

That distinction becomes important whenever executive administrations claim that state policies frustrate national goals. A goal may be important, but preemption normally depends on law rather than on the executive's desire for administrative cooperation.

When cooperation becomes coercion

Much of modern federalism operates through money rather than commands. Congress offers grants and attaches conditions. States accept the funds and administer national programs through their own institutions.

This arrangement can look voluntary while becoming difficult to refuse in practice. In *NFIB v. Sebelius*, the Supreme Court concluded that the Affordable Care Act's Medicaid expansion crossed a constitutional line insofar as states faced the threatened loss of existing Medicaid funding if they refused the new terms. The financial pressure was too great for the choice to remain meaningfully voluntary in the relevant constitutional sense.

The case is important beyond health policy. It reveals a recurring democratic problem: formal choice and real choice are not always the same. A state may be legally free to refuse a federal condition while being fiscally incapable of doing so.

Federalism therefore depends not only on legal categories but on capacities. A state that exists on paper as a sovereign political unit may still be deeply dependent on federal finance. A local government may have elected institutions yet lack the revenue or legal authority to act independently.

The distribution of power has to be measured by what governments can actually do, not only by what they are formally called.

Laboratories of democracy have inhabitants

One of the strongest defenses of federalism is experimentation. Different states can try different solutions, compare results, and learn from one another. Election systems, marijuana laws, environmental rules, minimum wages, health programs, education policy, and redistricting structures have all varied across states.

The appeal is obvious. A nation of more than 300 million people need not wait for one national consensus before any innovation is possible. Failure can remain contained. Success can spread.

But the laboratory metaphor hides the fact that citizens live inside the experiments. A person subject to a state policy cannot step outside the laboratory merely because political scientists find the variation informative.

The democratic question is therefore not whether experimentation is good. It is which kinds of variation a national citizenship can tolerate before political difference becomes inequality in fundamental status.

Dobbs turned a national constitutional rule into state variation

The aftermath of *Dobbs v. Jackson Women's Health Organization* illustrates the point with exceptional clarity. By overruling *Roe* and *Casey*, the Supreme Court removed the federal constitutional protection previously recognized for abortion and returned regulatory authority to political processes.

The result was not one national replacement policy. It was territorial divergence. States adopted or enforced very different rules. In some places abortion remained broadly legal; in others it became heavily restricted or prohibited, subject to varying exceptions and litigation.

Supporters of *Dobbs* can describe that result as democratic decentralization: an issue previously controlled through federal constitutional doctrine returned to elected political institutions. Critics can describe it as the conversion of a national individual right into a liberty dependent on state residence.

Federalism did not resolve the moral conflict. It decided where much of the conflict would be decided.

That distinction is central to understanding the system. The level of government is itself part of the political outcome.

States' rights cannot be romanticized

Any celebration of state autonomy has to pass through American racial history. States and local governments have not merely protected liberty from Washington. They have also maintained segregation, restricted voting, resisted desegregation, and used local authority to deny equal citizenship.

Little Rock remains the classic warning. State resistance did not represent local democratic freedom for the Black students whose constitutional rights were being denied. Federal intervention enforced a national constitutional rule against a resistant state government.

The lesson is not that federal power is inherently more democratic. Federal authority has its own history of exclusion and abuse. The lesson is that scale does not settle legitimacy.

A state can resist a national abuse. A state can also be the source of the abuse. The democratic question is which level preserves the capacity of people to act, contest, organize, and remain equal under law.

Ninety-one thousand governments and the problem of visibility

The local level makes the democratic promise of federalism most tangible and most confusing. In 2025 the Census Bureau counted 91,438 local governments. More than half were special-purpose governments, including school districts and special districts.

That institutional density can be a source of responsiveness. A water district does not need to manage schools. A school board does not need to govern a metropolitan transit system. Specialized governments can develop expertise and create political arenas focused on problems that would disappear inside a larger state bureaucracy.

The same specialization can fragment responsibility. A resident may not know which district controls drainage, who appoints the transit board, when the school-board election occurs, whether the county or city controls a road, or which government has the power to raise a particular tax.

Power dispersed beyond visibility is not necessarily accountable power.

The problem is especially acute with special districts. The Census Bureau reported that much of the increase in local governments between 2022 and 2025 came from growth in special districts in states including Colorado, Florida, Nebraska, and Texas. These entities can be technically useful and democratically obscure at the same time.

Tocqueville's local democracy assumed that proximity helped citizens see government. Modern fragmentation can produce the opposite: government may be geographically close but institutionally hard to locate.

Local does not mean sovereign

Municipalities and counties occupy a different constitutional position from states. The federal Constitution does not give cities an independent sovereignty comparable to state sovereignty. Local powers ordinarily derive from state constitutions, statutes, charters, and judicial doctrines.

Some states grant broad home-rule authority. Others preserve stronger traditions of legislative control associated with Dillon's Rule. Most real systems are mixtures.

That means a local democratic decision can be overridden by the state legislature. State preemption of local laws has become an important field of political conflict over wages, firearms, housing, labor, civil rights, education, zoning, and other subjects.

It is tempting to describe such conflicts as democratic cities versus anti-democratic states. That can be wrong. State legislatures are elected too, and some problems genuinely exceed municipal boundaries. A city that blocks housing construction may

protect current residents while shifting housing costs onto an entire metropolitan region. A statewide rule can sometimes correct a local externality.

The relevant principle is not that smaller is always better. It is subsidiarity: what is the real scale of the problem, who bears the costs, who receives the benefits, and which level of government can still be held accountable by the people affected?

Local elections can be closer and less representative

Political proximity does not guarantee participation. Local elections held off-cycle often attract fewer voters than elections synchronized with major state or federal contests. The people most likely to participate are those with strong information, strong interests, durable organizations, or unusually high political engagement.

There is nothing illegitimate about organized citizens voting consistently. Unions, business groups, homeowners, developers, activists, churches, and professional associations have every right to organize around local government. The democratic concern arises when election timing systematically narrows the electorate so much that a small organized population becomes the effective public.

Moving local elections onto major election dates can raise turnout and make the electorate more representative. It can also bury local races on long ballots where voters know less about the candidates.

Again, federalism offers no pure solution. Closer government may be more responsive to those who participate while being less representative of everyone who is governed.

D.C.: local government without state sovereignty

Washington, D.C. reveals the limits of the federal model because it is not a state. District residents elect a mayor, council, attorney general, and other local institutions. Through the Twenty-Third Amendment, they participate in presidential elections. But the District has no senators and no voting member of the House.

Congress retains constitutional authority over the federal district. The Home Rule Act delegates substantial local power, but that delegation is not the same as state sovereignty.

The difference became operational during the Trump administration's 2025 intervention in D.C. policing. The dispute was not merely about abstract representation. It was about who had authority over a local police department when the federal executive invoked powers available under the District's statutory structure.

A state can rely on constitutional federalism when it resists Washington. D.C. relies more heavily on powers Congress has delegated and can alter.

Local self-government therefore exists in the District, but under a national legislature in which District residents do not possess equal voting representation. It is a form of democracy with an unusual constitutional ceiling.

Puerto Rico: citizenship tied to a place without equal federal power

Puerto Rico presents a different boundary case. Its residents elect a territorial government and many are U.S. citizens under federal law. Yet Puerto Rico has no senators, no voting House member, and no electoral votes for president.

A U.S. citizen living in Puerto Rico does not vote for president through the island. The same citizen can move to a state and vote in the presidential election without changing nationality. The political difference follows residence in a territory, not a permanent personal incapacity.

Puerto Rico elects a Resident Commissioner who can participate in important House work, including committees, but does not possess the same final floor vote as a representative from a state. The correct description is therefore not “no representation.” It is representation without equal voting power.

The status question remains politically contested because several possible democratic goods conflict: statehood, independence, free association, territorial autonomy, cultural self-determination, and equal national representation. Plebiscites can express local preference, but they do not by themselves alter constitutional status. Congress remains a necessary actor.

That produces a difficult question of democratic self-determination. A population can vote about its future while lacking unilateral authority to make the result legally effective.

Federalism does not create one American citizenship in practice

Formal national citizenship is uniform in ways that matter enormously. The Fourteenth Amendment protects citizenship. Federal constitutional rights bind states. Federal statutes can create national rights. The Supreme Court can impose national rules.

Yet the daily experience of citizenship remains territorial. State law determines much criminal law, family law, election administration, professional licensing, education structures, taxation, labor rules, and public benefits. Local governments add another layer.

This variation is not an accidental imperfection of American federalism. It is the result of preserving multiple democratic communities inside one constitutional order.

The tension appears when Americans use the same word—freedom—to describe opposite institutional outcomes. One person calls state autonomy freedom from Washington. Another calls federal protection freedom from the state.

Both can be speaking coherently. The question is which level controls which decision and whether people retain a route to challenge that allocation.

More forums mean more correction—and more conflict

Federalism increases the number of places where power can be challenged. A state can sue. A state court can interpret its own constitution. A governor can refuse political cooperation. A city can litigate against the state. A federal court can invalidate a state law. Voters can replace a governor while the president remains in office.

That redundancy is democratically valuable because it reduces the chance that one electoral victory captures every pathway of opposition.

But redundancy has costs. Litigants can shop for favorable forums. Different courts can issue conflicting interim rulings. A policy may be legal in one jurisdiction and enjoined in another until appellate review produces clarity. Citizens and administrators can live for months under uncertainty.

The same architecture that makes capture difficult can make national closure difficult.

The question is not whether one should eliminate the multiplicity. It is whether the multiplicity still produces correction more often than incoherence.

Federalism's hardest test is reciprocity

Few constitutional principles are invoked more selectively than states' rights. Political coalitions discover the virtues of local autonomy when they control states and distrust Washington. They rediscover national supremacy when they control Washington and dislike what opposing states are doing.

Federalism has repeatedly served both major parties as a shield when they control states and distrust Washington, and as a limit they are willing to narrow when they control national power. That structural recurrence does not make the policies, legal claims, or consequences equivalent. It makes federalism one of the book's clearest reciprocity tests.

Would a Republican defend a state's anti-commandeering protection if the state were refusing cooperation with Republican immigration enforcement? Would a Democrat defend broad state experimentation if conservative states used it for policies Democrats strongly opposed? Would either party accept a national floor when it protects rights their own state majority would rather restrict?

The answer cannot be perfect consistency. Politics is not a philosophy seminar. But a structural principle that changes meaning entirely with party control is not much of a structural principle.

Federalism becomes democratically credible when actors defend rules that they know can protect the other side.

The act-evidence: a state can say no, and the nation can still govern

For this chapter, the act-evidence has two sides.

First: can a state resist or challenge the national government through lawful institutions without being forced into administrative obedience?

Second: can the federal government still enforce valid constitutional and statutory rules against a resistant state without turning federal supremacy into unlimited command?

A functioning federation must satisfy both. If states cannot resist, federalism becomes administrative decentralization. If states can ignore valid national law at will, the Union ceases to possess supremacy.

The birthright-citizenship litigation shows one version of the balance. States challenged the executive. Courts heard the cases. Remedies were disputed. The Supreme Court eventually supplied a national constitutional rule. Resistance did not become nullification; supremacy did not eliminate the path to resistance.

That is federalism at its strongest: multiple governments capable of saying no inside a legal order still capable of producing a final rule.

Liberty through division, inequality through place

The democratic virtue of federalism is not that states are wiser than Washington. They are not. Local governments are not inherently more humane, more inclusive, or more competent. National institutions are not inherently more oppressive or more enlightened.

The virtue is structural. Power distributed across many governments is harder to capture all at once. Citizens who lose one level may still possess another arena in which to organize, govern, litigate, and demonstrate an alternative.

The cost is equally structural. The more authority remains territorial, the more legal and political life varies by geography. The same national citizenship can coexist with different rights, different access, different institutions, and different practical power.

The democratic task is not to eliminate that contradiction. It is to decide which differences a federal republic can tolerate and which require a national floor.

Tocqueville saw local self-government as a school of freedom because citizens learned to act through institutions near them. That insight survives. But the modern lesson is harsher. A school of freedom can also become a school of exclusion. A state can resist a president and protect democracy. It can also resist a national right. A local government can create participation. It can also hide power inside fragmentation.

Federalism works democratically when division creates more routes of correction than routes of escape from accountability.

The next chapter turns to the institution that often decides where those boundaries lie. Courts can stop presidents, invalidate state laws, interpret congressional statutes, and redefine the reach of agencies. If federalism multiplies places where power can say no, judicial review determines which 'no' has legal force.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — federalism, Tenth Amendment, Supremacy Clause. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Murphy v. NCAA*, 584 U.S. 453 (2018). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/16-476_dbfi.pdf
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Arizona v. United States*, 567 U.S. 387 (2012). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/11pdf/11-182bsei.pdf>
- Supreme Court of the United States, *NFIB v. Sebelius*, 567 U.S. 519 (2012). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/11pdf/11-393c3a2.pdf>
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Dobbs v. Jackson Women's Health Organization*, 597 U.S. 215 (2022). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/21pdf/19-1392_6j37.pdf
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Trump v. CASA, Inc.* (2025). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_g314.pdf
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Trump v. Barbara*, No. 25-365 (June 30, 2026). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_new_sif6.pdf
- U.S. Census Bureau, *Government Organization Summary Report: 2022 & 2025*. <https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2026/econ/govtorg2225.html>
- District of Columbia Home Rule Act resources. <https://code.dccouncil.gov/us/dc/council/code/titles/1/chapters/2/subchapters/V-A>
- Congressional Research Service, *Puerto Rico political status and territorial-clause resources*. <https://crsreports.congress.gov/>

CHAPTER 4

THE COURTS: RESTRAINT, POWER, AND LEGITIMACY

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The branch that cannot govern and can still stop government

The federal judiciary occupies a strange place in American democracy. Judges do not campaign for office. They do not write the federal budget. They cannot deploy agencies, command the military, or enact a national program. Yet a single district judge can sometimes stop an executive policy before it takes effect, an appellate court can freeze a nationwide administrative initiative, and the Supreme Court can redefine the legal authority of presidents, Congress, agencies, and states for decades.

This power is both indispensable and difficult to justify in democratic terms. If courts cannot constrain elected officials, constitutional limits become promises made by those who are expected to obey them. If courts can too easily substitute their own judgment for elected government, judicial review becomes a form of political rule without electoral responsibility.

The American system tries to hold both propositions at once. Judges receive political appointments but life tenure. Courts depend on litigants to bring cases, yet their decisions can have consequences far beyond the parties. They possess no independent police force, yet the constitutional order assumes that executive officials will obey their judgments. They interpret statutes written by Congress and review agencies run by the president, but Congress structures the lower courts and political actors choose the judges who will sit on them.

Judicial power is therefore not a simple check on democracy. It is part of the machinery through which democracy restrains itself.

Tocqueville's lawyers and the modern judicial state

Tocqueville regarded lawyers and judges as a stabilizing force within American democracy. Legal habits, in his account, moderated democratic passions by translating political conflict into forms, precedents, procedures, and arguments that could survive beyond the immediate majority.

That insight still describes something real. American political disputes routinely become legal disputes. Presidents defend executive orders in court. States sue federal agencies. Companies challenge regulations. Civil-rights organizations seek injunctions. Congress writes statutes anticipating judicial interpretation. Political coalitions plan litigation years before a Supreme Court case arrives.

But the scale is now far greater than Tocqueville's world. Modern federal courts supervise a vast administrative state, constitutional rights incorporated against states, national regulatory schemes, presidential claims of immunity, complex election rules, federal criminal prosecutions, and emergency applications capable of changing public policy within days.

The legal profession remains a stabilizing force. It is also a route through which political conflict becomes durable doctrine. The question is no longer merely whether lawyers moderate democracy. It is whether judicial power remains constrained enough to retain democratic legitimacy while being strong enough to restrain the elected branches.

Judicial review begins with access

A court cannot simply announce that it dislikes a policy and demand an explanation. Federal judicial power is limited to cases and controversies. A plaintiff needs standing. The claim must be ripe rather than hypothetical. A live controversy must remain rather than becoming moot. Sovereign immunity, causes of action, venue rules, statutory review schemes, and procedural requirements can determine whether a court ever reaches the merits.

These doctrines can appear technical, but they answer a democratic question: who is entitled to ask an unelected judge to stop elected government?

The restriction protects separation of powers by preventing courts from acting as general supervisors of public policy. But it can also leave harmful government action temporarily beyond review if no plaintiff can satisfy the procedural gateway quickly enough.

This is why one of the most important distinctions in contemporary public law is the difference between losing on the merits and losing access to the merits. A court that dismisses for standing has not necessarily declared the challenged policy lawful. A decision narrowing a remedy has not necessarily endorsed the underlying act. Procedural victory and substantive validation are different things.

That distinction becomes especially important in fast-moving litigation against the executive branch, where public argument routinely treats every stay, dismissal, or injunction as a total verdict on presidential legality.

The lower courts are where constitutional conflict becomes real

The Supreme Court dominates public attention, but most constitutional and administrative disputes begin elsewhere. District courts establish records, hear testimony, decide motions, and issue the first temporary restraining orders or preliminary injunctions. Courts of appeals review those decisions within regional circuits. Only a small fraction of cases ever reach the Supreme Court.

This means judicial restraint depends on a geographically dispersed network of hundreds of judges. Their independence is protected by Article III tenure during good behavior. A district judge appointed by a president can later rule against that same president or a successor from the same party. The president cannot remove the judge for doing so.

This is one of the cleanest act-evidence tests in the entire constitutional system. Political actors choose judges. Once confirmed, the judge is not legally their agent.

The evidence is not that judges become ideologically neutral. Presidents and senators select nominees partly because of legal philosophy, interpretive method, professional background, and expected doctrinal tendencies. Ideology matters. What judicial independence means is something narrower and more important: appointment does not create legal obedience to the appointing president.

The lower courts make that independence visible every day because they can constrain administrations of both parties long before the Supreme Court has spoken.

A judge's first power is often time

The most consequential judicial act may occur before final judgment. A temporary restraining order can preserve the status quo for days. A preliminary injunction can prevent a policy from operating while litigation continues. A stay can suspend a lower-court order during appeal.

The function is not merely procedural. Time can determine whether a right remains usable.

A deportation completed before review may be difficult to undo. An appropriation may expire. A public official may be removed. A program may be dismantled. Data may be disclosed. A person may be transferred beyond the effective reach of a court. In such cases, a final judgment delivered months later may be legally correct and democratically useless.

This is why emergency judicial relief became so prominent during the second Trump administration. Rapid executive action met organizations, states, and individuals prepared to seek rapid judicial intervention. The result was an extraordinary volume of applications for temporary relief.

The democratic significance cannot be measured by counting injunctions. More injunctions could indicate more unlawful action, more aggressive litigation, greater policy change, more favorable forums, or some combination of all four. The relevant question is what happens to those orders: whether they survive appeal, are narrowed, are reversed, or force lawful adjustment.

The judiciary's power lies partly in doctrine and partly in sequence.

Trump v. CASA and the scale of judicial remedies

The 2025 birthright-citizenship litigation exposed a major dispute over the geographic reach of district-court remedies. Several lower courts had issued broad injunctions blocking President Trump's executive order. In *Trump v. CASA*, the Supreme Court did not decide whether the order was constitutional. It considered whether federal courts possessed equitable authority to issue universal injunctions extending relief beyond what was necessary to protect the parties before them.

The Court sharply limited that practice. The decision altered one of the principal tools by which challengers had converted a victory in one district court into immediate nationwide relief.

The arguments on both sides reveal a genuine democratic tension. Critics of universal injunctions argue that one district judge should not be able to stop a national policy for everyone in the country, especially when another court might reach the opposite conclusion. Broad relief can encourage forum shopping and make a single preliminary ruling function like a national veto.

Defenders respond that some unlawful national policies cannot be meaningfully corrected if every affected person must bring a separate case. Harm can become irreversible before litigation spreads. Administrative programs may be impossible to apply only to named plaintiffs. In those settings, narrow relief can make a right formally recognized but practically expensive to use.

CASA reduced one remedy. It did not abolish judicial review. Class actions, state plaintiffs, statutory remedies, and other forms of relief remain. The decision therefore changed the architecture of correction rather than eliminating it.

The courts can lose power by narrowing who may ask

Remedy is only one layer. Standing and cause-of-action doctrine can constrain judicial review before a court reaches legality at all. This has become increasingly important in disputes over federal administrative action and state challenges.

A government can therefore prevail without obtaining a merits ruling. That distinction protects courts from becoming open-ended policy tribunals. It can also weaken judicial correction when no plaintiff possesses the right procedural vehicle in time.

The democratic effect depends on whether another route remains open. If a private plaintiff lacks standing but a state can sue, federalism supplies redundancy. If an APA claim is unavailable but habeas remains, another form of review survives. If no one can reach the merits before the policy becomes irreversible, the formal existence of judicial review says less than it appears to say.

The judiciary's real power is not measured by the number of legal theories in a treatise. It is measured by whether someone can actually reach a judge before the disputed act is complete.

An order matters only if the executive obeys

Judicial review rests on an assumption that Americans rarely notice until it appears fragile: executive officials will obey court orders even when they believe the judge is wrong.

The government is not required to accept the district court's reasoning as final. It can seek a stay, appeal, request emergency relief, and petition the Supreme Court. But the normal constitutional rule is that an order in force must be obeyed until a competent court changes it.

This is what separates legal contestation from institutional defiance.

Federal courts possess contempt powers. They can impose civil sanctions designed to compel compliance and criminal sanctions for completed disobedience. Yet the judiciary does not possess a separate national police force. The U.S. Marshals Service, which executes many federal court orders, belongs to the Department of Justice.

The system therefore reaches a point where doctrine gives way to constitutional habit. Courts can issue orders. Their authority ultimately depends on a political culture in which the executive treats judicial commands as binding even while fighting them through appeal.

That habit is one of the clearest democratic acts in the book: an administration obeys a judge it believes to be wrong because it accepts the rule that legal disagreement must be resolved inside the legal system.

Administrative law moved power back toward judges

The relationship between courts and federal agencies changed substantially in 2024. For forty years, *Chevron v. Natural Resources Defense Council* had instructed courts,

in broad terms, to defer to reasonable agency interpretations of ambiguous statutes after determining that Congress had not clearly resolved the question.

The doctrine rested on an institutional intuition. Agencies possess expertise. They are part of the politically accountable executive branch. When Congress writes ambiguous law, perhaps the agency administering the statute should often make the policy choice.

In *Loper Bright Enterprises v. Raimondo*, the Supreme Court overruled *Chevron*. The majority read Section 706 of the Administrative Procedure Act to require courts to exercise independent judgment on questions of law. An agency interpretation can still persuade. Congress can still delegate discretion. But statutory ambiguity alone no longer requires judicial deference to the agency's reasonable view.

The shift is significant because it changes who gets the last word about the legal boundary of administrative power. Under *Chevron*, ambiguity could create a zone of agency policymaking. After *Loper Bright*, the court determines the best reading of the statute and then asks what discretion that reading actually leaves to the agency.

The change does not abolish administration. It strengthens judicial responsibility for policing the legal perimeter of administration.

Loper Bright did not make judges administrators

The strongest criticism of *Loper Bright* is that courts may lack the technical expertise of agencies and may convert statutory interpretation into a judicial policy choice. The strongest defense is that agencies should not determine the legal extent of their own authority merely because Congress wrote imperfectly.

Both arguments describe a real institutional risk.

A court deciding what a technical statute means may misunderstand a specialized regulatory system. An agency deciding the scope of an ambiguous statute may expand its own authority. American administrative law cannot eliminate both dangers simultaneously.

Loper Bright chooses one side of that tradeoff: judges independently determine legal meaning, while agencies retain policy discretion only where the statute, properly interpreted, gives it.

The democratic consequence is a redistribution rather than a simple reduction of power. Agency legal autonomy decreases; judicial interpretive power increases; Congress faces greater pressure to write delegations clearly.

That last effect matters. Courts can constrain agencies, but clearer legislation can also constrain courts by giving less interpretive space to fight over.

Corner Post and the problem of closure

Three days after *Loper Bright*, the Supreme Court decided *Corner Post*. In the context of the general six-year limitations period governing certain APA claims, the Court held that a claim accrues when the plaintiff is injured by the final agency action, not necessarily when the agency originally issued the rule.

The combination of the two decisions matters. *Loper Bright* makes agency statutory interpretations more open to independent judicial reconsideration. *Corner Post* can allow a newer plaintiff to challenge an older rule long after its initial promulgation.

This weakens regulatory closure. A rule that survived for years may face a new challenge from a newly injured party.

The democratic defense is that unlawful government action should not become unreviewable merely because the person harmed today did not exist when the rule was written. The democratic cost is instability. Regulatory systems need some ability to settle so businesses, agencies, and citizens can rely on them.

Judicial correction and legal repose are competing goods. The American system rarely gets one without paying for the other.

Jarkesy and the agency as judge

The Court's 2024 decision in *SEC v. Jarkesy* addressed a different problem: when can an agency prosecute and adjudicate a punitive enforcement action inside its own administrative system?

The Court held that when the Securities and Exchange Commission sought civil penalties for the kind of securities-fraud claim at issue, the Seventh Amendment required a jury trial. The agency could not simply choose its own in-house forum for that category of enforcement.

The decision did not declare administrative adjudication unconstitutional. Agencies continue to adjudicate large categories of benefits, licensing questions, public rights, and specialized disputes. *Jarkesy* was narrower.

Its democratic significance lies in institutional separation. The modern administrative state often combines functions that the Constitution separates elsewhere: rulemaking, investigation, prosecution, and adjudication. Judicial doctrine determines where that concentration becomes too great.

Once again, the court acts as a restraint on one form of concentrated power while simultaneously expanding its own authority to define the boundary.

Trump v. United States and the court as architect of presidential immunity

No recent case demonstrates the judiciary's power to reshape executive accountability more dramatically than *Trump v. United States*, decided on July 1, 2024.

Before that case, the Supreme Court had recognized presidential immunity in civil contexts, but it had not established a constitutional criminal-immunity framework for a former president's official acts.

The Court created one. Acts within the president's core constitutional authority receive absolute immunity from criminal prosecution. Other official acts receive at least presumptive immunity. Unofficial acts receive none.

The majority's concern was institutional. A president who knows that every difficult official decision may later be recharacterized by political opponents as criminal could become excessively cautious. The presidency requires energy, discretion, and the capacity to make decisions that will inevitably create enemies.

The opposing concern is equally obvious. Some of the most dangerous abuses of presidential power are dangerous precisely because they are committed through official instruments: prosecutors, appointments, communications with executive

officers, military power, or public authority. If official character itself creates strong immunity, the legal system may protect the form through which abuse becomes most powerful.

Trump v. United States therefore does not merely resolve one prosecution. It defines part of the constitutional boundary between presidential energy and criminal accountability.

Official does not mean lawful

One of the most important features of Trump v. United States is that official status is not defeated simply because prosecutors allege criminal purpose. The Court rejected an approach that would classify an act as unofficial merely because it was undertaken with a corrupt or personal motive.

That rule prevents immunity from disappearing whenever a prosecutor writes an indictment. But it creates a serious evidentiary and conceptual cost. Abuse of office often turns on purpose. The same presidential power may be lawful when used for one reason and corrupt when used for another.

The Court also restricted the use of protected official acts as evidence in prosecutions based on unofficial conduct, although the justices differed over the precise scope of that evidentiary protection.

The result is a doctrine designed to protect the presidency from criminalization that can also make some forms of presidential wrongdoing harder to prove.

This is not a contradiction produced by sloppy drafting. It is the contradiction the Court chose to resolve in favor of stronger presidential protection.

A court can strengthen the presidency while constraining the president

The same Supreme Court that limits executive policies in some cases can simultaneously expand structural presidential power.

That became especially clear in 2026. In Trump v. Slaughter, the Court strengthened presidential removal authority over leaders of independent regulatory agencies, narrowing the constitutional space for Congress to insulate certain executive officers from presidential control.

The logic is part of a long argument over the unitary executive: if executive power belongs to the president, how far may Congress restrict the president's ability to remove officials who exercise executive authority?

Yet the Court did not simply erase every form of institutional independence. In Trump v. Cook, decided the same day, the Court maintained a distinctive protection associated with the Federal Reserve's structure and independence.

The pairing is analytically valuable. It shows why "the Court is captured" is too crude a description. The Court can adopt a jurisprudence broadly favorable to stronger presidential control while still distinguishing institutions it considers constitutionally or historically different.

Judicial ideology is real. Judicial agency is real too.

The appointments that shape doctrine

The Supreme Court's current doctrinal direction cannot be separated from the politics of appointment. Donald Trump appointed Neil Gorsuch, Brett Kavanaugh, and Amy Coney Barrett during his first term. Those appointments helped create durable majorities in cases including *Dobbs*, *Trump v. United States*, and later separation-of-powers decisions.

The relevant democratic issue is not that judges appointed by Republican presidents often reach conservative outcomes. Political actors have always cared about judicial philosophy. The more difficult issue is how the Senate's norms governing appointment changed during the period that produced the current Court.

After Justice Antonin Scalia died in 2016, President Obama nominated Merrick Garland. The Republican-controlled Senate declined to proceed to the kind of hearing and vote that might have produced confirmation. Majority Leader Mitch McConnell argued that the impending presidential election should give the people a voice in determining the Court's future.

When Justice Ruth Bader Ginsburg died in September 2020, President Trump nominated Amy Coney Barrett. The same Senate majority moved rapidly, confirming her 52 to 48 on October 26, days before the election.

The constitutional rules had not changed. The political rule invoked in 2016 had.

McConnell defended the distinction on the ground that in 2020 the Senate and presidency were controlled by the same party, unlike in 2016. That explanation describes a different institutional circumstance. It also reveals that the operative rule was not simply "no Supreme Court nominations in an election year."

The episode is important not because it proves illegality. It does not. The Constitution did not require the Senate to confirm Garland or prohibit the Senate from confirming Barrett. The issue is reciprocity: what political norm, if any, remained stable when control changed?

The nuclear option and cumulative escalation

The appointment conflict did not begin with Garland. In 2013, a Democratic Senate majority changed precedent to allow cloture by simple majority for most executive and lower-court nominations. In 2017, the Republican majority extended the simple-majority principle to Supreme Court nominations in order to confirm Neil Gorsuch.

This is a case where bipartisan escalation is real but not identical. Democrats removed the supermajority barrier for most nominations; Republicans extended the change to the Supreme Court. Each side could point to the previous step as justification for the next.

The result is a confirmation system in which a president supported by a Senate majority can shape the federal judiciary without needing minority votes in most cases.

That increases electoral responsiveness: voters who choose a president and Senate majority can see that coalition fill vacancies. It also reduces the pressure for broader agreement on institutions whose members may serve for decades.

The democratic tradeoff becomes sharper because judicial appointments are unusually durable and difficult to reverse. An executive order may disappear with the next

president. A statute can be repealed. An Article III judge may shape law long after the coalition that appointed the judge has left power.

Durability raises the price of inconsistent norms

Political systems can survive a great deal of procedural hardball when decisions remain easy to reverse. The stakes change when an appointment is for life.

This is why reciprocity matters so much in judicial selection. A party may possess the legal authority to exploit a procedural opportunity. The democratic question is whether it would accept the same rule if the opposing coalition used it under reversed circumstances.

A norm that operates only when convenient is not a durable restraint. It is a temporary concession.

The Garland-Barrett sequence therefore matters less as a morality tale about one Senate than as evidence of a broader transition: political actors increasingly treat judicial-selection norms as strategic resources rather than reciprocal obligations.

The Constitution survives that shift because the formal rules remain. Legitimacy can still erode if citizens conclude that the rules governing irreversible appointments are rewritten whenever control changes.

Lower-court geography and the temptation to choose the judge

Judicial legitimacy is affected not only by who becomes a judge but by how a litigant reaches one.

Federal cases are distributed across districts and circuits. Venue rules often give plaintiffs more than one plausible forum. State attorneys general, national organizations, and businesses may have members or injuries in multiple jurisdictions. Choosing among legally available forums is ordinary litigation strategy.

The problem becomes sharper when choosing a division effectively means choosing a particular judge. Some federal districts historically contained single-judge divisions where a plaintiff seeking sweeping relief could predict who would receive the case.

That practice created a legitimacy problem across party lines. Conservative litigants used favorable forums against Democratic administrations; progressive litigants sought favorable forums against Republican administrations. The structural incentive was bipartisan.

In 2024, the Judicial Conference announced a policy aimed at reducing judge shopping in civil cases seeking broad relief against state or federal policies by encouraging district-wide random assignment.

Random assignment does not eliminate ideology. It does something more modest: it reduces the litigant's ability to select a particular decision-maker in advance.

Procedural neutrality often consists of preventing control over who gets to exercise substantive judgment.

Circuit splits can be disorder and learning at once

Federal courts of appeals create regional precedent. Until the Supreme Court resolves a disagreement, the same federal law can sometimes operate differently in different circuits.

This looks like a defect in a national legal system. It can also be a form of institutional learning. Different appellate courts develop competing analyses. The Supreme Court can later review a mature disagreement rather than decide the question with only one line of reasoning available.

The cost is temporary inequality. A federal right or regulatory obligation may differ depending on geography until national resolution arrives.

Here the judiciary begins to resemble federalism itself. Decentralization creates multiple sites of judgment, increases resistance to a single error, and delays uniformity.

The American constitutional system repeatedly pays the same price for redundancy: more routes of correction, more time before closure.

Emergency review centralizes the final word

As lower courts issue conflicting orders and litigants move faster, the Supreme Court increasingly acts through emergency applications. A case that would take months or years on the ordinary merits docket can produce a stay or temporary order in days.

The advantage is obvious: emergency review can prevent lower-court error from controlling national policy through an entire litigation cycle.

The democratic cost is that enormously consequential decisions may be made on compressed briefing, under time pressure, sometimes without full opinions explaining the Court's reasoning.

The so-called emergency or shadow docket is not inherently illegitimate. Courts need emergency procedures because rights and government programs can become irreversible before ordinary review is complete. The challenge is legitimacy through explanation. The more consequential the interim decision, the greater the public need to understand the rule the Court is applying.

Speed protects correction. Speed can also reduce transparency.

The strongest defense of judicial power

The strongest case for judicial review is not that judges are wiser than elected officials. It is that law must bind the people who hold power.

A president cannot be the final judge of the president's own authority. Congress cannot decide conclusively that every statute it enacts is constitutional. A state cannot make its own interpretation of federal supremacy final. An agency cannot alone determine the outer limit of the statute it administers.

Courts supply an external forum in which government must justify itself through legal reasons rather than raw command.

Life tenure protects the judge who says no. Procedure creates a record. Appeal creates internal correction. Written opinions expose the reasoning to criticism. None of these

mechanisms guarantees a correct result. They create conditions under which legal power must explain itself.

That is a democratic achievement even though the judge is unelected.

The strongest case against judicial power

The objection is equally serious. Every time a court invalidates a statute, blocks a president, narrows an agency's authority, or recognizes a new constitutional immunity, judges shape public policy without standing for election.

Life tenure can protect independence and insulate error. Judicial review can defend minorities and frustrate majorities. It can enforce old constitutional commitments and entrench the preferences of past political coalitions.

A Supreme Court majority can overrule precedent that millions of people organized their lives around. It can make executive power stronger. It can make administrative regulation harder. It can determine whether Congress may insulate an institution from presidential removal. It can decide the scope of remedies available against unlawful government.

The democratic answer cannot simply be that courts interpret law. Interpretation allocates power.

Judicial legitimacy therefore depends on more than formal authority. It depends on reasoned decisions, procedural regularity, reciprocal appointment norms, compliance by the other branches, internal discipline, and a public belief that law is doing more than disguising partisan victory.

Independence is proven by costly decisions

The judiciary's most convincing defense is behavioral rather than rhetorical. A judge demonstrates independence when the legal conclusion imposes a cost on the coalition that helped put the judge on the bench.

That does not require ideological unpredictability. A conservative judge can remain conservative and still rule against a Republican president when the law points that way. A liberal judge can do the same to a Democratic administration.

The relevant act-evidence is not random voting. It is willingness to enforce a legal boundary without treating political origin as political command.

The Trump-era judiciary supplies numerous examples at the lower-court level, including judges appointed by Republican presidents rejecting claims favorable to Trump in election litigation. The 2026 pairing of *Trump v. Slaughter* and *Trump v. Cook* provides a Supreme Court-level reminder that a broad jurisprudential preference for presidential control does not mechanically determine every institutional case.

The judiciary remains political in origin and independent in office. American democracy depends on both halves of that sentence being true.

The court's own corrigibility problem

Courts are mechanisms of correction, but who corrects the courts?

Lower courts can be reversed by appellate courts. Circuits can be reversed by the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court can reverse itself. Congress can rewrite statutes after judicial interpretation, subject to constitutional limits. Constitutional amendments can override constitutional holdings, though Article V makes that extraordinarily difficult.

Judicial correction therefore exists, but it is uneven. A mistaken district-court injunction may last days. A mistaken Supreme Court constitutional interpretation can last generations.

This is why stare decisis matters even though it is not absolute. Stability has democratic value because citizens organize their lives around law. Reversal has democratic value because courts must be able to correct serious errors.

Dobbs made the contradiction visible. The Court treated Roe and Casey as precedents that could and should be overruled. Supporters saw correction of constitutional error. Critics saw destruction of settled reliance and a right that had structured national life for decades.

No doctrine can make both stability and correction costless.

The act-evidence: the loser obeys

For this chapter, one act stands above all others.

A government loses in court and obeys while it appeals.

That action is easy to overlook because it is usually routine. Precisely for that reason it is foundational. Judicial independence is meaningless if the executive treats adverse judgments as optional. Judicial review becomes government by judges if courts act without procedural limits or exposure to appeal.

The democratic chain is therefore: access, decision, remedy, appeal, compliance.

Every link matters. A right without access is inert. A judgment without timely remedy can arrive too late. A remedy without appeal can magnify judicial error. An appeal without compliance turns law into a suggestion.

The judiciary's legitimacy does not come from winning every conflict. It comes from operating inside a system where even powerful losers continue to recognize the authority of the process.

Restraint, power, and legitimacy

American courts are simultaneously weaker and stronger than they appear.

They are weaker because they cannot initiate most disputes, execute most policy, control their own enforcement apparatus, or guarantee public acceptance. They depend on litigants, statutes, institutional cooperation, and the willingness of political actors to obey.

They are stronger because interpretation can reorder the boundaries of government for decades. Loper Bright shifted statutory authority from agencies toward judges. Trump v. United States created a new constitutional framework for presidential criminal immunity. Trump v. Slaughter strengthened presidential removal power. Trump v. Cook marked a limit. CASA narrowed universal injunctions. Dobbs reversed a constitutional-rights regime that had endured for nearly half a century.

Judicial power cannot therefore be defended by pretending it is not power.

Its democratic defense is that power needs an institution capable of saying no from outside the immediate electoral coalition. Its democratic danger is that the institution capable of saying no can become difficult to correct itself.

The balance depends on habits as much as doctrine: reciprocal appointment rules, honest procedural distinctions, reasoned opinions, compliance, and a willingness to distinguish ideological disagreement from institutional illegitimacy.

The first four chapters have now described the constitutional promise: popular sovereignty filtered through representation, power divided among branches, authority divided among governments, and law enforced by courts. The next part begins before the ballot is cast. Formal institutions matter only if citizens can actually enter them. The question shifts from who holds power to who can participate in choosing it.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — Article III, judicial power, appointments, impeachment, separation of powers. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- U.S. Senate — Supreme Court nominations history. <https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nominations/SupremeCourtNominations1789present.htm>
- U.S. Senate — Judicial nominations overview. <https://www.senate.gov/about/powers-procedures/nominations/judicial-nominations-overview.htm>
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. United States*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/23-939_e2pg.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Loper Bright Enterprises v. Raimondo*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-451_7m58.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Corner Post, Inc. v. Board of Governors*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-1008_1b82.pdf
- Supreme Court — *SEC v. Jarkesy*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-859_1924.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. CASA, Inc.* (2025). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_g314.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Slaughter* (2026). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-332_qn12.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Cook* (2026). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25a312_5468.pdf
- Administrative Office of the U.S. Courts — Judicial Vacancies and Confirmations. <https://www.uscourts.gov/judges-judgeships/judicial-vacancies>
- Judicial Conference of the United States — 2024 case-assignment policy materials. <https://www.uscourts.gov/news/2024/03/12/judicial-conference-approves-policy-promote-random-case-assignment>

PART II
BEFORE THE BALLOT

CHAPTER 5

THE RIGHT TO VOTE AND THE ABILITY TO USE IT

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

A right that can disappear at the check-in table

Imagine an eligible voter arriving at a polling place and discovering that the electronic pollbook does not contain the name. The citizen may have registered months earlier. The address may have been updated incorrectly. A database match may have failed. A voter-registration record may have been moved to inactive status. The problem may be entirely administrative. Yet at that moment, the constitutional right to vote means very little unless the election system contains a way to preserve the ballot while the error is investigated.

That is the purpose of a provisional ballot. It does not assume the voter is eligible. It does not assume the pollbook is correct. It converts immediate uncertainty into a later factual question: verify the record, determine eligibility under the law, and count the ballot if the voter was entitled to cast it.

This small procedure reveals something fundamental about democracy. Rights do not become power merely because a constitution announces them. They require an administrative pathway capable of surviving ordinary mistakes.

The same is true at every stage of an election. A citizen must be eligible. The registration system must recognize that eligibility. The voter must satisfy whatever lawful identification or documentation rules apply. A ballot must be issued, completed, returned on time, preserved, tabulated, reconciled, and incorporated into the certified result. If any part of that chain fails without a correction mechanism, a right that exists in law can disappear in practice.

The opposite risk is equally real. A registration system that cannot remove dead, duplicate, relocated, or ineligible records becomes less accurate. A ballot accepted without the legally required verification can weaken the same democratic equality that broad access is meant to protect. Election administration therefore has two obligations, not one: do not count a vote the law does not authorize, and do not lose a vote the law requires you to count.

The right to vote was built in layers

There is no single sentence in the original Constitution declaring a universal modern right to vote. The architecture developed over time. The original Constitution tied qualifications for the House electorate to qualifications for the most numerous branch of each state's legislature. States therefore began with broad authority over voter qualifications, subject to later constitutional constraints.

The Fifteenth Amendment prohibited denial or abridgment of voting rights on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. The Nineteenth added sex. The Twenty-Fourth prohibited poll taxes in federal elections. The Twenty-Sixth protected citizens eighteen years of age or older against age-based denial of the vote.

The Fourteenth Amendment added equal-protection and due-process principles that would become central to voting-rights litigation.

Congress also gained or exercised enforcement powers through these amendments and through the Elections Clause, which allows it to make or alter state regulations governing the times, places, and manner of congressional elections.

The modern right to vote is therefore cumulative. It is constitutional, statutory, federal, state-administered, and judicially enforced all at once.

That layered history matters because contemporary disputes often begin with the wrong institutional question. The issue is not simply whether voting is a right. It is which government has authority to regulate a particular stage of access, what federal law already requires, and whether the resulting burden is lawful and democratically defensible.

Eligibility, registration, and ballot access are not the same thing

Election debates routinely collapse three different stages into one.

Eligibility is legal status: whether the person has the right to vote in the election. Registration is administrative recognition: whether the election system has placed the voter on the appropriate roll. Ballot access is practical capacity: whether the eligible registered citizen can successfully cast a ballot that survives the required procedures and is counted.

A citizen can be eligible and unregistered. A voter can be registered and unable to reach a polling place. A voter can cast a mail ballot that is rejected because a signature or envelope requirement is not satisfied. A registered voter can appear at the wrong precinct. A database can contain the wrong address. A ballot can be provisionally preserved while eligibility is verified.

Different policies affect different stages. Automatic registration can reduce registration friction without changing voter-identification rules. More polling places can improve physical access without changing registration deadlines. Documentary proof of citizenship can tighten eligibility verification while creating new administrative burdens for some eligible citizens.

A serious analysis must keep the stages separate before asking whether the whole system is accessible or secure.

The federal government sets floors inside a decentralized system

American elections remain deeply decentralized. State law determines much of the registration calendar, ballot design, mail-voting procedure, identification regime, canvass process, recount law, and certification structure. Local jurisdictions perform much of the actual work.

Federal law nevertheless shapes the system at crucial points. The National Voter Registration Act expanded registration opportunities and regulated voter-roll maintenance. The Help America Vote Act strengthened statewide voter-registration systems, established provisional-ballot protections, and created federal voting-system infrastructure after the contested 2000 election. UOCAVA and the MOVE Act protect military and overseas voters. The Voting Rights Act creates national protections against racial discrimination and intimidation.

The result resembles the federalism described in the previous chapter: state administration inside national constraints. That design creates redundancy. One local mistake does not automatically become a national failure. It also creates variation. The practical experience of voting can differ dramatically from state to state.

Decentralization is therefore neither evidence of strength nor weakness by itself. Its value depends on whether variation remains compatible with equal citizenship and whether errors can be found and corrected.

The NVRA already rejects the false choice between access and integrity

The National Voter Registration Act of 1993 is revealing because its structure does not treat participation and list accuracy as enemies. It was designed to increase registration while also protecting the integrity of voter rolls.

Its better-known provisions connect registration to motor-vehicle agencies, mail registration, and certain public-assistance and disability-service agencies. These measures reduce the transaction cost of entering the electorate.

The same law governs list maintenance. States must maintain accurate rolls, but federal law restricts how removals occur and prevents certain purges based simply on a person's failure to vote.

That combination should set the tone for the chapter. An accurate voter roll is a democratic good. So is an electorate in which eligible citizens can register without unnecessary obstacles. The real question is not which value wins. It is whether administration can protect both at once.

HAVA turned uncertainty into a process

The Help America Vote Act, enacted after the 2000 presidential election, added another layer of national administration. Among other requirements, HAVA strengthened statewide computerized registration lists and created provisional-ballot protections for covered federal elections.

The provisional ballot is one of the clearest small-scale examples of the corrective logic in election law. A voter arrives. The pollbook says no. The voter says yes. Instead of requiring an exhausted poll worker to settle the entire legal and factual dispute on the spot, the system preserves the vote temporarily.

Later, election officials verify eligibility under the applicable rules. If the voter qualified, the ballot is counted. If not, it is rejected.

This is democratic administration at its best when it works. It does not remove administrative friction. It prevents a correctable problem from becoming a final loss too early.

The quality of the mechanism depends on what comes next. Does the voter receive notice? Can the voter learn whether the ballot counted? Is there a cure procedure when state law permits correction? Is there enough time to provide missing information? A provisional ballot that preserves a theoretical right but cannot realistically be validated may become a ritual rather than a safeguard.

Deadlines are not neutral merely because they apply to everyone

Registration deadlines illustrate the difficulty of judging administrative friction. Closing a registration period before Election Day can serve legitimate purposes. Election officials need time to update files, resolve duplicates, prepare pollbooks, organize precinct assignments, and process records.

But the burden of the deadline is not evenly distributed. A voter who registered months earlier experiences no cost. A citizen who moves, changes a name, discovers a database error, or becomes politically engaged late in the cycle may experience the same deadline as exclusion.

Some states respond through same-day registration. Others use provisional ballots, online updates, extended registration windows, or alternative correction procedures.

The democratic question is therefore larger than the number printed on the calendar. What happens when an eligible person makes a predictable administrative mistake?

A rule becomes more defensible when the system contains a way to recover from error without making fraud or duplicate voting easier. Correction is not the opposite of integrity. It is part of integrity.

Identification and citizenship are different problems

Political debate often uses 'voter ID' to describe several distinct verification systems. They should be separated.

Identity asks whether the person appearing to vote is the person on the registration record. Citizenship asks whether the person belongs to the legally eligible political community. The documents relevant to those questions are not always the same.

A driver's license may strongly establish identity while saying nothing definitive about citizenship. A birth certificate may establish birth in the United States but is not a current photo identification document. A naturalization certificate may establish citizenship while being something a citizen does not routinely carry.

Conflating the two makes it difficult to understand the burden a policy actually creates. A photo-ID law and a documentary-proof-of-citizenship law solve different risks and can exclude different groups of eligible voters when they fail.

Crawford did not end the voter-ID debate

In *Crawford v. Marion County Election Board* in 2008, the Supreme Court rejected a facial challenge to Indiana's photo-identification requirement. The Court recognized state interests including election modernization, confidence, and prevention of fraud.

The decision is sometimes treated as a blanket constitutional approval of voter-identification laws. It is not. The legality and democratic burden of a particular system depend on the documents accepted, costs imposed, exceptions available, and opportunities to cure.

A rule that is nearly effortless for a voter with a driver's license and a car may be significantly harder for an elderly citizen without current documents, a person experiencing homelessness, a low-income voter, a student, or someone whose legal name differs across records.

This is a recurring problem in democratic administration: a small average burden can conceal a severe burden concentrated on a minority.

The relevant question is not merely whether most voters can comply. It is whether the people who cannot comply easily are disproportionately losing a right that the verification system is supposed to protect.

Citizenship verification has become the live national conflict

By 2025 and 2026, documentary proof of citizenship moved from a long-running Arizona dispute into a national separation-of-powers conflict.

Arizona had already become the doctrinal laboratory. In *Arizona v. Inter Tribal Council of Arizona*, decided in 2013, the Supreme Court held that under the NVRA framework at issue the state had to 'accept and use' the federal registration form for federal elections. Arizona could not simply require additional documentary proof as a condition for federal-form registration in the way it sought to do.

The result helped produce a distinctive two-track system in which some voters could be registered for federal elections while state requirements governed broader registration for state contests.

Later Arizona laws created new disputes involving citizenship verification, registration forms, and federal-only voters. Those disputes reached the Supreme Court again in *Republican National Committee v. Mi Familia Vota*.

On June 29, 2026, the Court granted certiorari. As of this book's August 20, 2026 research cutoff, there is no merits decision. The case is pending.

That procedural fact is essential. A pending case can reveal the issue the Court has agreed to decide. It cannot be cited as though the answer already exists.

The executive branch tried to move before Congress and the courts finished

President Trump entered the voting-administration debate directly during his second term. Executive Order 14248, signed on March 25, 2025, sought to reshape several aspects of federal election administration, including documentary proof of citizenship in the federal registration framework, access to federal data for citizenship verification, conditions involving federal election funds, and disputes over mail ballots received after Election Day.

The constitutional problem is not whether a president may pursue election integrity. The problem is authority.

The Elections Clause assigns specific power over congressional election regulations to states in the first instance and to Congress as a national override. Congress has already enacted the NVRA, HAVA, and other statutes. The Election Assistance Commission possesses statutory powers of its own. A president cannot create a new federal election code merely by declaring one.

Each part of an executive order therefore has to be traced back to an existing legal authority. If the president directs an agency to exercise discretion Congress already granted, the question may be ordinary executive administration. If the order tries to impose a rule Congress did not authorize, the separation-of-powers problem is different.

Election integrity is not an exception to the constitutional allocation of election power.

From documents to databases

Trump's second-term policy also moved toward a different model of verification: federal data matching.

Executive Order 14399, signed March 31, 2026, directed the Department of Homeland Security, in coordination with the Social Security Administration, to compile state citizenship lists of confirmed U.S. citizens aged eighteen or older, to the extent feasible and lawful, and transmit them to state election officials before federal elections. The order also contemplated procedures for correction and state supplementation.

The idea changes the nature of the burden. Documentary proof asks the individual citizen to produce evidence. Database verification asks government systems to confirm the citizen through records they already possess.

That can reduce friction. A citizen who lacks a passport or cannot quickly locate a birth certificate may still be identifiable through government data.

It also creates a different failure mode: false negatives. A recent naturalization may not yet appear in the relevant dataset. A name may be spelled differently. A date may be wrong. Records may lag. A citizen may be missing from a list for reasons that have nothing to do with eligibility.

The order's inclusion of correction procedures implicitly recognizes this problem. A database large enough to verify millions of citizens is also large enough to contain mistakes.

The democratic quality of the system therefore depends on how quickly an error can be corrected. A citizen who wins a database dispute in December has not been meaningfully protected if the election was in November.

List maintenance is not voter suppression by definition

Voter files decay because populations move. People die. Voters relocate to other states. Names change. Records duplicate. Registration systems merge information from motor-vehicle agencies, election offices, federal sources, returned mail, and other administrative systems.

Maintaining those files is necessary. A state that never removes stale records would eventually operate a roll that no longer describes its electorate.

The danger lies in the trigger and the remedy. What evidence is sufficient to mark someone inactive or remove a registration? Was notice sent? Does federal law prohibit the particular removal method? Can the voter restore the record online, by mail, at the election office, or at the polling place?

The political language of 'purges' and 'dirty rolls' often skips those questions. Both phrases can describe a real problem. Neither tells us whether a particular procedure is accurate.

False positives and false negatives

A useful way to evaluate election verification is to borrow the language of classification.

Suppose a system is trying to identify ineligible registrants. A false positive occurs when it marks an eligible citizen as ineligible. A false negative occurs when it fails to detect a person who is actually ineligible.

Political arguments tend to focus on one error at a time. Election-integrity advocates emphasize false negatives: an ineligible record remains. Voting-access advocates emphasize false positives: an eligible citizen is wrongly flagged or removed.

A competent administrative system has to care about both.

This changes the way reform should be evaluated. A policy cannot be judged only by the number of ineligible records it identifies. It must also be evaluated by how many eligible citizens it incorrectly burdens and how reliably those errors are cured.

Likewise, an access reform cannot be judged only by the number of voters it helps. It must also preserve enough verification that election officials can distinguish legitimate participation from an invalid registration or ballot.

The goal is not zero administrative friction. It is calibrated friction with workable correction.

The physical ballot changed the security argument

Public debate about voting technology often imagines elections as software systems. Modern American elections are much more physical than that image suggests.

The Election Assistance Commission's 2024 Election Administration and Voting Survey reported that more than 98 percent of election jurisdictions used equipment in which voters marked a paper ballot or the system produced an auditable paper record. Only a small number of jurisdictions reported systems without a verified paper trail, and only one jurisdiction reported relying exclusively on such systems.

That does not make election technology infallible. It changes the nature of verification.

A paper record provides evidence outside the tabulation software. The initial count may still be electronic through an optical scanner. If the reported result is questioned, officials can audit or recount against the physical ballots.

The democratic virtue of paper is therefore not nostalgia for hand counting. It is independence of evidence.

A trustworthy system should not have to prove that software never fails. It should be able to detect consequential failure without depending on the same software that may have failed.

Reliability begins before anyone votes

Election verification does not begin on election night. Voting systems can undergo certification. Equipment can be acceptance-tested when jurisdictions receive it. Ballot definitions must be programmed. Logic-and-accuracy testing can check before the

election that the equipment recognizes the correct contests and tabulates test votes as expected.

These layers matter because different controls catch different errors. A voting system can be nationally or state certified and still be configured incorrectly for a local ballot. A pre-election test does not prove that no later problem can occur. A post-election audit cannot correct a ballot that was never properly issued.

Reliability comes from redundancy. No single certificate, machine, worker, party observer, or audit is asked to carry the entire burden of trust.

Election night is a media event, not legal finality

Americans have grown accustomed to watching maps change color on election night and hearing networks call races before midnight. The legal election works on a different clock.

Election-night results are unofficial. Depending on state law, valid mail ballots may still arrive or be processed. Provisional ballots must be researched. Military and overseas ballots may be outstanding. County officials reconcile precinct records. Reporting errors can be corrected.

A total that changes after election night is therefore not suspicious merely because it changes. The relevant question is why it changed and whether the additional votes were processed under the rules in force for that election.

This distinction became especially important after 2020, when delayed mail-ballot counting in some jurisdictions was transformed in political rhetoric into evidence that results were being manufactured after Election Day.

Counting after Election Day is not the same as voting after Election Day. Certification after Election Day is not an extension of the election. The administrative calendar must be distinguished from the legal deadline for casting a ballot.

Mail voting is not one national system

In 2024, roughly three in ten ballots were cast by mail according to the Election Assistance Commission. That national percentage can hide enormous procedural variation.

Some states automatically mail ballots to registered voters. Others require a request. States differ over signature verification, witness requirements, ballot-return envelopes, drop boxes, curing, processing dates, and receipt deadlines.

It is therefore almost meaningless to ask whether 'mail voting' is secure without specifying the rule being examined.

Mail voting shifts some administrative responsibility from the polling place to the voter. The citizen must complete the envelope correctly, satisfy signature or witness rules where applicable, and return the ballot within the legal time.

For some voters, especially those with disabilities, demanding work schedules, transportation problems, or military and overseas service, the method expands practical access enormously. For others, a technical envelope defect may create a new route to rejection.

The appropriate democratic question is the same as before: what is being verified, what error can occur, and can the voter correct it before the right is lost?

Received by Election Day or cast by Election Day?

The treatment of mail ballots received after Election Day has become a significant legal and political dispute. Some states require receipt by Election Day. Others count certain ballots that were legally cast or postmarked by the deadline but arrive later.

Federal law establishes a uniform day for federal elections, but disputes remain over how that rule interacts with state authority to define receipt and canvass procedures.

The issue should not be confused with the fact that ballot counting continues after Election Day everywhere. The legal controversy concerns when a ballot must be cast or received, not whether officials may continue counting ballots already lawfully in the system.

This is exactly the kind of distinction that democratic trust depends on. If different stages are described as though they were the same, ordinary administration begins to look like manipulation.

The election is still run by people

The machinery is digital, but the institution remains human. The 2024 EAVS reported more than 770,000 poll workers serving in the general election. Nearly half of jurisdictions still reported significant difficulties recruiting and retaining them.

These workers check voters in, issue ballots, assist with equipment, process provisional voters, close polling sites, document materials, and help preserve chains of custody.

Human beings make mistakes. That is not an argument against election reliability; it is an argument for designing systems that expect mistakes.

A robust election does not depend on believing that hundreds of thousands of people perform perfectly. It depends on reconciliation, documentation, observation, redundant records, and procedures capable of isolating and correcting error.

The correct question is never whether zero mistakes occurred in a national election. The relevant question is whether mistakes were large enough to affect an outcome and whether the system could detect that possibility.

Canvass turns a count into an election result

After voting ends, election officials do not simply accept the number shown by the tabulator and sign a certificate. The canvass reconciles records from the election.

Officials compare the number of voters with ballots, incorporate valid provisional and mail ballots, resolve reporting discrepancies, confirm precinct totals, and document the result under state procedures.

This phase is invisible compared with Election Day, yet it is one of the most important integrity mechanisms in the system. The canvass is where an initial count is tested against the administrative record that produced it.

Certification comes after that work. The certificate does not magically create the result. It attests that the legally prescribed process has produced the official result.

That distinction mattered enormously in 2020 and will matter again later in this book. Certification is strongest when it is ministerial enough that political officials cannot simply substitute their preference for the verified count.

An audit is not a recount

Public argument often uses 'audit' to mean any second look at an election. Election administration is more precise.

A recount retabulates ballots in a contest, often because a margin is small, a candidate requests one, or state law automatically requires it. An audit tests whether the reported outcome or voting system is accurate under a defined method.

A risk-limiting audit is particularly useful for understanding democratic verification. It examines a statistically selected sample and expands the sample if the evidence is not strong enough. If necessary, the process can move toward a full hand count.

The principle is not certainty. It is bounded risk.

No national election can offer metaphysical proof that every human action was perfect. It can offer procedures that make an outcome-changing error increasingly unlikely to survive undetected.

That is a more defensible basis for trust than institutional assertion.

Election security is visible when citizens can inspect how the result was produced

Democratic trust should not require citizens simply to believe officials because officials are professionals.

A stronger system makes its methods observable. Logic-and-accuracy tests can be documented. Parties and citizens can observe defined election procedures under state rules. Paper records can be audited. Recounts can be triggered under known standards. Courts can hear specific legal claims. Canvass meetings can reconcile the count. Certification follows a schedule and authority fixed in advance.

None of this guarantees that every observer will accept the result. Political actors can reject evidence for reasons that no administrative reform can solve.

But the institutional obligation is to produce inspectable reasons for confidence.

The difference is profound. 'Trust us' is an appeal to authority. 'Here is how the ballots were tested, preserved, reconciled, audited, challenged, and certified' is an appeal to evidence.

The strongest case for stricter verification

A fair chapter must state the strongest case for tighter controls rather than treating them as disguised voter suppression.

Voting is a reserved act of political membership. States and Congress have a legitimate interest in ensuring that the people registering and voting are eligible. Preventing an ineligible registration before a ballot is cast is administratively cleaner than trying to reconstruct eligibility after an election.

Accurate rolls can improve logistics. Documentary or database verification can increase public confidence. A state does not have to wait for widespread proven fraud before designing a system to prevent predictable error.

The strongest argument is therefore preventive: verification protects the equality of eligible voters by making sure that the electorate contains the people the law says it should contain.

That case is serious. It also creates an obligation. If verification is justified in the name of accuracy, its own error rate must matter.

The strongest case against badly calibrated verification

An election system can become less accurate while calling itself more secure.

Suppose a citizenship database correctly identifies many ineligible records but wrongly flags a larger number of eligible naturalized citizens because of data lags. Suppose documentary proof catches a handful of errors but prevents thousands of citizens from registering because they cannot reconstruct a paper trail before the deadline. Suppose a list-maintenance program removes stale records efficiently but provides inadequate notice to people who have not actually moved.

The procedures might be strict. The electorate would not necessarily be more accurate.

This is why correction mechanisms matter as much as the initial rule. Alternative proof, database appeals, provisional voting, notice, cure periods, and transparent standards are not loopholes in election integrity. They are the infrastructure that allows strict verification to coexist with political equality.

Integrity means preventing two opposite errors

The deepest mistake in American voting debates is to define integrity as protection against only one direction of error.

An invalid ballot counted when it should not be counted distorts the electorate. An eligible ballot lost when it should be counted also distorts the electorate.

Both substitute administrative error for popular sovereignty.

The relevant institutions should therefore be judged symmetrically. How many invalid records does the policy identify? How many eligible citizens does it burden incorrectly? What evidence triggers action? How fast can an error be corrected? Does the cure occur before certification?

These questions are less satisfying than slogans because they require measurement. They are also closer to what democratic administration actually is.

The act-evidence: an error can be corrected before it becomes disenfranchisement

For this chapter, the primary act-evidence is simple.

An eligible voter encounters an administrative error, and the system corrects it in time for the vote to count.

That act can occur through a provisional ballot, same-day registration, a corrected database record, an accepted alternative document, a signature cure, or another state procedure. The form matters less than the result: the right survives the mistake.

A second act—evidence applies to the count itself. When a tabulation or reporting error occurs, can election officials detect, quantify, and correct it before certification?

The two tests mirror one another. The first protects the citizen from administrative error. The second protects the electorate from administrative error.

A democratic election system should be able to do both.

Before the ballot, there is administration

The mythology of democracy places everything at the moment a voter marks a choice. The actual system begins earlier.

Someone wrote the eligibility rule. Someone built the registration file. Someone decided which identification is sufficient. Someone programmed the ballot. Someone tested the equipment. Someone opened the polling place. Someone received the mail ballot. Someone reconciled the count. Someone audited. Someone certified.

None of those acts is merely clerical. Each can expand or restrict the real capacity of citizens to participate.

The right to vote is therefore not complete when the law says ‘you may vote.’ It becomes complete when an eligible citizen can navigate the administrative chain without unreasonable burden, when ineligible participation can be identified through lawful and accurate procedures, and when mistakes in either direction can be corrected before the result becomes final.

That is the democratic standard: not frictionless elections, but elections whose errors remain detectable and correctable.

The next chapter moves one step further back. Even before citizens decide whether and how to vote, someone has already decided which candidates will appear before them. The general election is not the beginning of democratic choice. It is the end of a selection process that most voters never fully see.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — Elections Clause, voting amendments, equal protection. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- U.S. Election Assistance Commission — 2024 Election Administration and Voting Survey. <https://www.eac.gov/news/2025/06/30/us-election-assistance-commission-releases-2024-election-administration-and-voting>
- National Voter Registration Act of 1993. <https://www.justice.gov/crt/national-voter-registration-act-1993-nvra>
- Help America Vote Act of 2002. <https://www.eac.gov/about/help-america-vote-act>
- Supreme Court — Crawford v. Marion County Election Board, 553 U.S. 181 (2008). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/07pdf/07-21.pdf>
- Supreme Court — Arizona v. Inter Tribal Council of Arizona, Inc., 570 U.S. 1 (2013). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/12pdf/12-71_7148.pdf
- Supreme Court docket — Republican National Committee v. Mi Familia Vota, No. 25-1017. <https://www.supremecourt.gov/docket/docketfiles/html/public/25-1017.html>
- White House — Executive Order 14248, Preserving and Protecting the Integrity of American Elections, Mar. 25, 2025.

<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/03/preserving-and-protecting-the-integrity-of-american-elections/>

- White House — Executive Order 14399, Ensuring Citizenship Verification and Integrity in Federal Elections, Mar. 31, 2026.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/03/ensuring-citizenship-verification-and-integrity-in-federal-elections/>
- Department of Justice — North Carolina HAVA voter-list consent order, Sept. 2025.
<https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/court-enters-consent-order-requiring-north-carolina-fix-inaccurate-voter-list>
- Office of Legal Counsel — Authority to Obtain and Share Statewide Voter Roll Data, May 12, 2026. <https://www.justice.gov/olc/media/1440346/dl>

CHAPTER 6

THE DECISION BEFORE THE CHOICE

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The election that may already be over

A voter walks into a polling place in November and sees two familiar party labels. The ballot is real. The votes will be counted. The losing candidate can concede, challenge the result in court, and run again. Nothing about the election is fake.

And yet the decisive contest may already have happened months earlier.

In a congressional district that reliably gives one party sixty or seventy percent of the vote, the general election often does not determine which party will hold the seat. The primary of the dominant party does. A smaller electorate, voting earlier and paying more attention to intra-party differences, may make the choice that the much larger November electorate can only ratify or reject at long odds.

This is not an argument that primaries are undemocratic. The direct primary was itself a democratizing reform. It weakened the ability of party organizations to select nominees behind closed doors and gave ordinary voters the power to overrule party leaders.

The problem is subtler. Democracy depends not only on whether citizens can choose, but on where in the sequence the meaningful choice occurs, who is allowed to participate at that stage, and how much of the field has already been shaped before anyone votes.

The decision before the choice is the set of decisions that determine what the voter will be allowed to choose among.

Parties organize choice before voters exercise it

Political parties are not mentioned in the Constitution, yet modern American elections are impossible to understand without them. They recruit candidates, raise money, organize volunteers, provide labels, build coalitions, distribute endorsements, write rules, and tell voters what kinds of governing programs belong together.

This is not an accidental distortion of democracy. Large electorates require simplification. A ballot containing hundreds of ideologically unstructured candidates would not necessarily create more meaningful freedom. Parties reduce complexity by assembling positions into recognizable alternatives.

That organizing function gives them power before Election Day. Someone decides who is a plausible candidate, who receives institutional support, which disagreements are acceptable inside the coalition, and which candidates are treated as outsiders.

American parties exercise this power in an unusual way. They are private political associations operating through public election machinery. States often administer primaries, print party labels, establish filing rules, and pay for the election in which a party selects its nominee. At the same time, the First Amendment protects parties against some forms of state interference with their internal association.

Candidate selection is therefore neither purely private nor purely public. It sits on the boundary between the two.

Who gets to participate in a primary?

There is no single American primary system. States use closed primaries, open primaries, partially closed systems, systems open to unaffiliated voters, and multiparty structures. California and Washington use top-two systems for many offices. Alaska uses a top-four structure.

These rules answer a deceptively basic question: who is the electorate at the stage where candidates are selected?

A closed primary says, in effect, that a party's nominee should be selected by voters who have formally affiliated with that party. That protects associational coherence. A party is not merely a label available to anyone who wishes to determine its standard-bearer.

An open primary places more weight on the voter's freedom to participate without formal partisan membership. It can make the nominating stage more accessible to independents and voters who do not wish to register with a party.

Neither arrangement is obviously more democratic in every context. One protects the integrity of a political association. The other broadens the selectorate. The tradeoff becomes more consequential when the primary is effectively the election that decides the office.

The Constitution sometimes protects openness and sometimes closure

The Supreme Court's primary-election cases show why the party's own choice matters.

In *Tashjian v. Republican Party of Connecticut*, the state Republican Party wanted to permit unaffiliated voters to participate in its primary. Connecticut law required a closed primary. The Court sided with the party. Associational freedom protected the party's decision to open its own selectorate.

In *California Democratic Party v. Jones*, California went in the opposite direction. The state imposed a blanket primary in which voters could participate in choosing a party's nominee regardless of their own affiliation. The Court invalidated the system because the state was forcing political parties to let outsiders help choose their nominees.

The two decisions do not establish that primaries must be open or closed. They establish a more interesting principle: freedom of association can protect either choice when it is genuinely the party's choice.

That makes party autonomy itself part of democratic pluralism. It also means that opening a primary to more people can still violate political freedom if the state is compelling an association to accept a selectorate it rejects.

Top-two changes what a primary is

California and Washington use a different model. Candidates appear together on a single primary ballot, and the two highest vote-getters advance to the general election regardless of party preference.

The constitutional distinction matters. The first round is not formally choosing each party's nominee. It is choosing finalists.

That structure opens the first round to all voters and can weaken formal party control. But it creates a different democratic possibility: in a heavily Democratic or heavily Republican constituency, the top two candidates can both come from the same political camp.

The November ballot may then offer two individual alternatives without offering an interparty alternative.

This is why primary reform cannot be evaluated by looking at the first round alone. A system can broaden participation at one stage while narrowing partisan diversity at the next.

The relevant question is not how open the first ballot looks. It is what kinds of meaningful alternatives survive through the final election.

The direct primary was a democratic achievement

It is easy to criticize primaries from the vantage point of their modern pathologies and forget what they replaced. Direct primaries reduced the capacity of party organizations to handpick nominees through conventions, committees, machines, and insider bargaining.

For congressional office, an insurgent candidate can build a campaign, qualify for the ballot, raise money, attract volunteers, and defeat the candidate preferred by party leaders. The formal organization cannot simply substitute its own choice for the voters' result.

That is a substantial form of political openness.

Donald Trump's rise in 2016 is an extreme modern example. He did not become the Republican nominee because the Republican National Committee selected him as its preferred candidate. Important Republican leaders opposed him. He won voters and delegates and took control of the party from inside its own nominating process.

Whatever one thinks of the result, the mechanism demonstrates that American parties are permeable. A sufficiently powerful electoral movement can conquer a major party rather than having to create a new one.

Openness is not the same as moderation. A system that allows voters to overturn party elites can produce candidates those elites consider dangerous. That is part of what democratic openness means.

The primary creates its own smaller electorate

Replacing party bosses with voters does not eliminate selection. It changes who selects.

Primary electorates are usually smaller than general-election electorates. The citizens who participate tend to be more attentive to the race simply because they have chosen to vote in an election that attracts less public attention.

That does not prove that primary voters are uniformly more ideologically extreme. The evidence is more complicated than the common story that 'the base' always chooses the most radical candidate.

But the size and composition of the selectorate matter, especially when the primary is the contest that effectively determines who will hold office.

The democratic question is therefore not whether primary voters are legitimate voters. Of course they are. It is why a much smaller group may possess the decisive power in a district whose general-election outcome is almost predetermined.

Safe seats move the center of political risk

A representative in a competitive district faces two electoral dangers. The representative can lose the party primary or lose the general election.

In a safe district, the second danger diminishes. The political threat can move inward.

The incumbent may worry less about persuading the median general-election voter and more about avoiding a challenger from within the dominant party. Votes, rhetoric, endorsements, and compromises can all be evaluated through that possibility.

The mechanism is often misunderstood because incumbents actually lose primaries only rarely. If one looks only at defeated officeholders, the primary threat can seem insignificant.

But threats influence behavior precisely when they succeed without being carried out. A representative who adjusts conduct enough to prevent a credible challenger will never appear in a dataset of incumbents defeated in primaries.

The plausible mechanism is therefore anticipatory discipline, not mass incumbent defeat.

Primary pressure is not a universal explanation for polarization

The danger is to turn that plausible mechanism into a monocausal story. Congressional polarization did not begin with modern primaries, and primary electorates do not mechanically push every candidate away from the center.

Geographic sorting, national media, fundraising networks, partisan identity, activist organizations, presidential politics, candidate recruitment, and changes in the parties themselves all matter.

Long-run congressional measures show that Democrats and Republicans have moved farther apart over decades. The movement has not been perfectly symmetric: on the principal DW-NOMINATE dimension, the Republican congressional coalition moved farther in the conservative direction than the Democratic coalition moved in the liberal direction over the relevant period.

That is a real asymmetry. It does not mean that every candidate-selection mechanism operates only in the Republican Party.

The claim therefore has to be narrower. Safe seats and primaries can change the incentives facing officeholders. They are part of the architecture of polarization, not a complete explanation of it.

A safe seat is not proof of gerrymandering

The easiest mistake in discussions of representation is to see a district won by twenty or thirty points and conclude that someone must have drawn it to be safe.

That conclusion does not follow.

Americans are geographically sorted. Dense cities tend to vote differently from many rural regions. People with similar political preferences often live near one another. Incumbents develop local advantages. Candidate quality varies. National partisan identity has become stronger.

All of these can produce districts where one party wins consistently without anyone having deliberately manipulated the lines for partisan advantage.

A safe seat is an electoral condition. Gerrymandering is a mapping strategy.

The distinction matters because the democratic diagnosis changes depending on the cause. If political geography produces safe districts, there may be no neutral map capable of making every district competitive. If mapmakers deliberately create safety to entrench their coalition, the problem is institutional self-protection.

Redistricting gives government power over the future electorate

Redistricting is unavoidable. Population changes. States gain or lose House seats. Congressional districts must be redrawn to maintain roughly equal populations and satisfy legal requirements.

The necessary act also creates one of the most unusual powers in representative democracy: the ability to decide which voters will be grouped together before those voters choose their representative.

Packing concentrates opposing voters into a smaller number of districts they win overwhelmingly. Cracking divides them among several districts where they cannot form a majority. Neither technique requires inventing voters. The same people, placed into different combinations, can produce a different distribution of seats.

This reverses the ordinary democratic relationship. In principle, voters choose representatives. In redistricting, representatives or their political allies may help choose the electorate that will later judge them.

That agency problem is what makes partisan line-drawing different from ordinary policy disagreement.

Rucho left the democratic problem and removed a federal remedy

In *Rucho v. Common Cause* in 2019, the Supreme Court confronted claims that partisan gerrymanders violated the federal Constitution. The Court did not conclude that partisan gerrymandering was admirable or democratically harmless.

It concluded that federal courts lacked a judicially manageable constitutional standard for determining when ordinary political consideration in districting becomes too much partisanship.

The result was a withdrawal of federal constitutional merits review for the partisan-gerrymandering claims before the Court.

That does not make maps legally unconstrained. Equal-population rules remain. Racial-gerrymandering doctrine remains. The Voting Rights Act remains. State constitutional provisions remain. State courts and redistricting commissions remain. Congress retains constitutional power over congressional election regulations.

Rucho therefore did something characteristic of American constitutional structure: it left the political problem largely intact while reallocating responsibility for correction to other institutions.

Federalism now determines much of the redistricting restraint

After Rucho, state institutions became even more important. Some states leave congressional line-drawing largely to legislatures. Others use commissions designed to reduce direct partisan control. State constitutions may impose requirements that state courts can enforce.

California's Citizens Redistricting Commission represents one of the strongest institutional attempts to separate mapmaking from incumbent political advantage. Its ordinary rules prohibit drawing districts for the purpose of favoring or discriminating against a political party, incumbent, or candidate.

That type of rule is democratically meaningful precisely when it costs the governing party something. A constraint that applies only when it happens to produce the desired partisan result is not much of a constraint.

The events of 2025 and 2026 tested that principle under pressure.

Race and party are legally different even when they overlap

Redistricting law becomes especially difficult where race and party preference are correlated. A district can be politically strategic and racially consequential at the same time.

Federal law treats those categories differently. Rucho makes ordinary partisan-gerrymandering claims nonjusticiable in federal constitutional litigation under the theories before the Court. Racial gerrymandering remains subject to Equal Protection analysis. Section 2 of the Voting Rights Act can require remedies for minority vote dilution under defined conditions.

That distinction means neither side can simply substitute one label for the other. A state cannot automatically defend predominant racial line-drawing by calling race a proxy for politics. Plaintiffs cannot turn an ordinary partisan disagreement into a racial claim without satisfying the separate legal standards.

The Supreme Court's 2026 decision in *Louisiana v. Callais* made that boundary more consequential.

Louisiana v. Callais tightened the racial-redistricting boundary

Louisiana's congressional maps had become part of a long-running dispute involving Section 2 of the Voting Rights Act, racial representation, and Equal Protection. On April 29, 2026, the Supreme Court affirmed a judgment invalidating Louisiana's 2024 congressional map as an unconstitutional racial gerrymander.

The decision also revisited the circumstances in which Section 2 can justify or require race-conscious districting. The practical boundary between remedying minority vote dilution and making race too dominant in the design of districts became tighter and more contested.

The safe conclusion is not that Section 2 disappeared. It did not. Nor did Callais reverse Rucho and create federal review of ordinary partisan gerrymandering.

The importance of the decision is that mapmakers now operate under an even more delicate double command: they may have to consider race enough to comply with federal voting-rights law while avoiding the point at which race becomes constitutionally predominant without sufficient justification.

This is not a side issue. It shows how difficult it is to design neutral-looking rules for a society in which political geography and racial history are intertwined.

Texas reopened the decade

The traditional expectation is that congressional districts are redrawn after the decennial census and then remain relatively stable until the next one, absent litigation or extraordinary circumstances. That expectation is a norm more than a universal constitutional command.

Texas broke the ordinary rhythm in 2025 by adopting a new congressional map in the middle of the decade. The move was openly connected to partisan advantage. Litigation followed, including a lower-court order blocking the map for the 2026 elections.

On December 4, 2025, the Supreme Court stayed that order pending appeal. According to the Texas Legislature's official redistricting site, PlanC2333 returned to effect beginning with the 2026 primaries.

The legal litigation remains important. The political fact is already clear: a governing coalition used mid-decade line-drawing to alter the congressional battlefield before the next census.

Once that happens, the opposing party faces a difficult strategic choice. Preserve restraint and accept the disadvantage, or abandon restraint too.

California chose retaliation through the electorate

California answered Texas through a very different institutional pathway.

Its normal congressional maps are drawn by an independent citizens commission. In 2025, state political leaders proposed temporarily replacing those commission maps with legislatively drawn congressional districts. Because the change required altering California's constitutional structure, voters themselves decided whether to authorize it.

They did. Proposition 50 passed on November 4, 2025 with 64.4 percent of the vote. The California Secretary of State states that the temporary congressional maps will be used beginning in the 2026 elections and through 2030, until the citizens commission draws new maps after the 2030 census.

California's official materials explicitly describe the measure as a response to Texas's mid-decade partisan redistricting.

This matters because the California case is not simply legislators evading an independent commission in secret. Voters authorized a temporary suspension of the normal anti-partisan mapmaking arrangement in order to fight a national partisan disadvantage.

The electorate itself chose escalation.

The arms race is democratic and corrosive at the same time

The Texas-California sequence illustrates a recurrent problem of constitutional democracy: unilateral restraint can become strategically unstable.

Party A uses an available procedure to gain an advantage. Party B argues that continuing to obey a stronger norm would amount to unilateral disarmament. Party B responds in kind. The response becomes precedent. The next actor begins from the new baseline.

This does not make the two acts identical. Texas initiated the 2025 mid-decade escalation. California operated under a different constitutional system and obtained direct voter approval. The legal challenges were different. The maps and their effects were different.

Sequence and institutional form matter.

But the mechanism of escalation is real. A norm can disappear even when every actor offers a plausible defensive justification for abandoning it.

The same dynamic appeared in judicial nominations. It appears in filibuster rules. It can appear anywhere that political restraint is valuable only if the other side also expects to exercise it.

Democratic erosion does not always require illegal action. Sometimes it is the cumulative result of legal retaliation.

A nationally competitive House can contain locally predetermined elections

The House of Representatives can be decided by a very small number of seats while most districts remain relatively safe.

There is no contradiction. National competition and local competition are different levels of analysis.

If each party begins with a large base of districts it is highly likely to win, control of the House can turn on a narrower band of competitive seats. Voters in those swing districts possess unusually high leverage over national control. Voters in safe districts may have much less leverage over which party represents them, even though their votes count normally within the district.

This is another version of the problem introduced in Chapter 1. Equal ballots do not necessarily create equal political leverage.

A system can therefore remain capable of national alternation while offering weak local alternation to many citizens.

The general election can become ratification

In a safe district, a dominant-party primary can function like the real election and the general election like ratification.

That does not make the November vote meaningless. A scandal, extraordinary candidate, major political realignment, or rapid change in public opinion can still overturn assumptions. Safe is not the same as guaranteed.

The distinction is about probability and incentives.

If officeholders believe the serious threat comes from their own party rather than the opposition, their behavior will respond accordingly. Compromise across party lines can become electorally dangerous even when it would appeal to a broader general-election electorate.

The decision before the choice therefore influences governing behavior after the election as well.

Party discipline can be preventive rather than formal

American parties do not usually exercise discipline through the centralized candidate-list control common in some parliamentary systems. Members of Congress hold their own electoral mandates. Party leaders cannot simply erase an incumbent's name from the next ballot.

Discipline can work through other channels: committee assignments, endorsements, fundraising, access to party resources, public criticism, activist networks, and the prospect of a primary challenge.

This makes American party discipline easier to underestimate. The rule may remain formally open while incentives strongly favor staying inside the coalition's acceptable range.

The question for democracy is not whether politicians experience pressure. Politics necessarily creates pressure. It is whether the pressure becomes so strong that representatives lose the practical ability to bargain, dissent, or integrate information from outside their own coalition.

Trump turned loyalty into an additional Republican selection criterion

Trump did not create American polarization, and he did not invent primary challenges. The long ideological separation of the parties predates his political career.

But within the Republican Party, Trump added a distinctive form of candidate-selection pressure: personal loyalty to his leadership and his account of contested events could become relevant to endorsements, primary support, and political survival.

Candidates could be challenged not merely for ideological deviation but for insufficient alignment with Trump himself.

This should not be artificially mirrored with a Democratic equivalent where the evidence does not support one. Nor should it be exaggerated into total control. Trump-backed candidates can lose. Republican voters retain agency.

The point is narrower: the primary system that allowed Trump to capture the party also gave him a mechanism for attempting to reshape it afterward.

Endorsements shape the field without deciding it

Party organizations, elected officials, ideological groups, unions, donors, and activist networks can all determine whether a candidate becomes viable long before most voters pay attention.

An endorsement can signal legitimacy. Fundraising can make communication possible. Experienced staff and voter data can transform a campaign from symbolic to competitive. Early institutional support can discourage rivals from entering.

These are meaningful forms of pre-election power.

They are not the same as appointing the nominee. American voters repeatedly reject establishment-backed candidates. Party influence operates by shaping probability rather than issuing commands.

This distinction matters because democratic power is often probabilistic. The institution that makes one option far easier to see, finance, and organize can shape choice without formally removing any name from the ballot.

Money creates viability before it creates influence

Campaign finance will receive its own chapter because money affects policy access, speech, organization, and political power in ways far broader than nomination.

Here the relevant point is earlier and simpler. Running for office costs resources before a voter can choose the candidate.

A candidate needs staff, travel, legal compliance, communications, digital infrastructure, voter contact, advertising, and time. A campaign unable to clear that threshold may legally exist while remaining politically invisible.

Money therefore filters the candidate field before it attempts to persuade the electorate.

The existence of that filter does not imply that the richest candidate always wins. It means that viability itself is unequally distributed before the democratic contest begins.

Ballot access also organizes the menu

States impose filing deadlines, petition-signature requirements, party qualifications, fees, and other ballot-access rules. These requirements prevent ballots from becoming administratively unmanageable and can require a candidate to demonstrate a minimum level of support.

They can also make it difficult for independents, minor parties, and late-emerging candidates to reach voters.

Again, zero filtering is not a coherent democratic ideal. A ballot must have rules.

The important question is whether the threshold manages the election or protects existing political organizations from competition.

Presidential nominations expose the hidden machinery

Presidential nominations make party selection rules more visible because voters do not participate in one national primary. They participate in a sequence of state contests translated into delegates according to party rules.

Calendar position matters. Delegate-allocation formulas matter. A poor result in an early state can reduce fundraising, endorsements, media attention, and the perceived viability of a candidate before most Americans have voted.

The parties also do not use identical rules. The relationship between primary votes and delegates differs across the Democratic and Republican systems.

This makes the presidential nomination a useful boundary case: even a process experienced by voters as direct participation remains mediated by a party institution.

Biden's 2024 withdrawal revealed the institution behind the primary

The Democratic nomination in 2024 made that mediation unusually visible.

President Joe Biden had accumulated the pledged delegates needed to become the presumptive nominee. On July 21, he withdrew from the race before formal nomination.

There was no practical national mechanism to rerun fifty state primaries. Election calendars had advanced, ballot-access deadlines were approaching, and the party's existing rules already contained the institution designed to close the nomination: delegates.

The Democratic Party used a virtual nomination process before the physical convention. Kamala Harris was the only candidate to satisfy the required delegate-support threshold and became the nominee through the delegate vote.

The episode is sometimes described as though party elites simply discarded the primary result. That formulation is too crude. The candidate selected by the primary process had withdrawn.

The stronger democratic question is what kind of legitimacy should apply when the normal voter-selection process becomes impossible to repeat. The party chose institutional continuity through delegates rather than attempting to invent an emergency national primary that American election law was not built to conduct.

The party must be able to solve exceptional cases

No candidate-selection system can avoid contingency. Candidates die, withdraw, become incapacitated, or lose support after deadlines have passed. A party that lacked replacement rules would be less democratic, not more, because it could fail to present any viable candidate at all.

The existence of delegate or committee replacement procedures is therefore not itself evidence of anti-democratic control.

The legitimacy question lies in transparency, rule stability, and the relationship between the exceptional procedure and prior voter participation.

An emergency mechanism should solve an emergency. It should not become an ordinary way to bypass voters when ordinary selection remains available.

Reform can move power rather than eliminate it

Proposals to fix candidate selection often promise to restore moderation or empower ordinary voters. Open primaries, top-two systems, top-four systems, ranked-choice voting, independent commissions, and nonpartisan ballots can all change incentives.

None abolishes institutional power. They move it.

Opening a primary broadens participation but weakens the party's control over who selects its nominee. Top-two can create broader first-round competition but same-party general elections. Independent redistricting can reduce incumbent control while transferring authority to commissioners selected through another process.

The democratic evaluation must therefore follow power after reform rather than assuming it has disappeared.

Every voting system answers the same question differently: who gets to narrow the field, and at what stage?

The strongest defense of safe districts

A democracy does not require every district to be competitive.

Some communities genuinely hold durable political preferences. A district where seventy percent of voters consistently support one party may simply represent a real political community. Redrawing the lines to manufacture a fifty-fifty contest could split cities, counties, racial communities, or regions that have legitimate reasons to be represented together.

Competition is valuable, but representation is not merely a tournament for creating close elections.

A safe district can provide coherent representation and allow voters to choose among meaningful intra-party alternatives.

The danger begins when safety is deliberately engineered to protect those already in power rather than produced by the voters themselves.

The strongest objection to engineered safety

When mapmakers intentionally reduce the possibility of partisan alternation, the system acquires a self-protective quality.

The governing coalition is no longer merely competing under rules. It is helping design the future competition.

If the resulting map also helps the coalition retain control of the institution that will supervise the next redistricting cycle, correction becomes harder.

This is precisely where ordinary democratic advantage can become entrenchment.

The test is not whether politics entered the mapmaking process. Politics is unavoidable. The test is whether voters still possess a credible route to overturn the advantage despite the structure created by those who hold power.

The reciprocity test

Few issues expose partisan inconsistency more clearly than candidate selection and redistricting.

Would Democrats defend the same mid-decade mapping power if Republicans controlled California? Would Republicans defend open participation in a primary if Democratic voters could materially influence the Republican nominee? Would either party support an independent commission after discovering that the commission's map would cost it several House seats?

Would party leaders praise a primary challenger as healthy democratic competition when the challenger targeted one of their own most valuable incumbents?

Perfect consistency is unrealistic. But the exercise matters because democracy depends on rules designed for future adversaries, not only present allies.

A rule becomes more legitimate when the people who benefit from it today would still accept it after the partisan labels are reversed.

The act-evidence: can the offer itself be changed?

The most basic test of an election is whether voters can replace the officeholder.

For this chapter, that is not enough.

Can voters replace the candidate preferred by the party establishment? Trump in 2016 demonstrates that they can.

Can the general electorate replace the dominant party in a district when public opinion changes substantially, or has the map made alternation implausible even under meaningful shifts?

Can voters or independent institutions constrain partisan mapmakers? California's ordinary commission system is one answer; state-court enforcement is another.

Can the rules restrain the party that currently benefits from them? That is the harder test.

A democracy remains corrigible when citizens can alter not only who wins, but the political offer itself.

The decision before the choice

Voting is often described as the moment of democratic freedom. It is better understood as the end of a chain.

Before the voter chooses, someone drew the district. Someone determined the primary rule. Someone decided when the primary would occur. Someone qualified for the ballot and someone did not. Someone raised enough money to become visible. Someone received endorsements. Someone survived the party's internal competition.

None of these prior decisions automatically invalidates the election. All elections require structure.

The democratic problem begins when the structure becomes self-protective: when the people already holding political power gain too much control over who may realistically challenge them, which voters will judge them, or which stage of the process will contain the only meaningful competition.

The direct primary reminds us that reform can genuinely democratize selection. The Trump nomination reminds us that voters can still overturn party elites. The Texas-California redistricting cycle reminds us that institutional restraint can collapse through reciprocal escalation even when each side operates through legal procedures.

The central question is therefore not whether Americans have choices on the ballot. It is whether they still possess meaningful power over how those choices are produced.

The next chapter moves from parties as selectors to associations as democratic infrastructure. Candidate selection asks who gets onto the political stage. Association asks whether citizens possess the organizations, networks, unions, churches, civic groups, and collective capacities needed to act once they are there.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — Elections Clause and associational framework. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- Supreme Court — *Tashjian v. Republican Party of Connecticut*, 479 U.S. 208 (1986). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/479/208/>
- Supreme Court — *California Democratic Party v. Jones*, 530 U.S. 567 (2000). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/530/567/>
- Supreme Court — *Washington State Grange v. Washington State Republican Party*, 552 U.S. 442 (2008). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/552/442/>
- Supreme Court — *Rucho v. Common Cause*, 588 U.S. 684 (2019). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/18pdf/18-422_90li.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Louisiana v. Callais* (Apr. 29, 2026). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-109_2103.pdf
- National Conference of State Legislatures — State Primary Election Types, updated May 19, 2026. <https://www.ncsl.org/elections-and-campaigns/state-primary-election-types>
- National Conference of State Legislatures — State Primaries Toolkit, updated June 5, 2026. <https://www.ncsl.org/elections-and-campaigns/state-primaries-toolkit>
- Texas Legislature — Redistricting, Plan C2333 status for 2026 elections. <https://redistricting.capitol.texas.gov/>
- California Secretary of State — California Redistricting and Proposition 50. <https://www.sos.ca.gov/elections/california-redistricting>
- California Secretary of State — Nov. 4, 2025 Statement of Vote, Proposition 50. <https://www.sos.ca.gov/elections/prior-elections/statewide-election-results/statewide-special-nov-4-2025/statement-vote>
- Voteview — Party Polarization and Party Unity series. https://voteview.com/articles/party_polarization
- Brookings Institution — The Primaries Project. <https://www.brookings.edu/projects/the-primaries-project/>

CHAPTER 7

THE POLITICS OF ASSOCIATION

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

What one person cannot do alone

A worker with a grievance against a large employer has a voice. A tenant facing a property company has a voice. A parent dissatisfied with a school board has a voice. A resident angry about a local project has a voice. A worshipper, a patient, a consumer, a student, a retiree, a citizen with almost no money or access to officials can all speak.

That does not mean anyone powerful has to listen.

The distance between having an opinion and being able to make an institution respond is one of the central problems of democratic life. Elections close part of that distance. Associations close another part.

One worker can complain. A union can bargain. One resident can object. A neighborhood organization can assemble evidence, hire counsel, turn out members, speak to the press, and remain involved for years. One worshipper can believe. A congregation can provide rooms, volunteers, leadership, transportation, money, and an audience. One voter can write a representative. An organized constituency can generate thousands of calls, meetings, and votes.

Association changes the scale of action.

This is why civil society matters politically. It is not simply the pleasant space between government and private life. It is one of the principal ways people who do not possess wealth, office, or institutional authority acquire the capacity to act together.

Tocqueville's most durable insight

Tocqueville understood associations as one of the practical schools of democracy. Democratic societies, in his account, weaken inherited hierarchies and leave individuals formally equal but often individually small. The remedy is not to recreate aristocracy. It is to teach citizens how to combine.

The insight is still recognizable in contemporary America. To form an organization is to learn how to call a meeting, write a rule, collect dues, keep records, elect or appoint leaders, negotiate disagreement, distribute work, speak for a group, and survive the departure of particular members.

That is a kind of political education no civics textbook can provide.

But Tocqueville's insight needs to be extended. Modern associations operate through tax law, labor law, digital platforms, professional staffs, national fundraising networks, specialized litigation, political-data systems, and media ecosystems that did not exist in his world. Some are small and local. Others possess budgets and expertise comparable to major corporations.

The question is no longer simply whether Americans associate. It is what kinds of collective power those associations create, who has access to them, and whether they

connect citizens across social differences or organize them into increasingly separate worlds.

Civil society did not disappear

One of the easiest stories to tell about American democracy is that civic life collapsed and citizens retreated into private existence. The evidence does not support such a simple conclusion.

The federal Civic Engagement and Volunteering Supplement found that between September 2022 and September 2023, 28.3 percent of Americans age sixteen and older formally volunteered through an organization. That represented roughly 75.7 million people.

The same survey found that 54.2 percent helped or exchanged favors with neighbors.

Formal volunteering had rebounded sharply from the pandemic-era low measured in 2021, though it had not fully returned to the earlier pre-pandemic level.

The important point is not that American civic life is healthy in every respect. It is that disappearance is the wrong diagnosis.

Millions of Americans still give time through schools, congregations, food banks, clubs, disaster organizations, cultural groups, sports programs, professional associations, neighborhood networks, unions, campaigns, and advocacy organizations.

The democratic problem lies increasingly in the form and distribution of that participation.

Helping a neighbor is not the same as building an organization

Informal cooperation matters. A neighborhood where people lend tools, watch one another's children, help after a storm, or check on an elderly resident possesses real social capital.

But mutual help and organized power are not identical.

A group of neighbors can solve a local problem without becoming an institution. A durable association can preserve contact lists, collect money, retain counsel, elect leaders, own property, maintain a bank account, negotiate with officials, train new members, and continue after the original dispute is over.

This distinction matters because democracy needs both solidarity and persistence.

An emergency can generate enormous mutual aid. A political or economic conflict may require an organization capable of returning to the same institution repeatedly for years.

A movement can appear without learning how to remain

Mass mobilization is one of democracy's most visible forms. A march can fill a city. A petition can gather millions of names. A hashtag can move across the country in hours.

These acts can change agendas. They can recruit people who had never participated before. They can force journalists and officials to recognize an intensity that opinion polls do not capture.

But visibility and durability are different capacities.

A movement that attracts a million participants once may have less long-term institutional power than an organization with fifty thousand members, a legal staff, dues, local chapters, and established leadership succession.

The first demonstrates mobilization. The second demonstrates memory.

Democratic power often depends on the ability to return after the cameras leave.

An audience is not a membership

Digital politics makes this distinction harder to see. A public figure or movement can have millions of followers and still possess almost no formal organization.

Followers can receive messages. They can donate, repost, sign, or appear when called. They may have no internal vote, no chapter, no obligation to one another, and no stable mechanism for determining who speaks for the group.

A membership association can be far smaller and still be organizationally denser. Members may pay dues, elect officers, attend meetings, bargain collectively, adopt bylaws, and incur obligations that survive a news cycle.

Neither form is inherently superior. Digital audiences can mobilize at extraordinary speed. Membership organizations can sustain action at extraordinary duration.

The democratic question is what kind of capacity the relationship actually creates.

The labor union as a machine for converting weakness into power

Few institutions illustrate associational power more clearly than the labor union.

An individual employee negotiating with a large employer confronts a structural imbalance. The employer controls hiring, management, capital, and often specialized legal and human-resources systems. The worker controls the decision to offer labor, but the cost of refusing may be immediate and personal.

Collective bargaining changes the relation. Workers pool bargaining power, dues, information, representation, and the ability to withhold labor together.

The democratic significance goes beyond wages. A union can train members, provide counsel, build leadership, communicate with government, mobilize voters, support candidates, and preserve institutional knowledge.

It is an association in the Tocquevillian sense because it creates a collective actor where none existed before.

Union decline is real

The long-run decline in American union membership is one of the clearest changes in the country's associational landscape.

The Bureau of Labor Statistics reported a union membership rate of 10.0 percent among wage and salary workers in 2025, representing 14.7 million members. In 1983, the first year of the directly comparable series, the rate was 20.1 percent.

The share has therefore fallen by roughly half.

That does not mean unions disappeared. Fourteen million members remain a major organizational constituency. The institution also continues to represent some workers who are covered by union agreements without being union members.

But a form of collective organization that once touched a much larger share of the workforce now reaches a smaller minority.

That is a democratic change as well as a labor-market change. Fewer workers routinely participate in an institution built around collective negotiation.

The national average hides two different labor systems

Unionization is distributed unevenly across the economy. Public-sector workers are far more likely to be union members than private-sector workers.

This difference reflects law, history, occupation, employer structure, and the practical difficulty of organizing across fragmented private workplaces.

It also demonstrates a general principle of this chapter: associational capacity is never evenly available simply because a legal right exists.

Two workers can possess the same abstract freedom to organize and inhabit completely different institutional environments. One works where collective representation is normal and legally established. The other works where no union exists, turnover is high, and organizing may require building an institution from nothing.

Formal liberty does not equal equal capacity.

Low union density is not the same as no organizing

The recent data complicate the long decline. The National Labor Relations Board received 3,286 union election petitions in fiscal year 2024, a sharp increase from the previous year and more than twice the level reported in 2021.

In fiscal year 2025, representation petitions fell from that peak but remained elevated, with 2,743 petitions filed.

These numbers do not prove a new age of organized labor. They measure petitions, not successful long-term unions. A burst of organizing can coexist with low national density.

That is precisely what the evidence suggests: a weak historical baseline with real contemporary organizing activity.

Democratic institutions often look like this. Decline and experimentation occur at the same time.

The state is part of the associational infrastructure

Workers do not organize in a legal vacuum. The National Labor Relations Board provides an institutional pathway for representation elections, unfair-labor-practice claims, bargaining obligations, and remedies.

The Board does not create collective action. Workers organize themselves.

But the ability to turn organization into recognized representation depends partly on a public institution capable of processing disputes and enforcing rules.

This is an important limit to the idea of civil society as a sphere completely outside government. Associations often depend on legal frameworks that protect their existence, define their rights, and provide procedures against stronger private actors.

Freedom from the state and capacity through the state can coexist.

Janus and the freedom not to associate

Association creates power by pooling resources. That creates a difficult problem for individual liberty.

In *Janus v. AFSCME*, decided in 2018, the Supreme Court held that public employees who were not union members could not be compelled to pay agency fees supporting collective bargaining.

The First Amendment argument is substantial. A person should not be forced to subsidize expressive activity simply because the government has recognized one organization as the collective representative.

The collective-capacity argument is also substantial. If an organization is required to bargain or provide representation that benefits people who can refuse to help fund the institution, free riding may weaken the organization that produces the benefit.

The case reveals a tension that cannot be solved by treating one side as obviously democratic and the other as obviously anti-democratic.

Freedom of association means something if people can join. It also means something if they can refuse.

An organization that cannot be left is no longer merely an association

The democratic case for collective power depends on limits.

An organization that claims to speak for individuals who have no meaningful ability to dissent, exit, or replace leaders can become another source of domination.

This does not mean every association needs a plebiscite for every decision. Durable institutions require delegation. Unions need negotiators. Churches have clergy. nonprofits have boards. advocacy organizations need staff.

The question is whether authority circulates at all. Can members influence priorities? Can leaders be replaced under the organization's rules? Can individuals leave without losing rights the association has no legitimate power to condition?

Pluralism outside government is not enough if the institutions of pluralism become internally unaccountable.

Congregations are political infrastructure even when they are not campaign organizations

Religious congregations remain among the most durable forms of American association.

A church, synagogue, mosque, temple, or other congregation can provide more than worship. It can provide a building, recurring meetings, leadership roles, volunteer networks, childcare, transportation, charitable services, fundraising channels, and an audience accustomed to acting together.

Those resources are politically usable even when the congregation is not legally or institutionally a campaign organization.

Religious institutions have been central to movements for civil rights, abolition, temperance, anti-abortion politics, immigration advocacy, poverty relief, education, and many other causes.

Their political importance lies partly in what they believe and partly in what they are able to organize.

Religion does not point toward one party

Contemporary American religion is strongly related to partisanship, but not in one direction.

Pew's 2023-24 Religious Landscape Study found the adult public nearly evenly divided overall between Republican and Democratic identification or leaning. Beneath that national balance, religious traditions were distributed very differently.

Evangelical Protestants and Latter-day Saints leaned strongly Republican. Historically Black Protestants, Jewish Americans, Hindus, atheists, and agnostics leaned strongly Democratic. Other religious populations were more mixed.

White evangelical Protestants remain one of the most heavily Republican religious constituencies in the country.

It would therefore be analytically useless to use 'religious voter' as a synonym for Republican voter. Religion organizes multiple political coalitions.

Race changes the politics of religious intensity

The relationship becomes even more complicated when race is included.

Among White Americans, religious affiliation and intensity are strongly associated with Republican identification in many groups. Black Americans remain much more Democratic across levels of religious commitment.

Historically Black churches are therefore not a counterexample at the margins. They are evidence that religious organization can serve very different political traditions depending on history, community, and institutional role.

The democratic question is not whether religion politicizes citizens. Religious institutions have always shaped moral and political judgment.

The relevant question is what kinds of social ties religious institutions create and whether those ties connect citizens beyond a single partisan identity.

Bonding and bridging

Not all social capital does the same democratic work.

Some associations create bonding ties. They deepen trust and solidarity among people who already resemble one another socially, culturally, politically, or religiously.

Others create bridging ties. They place people in recurring cooperation with people who differ from them in meaningful ways.

Both forms can produce collective power. Only the second reliably gives citizens practice in working with people they might otherwise experience primarily as political opponents.

This distinction helps explain why a society can remain highly organized and become more polarized at the same time.

Associational density can rise while cross-cutting association declines.

Parallel civil societies

The contemporary danger may therefore be less the disappearance of civil society than its segmentation.

Citizens can belong to churches, advocacy groups, professional networks, volunteer organizations, political communities, and media ecosystems that rarely overlap with those of the opposing coalition.

The result is not atomization. It is organized separation.

That kind of society can mobilize extraordinarily well. It can raise money, recruit candidates, produce legal challenges, organize protests, and defend members.

What it may lose is routine cooperation across political difference.

A democracy can therefore become stronger at organizing camps and weaker at organizing a common life.

Partisan association is not a democratic defect by itself

This argument must not be converted into a demand that civil society become politically neutral.

An environmental organization exists because its members care about environmental policy. A gun-rights organization exists because its members want to defend gun rights. A labor union may take positions on labor law. A church may speak about abortion, poverty, migration, war, or education. A civil-rights organization may intervene aggressively in elections and legislation within the rules that apply to its legal form.

Associations are supposed to stand for things.

The democratic problem begins when the social world becomes so comprehensively aligned with partisan identity that disagreement requires leaving not merely a party but a community, network, congregation, profession, or source of belonging.

The cost of political independence then becomes social as well as electoral.

Tax law creates several kinds of political organization

American nonprofit law adds another layer to the associational landscape.

Organizations recognized under Section 501(c)(3), including churches and charities, are prohibited from participating or intervening in political campaigns for or against candidates for public office. That prohibition does not make them politically silent. They may engage in nonpartisan civic activity and issue advocacy within the rules that apply to them.

Other forms of nonprofit and membership organization operate under different constraints. Section 501(c)(4) organizations, labor organizations, trade associations, political committees, and other entities inhabit different legal lanes.

This means 'nonprofit' is not a political category. It is a family of legal forms with different rights, obligations, disclosure rules, and tax consequences.

The institutional design matters because political power can move through forms the ordinary voter does not distinguish.

Professionalization preserves power and creates distance

The romantic image of an association is a room full of citizens deciding everything themselves. Durable organizations rarely work that way for long.

A national civil-rights organization needs lawyers. An environmental group may need scientists. A union needs negotiators and organizers. A church needs administrators. An advocacy group may need fundraisers, researchers, communications staff, and database specialists.

Professionalization creates capacity. It allows members to pool resources and purchase expertise they could never acquire individually.

It can also create distance between the people represented and the people doing the representing.

Staff may become more responsive to donors, professional peers, media incentives, or institutional survival than to ordinary members.

The relevant democratic test is not whether professionals exist. It is whether information and authority still move in both directions.

Civil society can reproduce inequality

Calling all of these organizations 'associations' can conceal enormous differences in power.

A neighborhood volunteer group, a local congregation, a national trade association, a foundation-funded policy organization, and a major labor federation may all sit between citizen and government. They do not possess remotely equal resources.

One has volunteers and a mailing list. Another has lawyers, economists, lobbyists, offices in Washington, donor networks, litigation capacity, and permanent access to policymakers.

Pluralism therefore does not guarantee equality among organized interests.

A society can contain thousands of associations and still give a small number of professional organizations vastly greater capacity to influence institutions.

That problem will become more explicit when the book turns to political money. Here the important point is simpler: collective capacity is itself unequally distributed.

Protest makes an invisible conflict visible

Association also appears in more episodic forms. Protest is one of them.

A demonstration translates dispersed disagreement into physical presence. It tells officials that a preference is not merely held but intensely held. It can attract news coverage, recruit participants, generate donations, and force public institutions to respond.

The function is democratic even when the cause is unpopular or wrong.

The right to protest is not a certification of the protester's judgment. It is a mechanism by which disagreement becomes visible without requiring control of the government.

That is part of the constitutional meaning of assembly and petition.

Peaceful assembly does not erase ordinary law

The First Amendment protects peaceful assembly. It does not create a general right to assault people, destroy property, trespass indefinitely, or obstruct any facility for any political purpose.

That limitation matters because modern political rhetoric often treats an arrest at a demonstration as either automatic proof of repression or automatic proof that the demonstration was not protected.

Both conclusions can be wrong.

A large protest can contain thousands of peaceful participants and a small number of people committing crimes. The state may enforce ordinary law against the latter without treating every member of the crowd as a criminal.

The democratic test is precision: regulate the conduct that creates the legitimate problem without using it as a pretext to suppress the viewpoint.

Time, place, and manner are not trivial details

Democratic protest requires rules because streets, parks, campuses, and public buildings are shared spaces.

Governments can regulate traffic, safety, noise, access, and scheduling through content-neutral rules that satisfy constitutional standards.

Those rules become dangerous when officials gain enough discretion to allow friendly demonstrations and burden hostile ones.

The same pattern appears throughout this book: discretion is not necessarily abuse, but unexplained or one-sided discretion weakens corrigibility.

A permit requirement can organize competing uses of public space. A permit system used selectively can become a tool of political exclusion.

Petitioning government does not mean government must agree

The First Amendment protects the right to petition the government for redress of grievances. It does not create a right to the requested result.

That distinction protects both democratic voice and democratic government.

Citizens must be able to aggregate demands without government permission. Officials must retain authority to reject those demands after lawful consideration.

The democratic value lies in the pathway itself: people can organize a claim, demonstrate support, present evidence, create a record, and require political institutions to confront an argument they might prefer to ignore.

Congress has an infrastructure for receiving organized demands

Members of Congress maintain district offices, constituent-service systems, correspondence staff, legislative aides, and public contact channels.

One message rarely changes a national policy. Large volumes of coordinated contact can signal intensity and force staff attention.

Professional advocacy groups understand this and organize constituents accordingly. So do unions, businesses, ideological organizations, and local campaigns.

The existence of a reception system matters because citizens without personal access to a senator or representative still need a route into the institution.

Its weakness is predictable. The groups best able to coordinate messages, prepare evidence, and return repeatedly are more likely to be heard.

Open doors do not equal equal access.

Town halls make contradiction public

A town hall has almost no claim to statistical representativeness. The people who attend are self-selected, and organized groups can dominate the room.

Its democratic value is different.

An elected official must sometimes answer objections in public from citizens who are not part of a private donor meeting, party committee, or professional policy network.

That can be messy, theatrical, unfair, and still useful.

A political system in which elected officials never encounter unfiltered disagreement loses one of the ordinary disciplines of representation.

Digital organizing lowered the cost of beginning

The internet radically reduced the startup cost of association.

A new group can create an email list, payment system, group chat, petition, website, fundraising page, and national audience without first renting an office or building a local chapter structure.

That democratizes entry.

It also moves part of civil society onto privately governed infrastructure. Platforms can rank content, suspend accounts, change APIs, alter recommendation systems, or make organizing more expensive through rules no association controls.

The democratic consequences of platform power belong mainly to the later chapters on media and the factual world. The associational point is narrower: contemporary organizing increasingly depends on institutions that are neither government nor the organization itself.

Low cost can mean low commitment

The same technology that makes participation easy can make it thin.

Signing an online petition, liking a post, or forwarding a message may take seconds. That allows millions of people to signal support who would never attend a meeting or mail a check.

The low threshold is valuable. It is also ambiguous.

A movement does not know whether a million clicks will become ten thousand volunteers, one thousand donors, one hundred local organizers, or nothing at all.

The passage from attention to obligation is one of the defining problems of digital association.

Local action creates the shortest democratic feedback loop

National politics is psychologically distant. A citizen can vote, call Congress, protest, and still wait years to know whether anything changed.

Local association often provides a shorter connection between action and result.

Residents can organize a park cleanup, school campaign, neighborhood watch, food program, zoning objection, cultural event, or local service and see an outcome within weeks.

This is one reason Tocqueville's emphasis on local practice remains so powerful. Democratic competence is easier to learn when citizens can observe the connection between effort and consequence.

But local organization can also become exclusionary. Homeowners with time, knowledge, and stable property interests may dominate hearings in ways that impose costs on renters, newcomers, or future residents who are not organized.

Participation is power. Power does not become neutral because it is local.

Participation itself is unequally affordable

Joining an organization takes resources that are easy to overlook.

Meetings take time. Volunteering requires hours that cannot be spent working or caregiving. Campaigns require transportation, childcare, information, confidence, and often money.

Citizens who control their schedules or possess stable professional lives can participate more easily than people working multiple jobs or unpredictable shifts.

That does not invalidate voluntary participation. It means that formally open civic life can reproduce the inequalities of the society around it.

The citizen who has the right to attend a seven o'clock hearing but cannot leave work at six does not possess the same practical political capacity as the citizen who can.

This is where association leads directly into the next chapter.

More participation can become participation theater

Institutions increasingly invite public input through hearings, advisory boards, consultations, and comment periods.

The existence of a microphone is not proof of influence.

A government can solicit comments after the decisive commitment has already been made. An agency can hold a hearing without addressing the principal objections. An organization can ask members for input while leadership has no intention of reconsidering the result.

None of this means every consultation that fails to change policy is fraudulent. Decision-makers can hear an argument and reject it for legitimate reasons.

The relevant test is whether participation occurs before irreversibility and whether institutions can explain what they did with the contradiction they invited.

Association can be powerful without being virtuous

Civil society should not be treated as morally superior to government.

Associations can discriminate. They can spread falsehoods. They can defend monopolies. They can radicalize members. They can intimidate dissenters. They can protect privileged insiders against outsiders. They can build social solidarity around exclusion.

The First Amendment protects many organizations because pluralism requires allowing people to combine around causes others consider wrong.

The democratic defense of association is therefore not that associations are always good.

It is that concentrated government and concentrated private power become more difficult to contest when citizens cannot organize independently of them.

The strongest case for large, professional organizations

Some political problems require specialization.

A person challenging discrimination may need lawyers. A community contesting a pollution decision may need scientists. Workers may need experienced negotiators. A disability-rights group may need experts who understand federal regulation. A religious charity may need administrators capable of operating at scale.

Professionalization allows ordinary people to pool resources and obtain capabilities otherwise reserved for wealthy individuals or corporations.

The democratic danger is not expertise. It is disconnection.

An organization becomes less representative when the professional apparatus can preserve itself regardless of what members want or when donors become more important than the constituency whose name justifies the institution.

The strongest objection to the Tocquevillian romance

Associational life can cure democratic isolation and create new forms of social enclosure at the same time.

A tightly organized political, religious, ideological, or economic group can make members more capable while making the broader public more fragmented.

This is the modern correction to Tocqueville. Association is a technology of power before it is a guarantee of moderation.

The democratic quality of the technology depends on what it allows citizens to do, how its own authority is constrained, whether members can leave, and whether some associations still bridge differences rather than merely fortifying camps.

The reciprocity test

Association is an unusually easy place for partisan standards to collapse.

A conservative may defend religious associational freedom and condemn union power. A progressive may defend union power and distrust conservative religious organizations. A movement may describe disruption as legitimate protest when its own supporters act and as intimidation when opponents do the same.

The democratic standard has to survive reversal.

A union and a trade association should both be evaluated as organizations capable of concentrating resources. A progressive nonprofit and a conservative advocacy organization should receive the same First Amendment baseline. A favored protest does not acquire a greater right to violence, and a disfavored protest does not lose the right to peaceful assembly.

Without reciprocity, pluralism becomes permission for allies.

The act-evidence: can weak citizens make power answer?

The act-evidence for this chapter is not membership itself.

It is response.

Can a group of people with little individual power create an organization durable enough that an employer negotiates, a court hears a claim, a legislature receives evidence, an agency answers, a local government changes a proposal, or a national institution is forced to explain itself?

The result need not be victory. Democracy cannot promise that every organized demand wins.

The proof is that organization changes the relationship enough that power cannot simply ignore the people involved.

That is what association contributes that private opinion does not.

The freedom to become capable together

The previous chapter examined how political alternatives are selected before the general election. This chapter moves even farther outside the ballot box.

Citizens do not become politically meaningful only when they vote. They become politically capable when they can build institutions of their own.

American civil society remains substantial. The evidence does not support a simple story of civic disappearance. But the old associational world has changed. Union density is lower. Participation is unequally affordable. Digital networks create reach without always creating membership. Religious and civic institutions are often strongly sorted by party. Large professional organizations possess capacities local citizens cannot match.

None of this makes association obsolete. It makes its distribution more important.

A democracy in which only wealthy citizens, major companies, large donors, and professional organizations can sustain political action between elections is formally pluralist and substantively unequal.

A democracy in which ordinary people can still combine, pool modest resources, create leadership, hire expertise, survive defeat, and return to institutions with another demand retains a deeper form of political freedom.

The next chapter asks who is actually able to do that. If citizens are equal before the law but radically unequal in time, wealth, education, mobility, and networks, then the freedom to associate may itself be distributed unequally. The problem shifts from collective power to political capacity.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Census Bureau — Civic Engagement and Volunteering Supplement, Nov. 19, 2024. <https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2024/civic-engagement-volunteering-supplement.html>
- U.S. Census Bureau — Civic engagement and volunteerism research, Nov. 2024. <https://www.census.gov/library/stories/2024/11/civic-engagement-and-volunteerism.html>
- AmeriCorps — Volunteering and Civic Life in America, 2023 data. https://www.americorps.gov/sites/default/files/document/2025-01/CEV2023_HeadlineReport_12192024_508.pdf
- Bureau of Labor Statistics — Union Members 2025, Feb. 18, 2026. <https://www.bls.gov/news.release/pdf/union2.pdf>
- National Labor Relations Board — FY2025 Performance and Accountability Report. <https://www.nlr.gov/sites/default/files/attachments/pages/node-130/nlr-fy2025-par.pdf>
- National Labor Relations Board — FY2024 representation-petition data. <https://www.nlr.gov/news-outreach/news-story/union-petitions-filed-with-nlr-double-since-fy-2021-up-27-since-fy-2023>
- Supreme Court — Janus v. AFSCME, 585 U.S. 878 (2018). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/16-1466_2b3j.pdf
- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — First Amendment. <https://constitution.congress.gov/>
- Internal Revenue Service — Political Campaign Intervention guidance for 501(c)(3) organizations. https://www.irs.gov/pub/irs-tege/tax-exempt_organizations_should_avoid_political_campaign_intervention.pdf
- Pew Research Center — Religion, partisanship and ideology, Feb. 26, 2025. <https://www.pewresearch.org/religion/2025/02/26/religion-partisanship-and-ideology/>

CHAPTER 8

EQUAL CITIZENS, UNEQUAL POLITICAL CAPACITY

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

Two citizens, one vote each

Imagine two citizens who live in the same congressional district and possess exactly the same legal vote.

One leaves work at four. The other does not know until noon whether the shift will end at six or ten. One can drive to a school-board meeting, make a \$250 contribution without changing the household budget, spend a Saturday canvassing, and call an attorney when a local rule becomes complicated. The other depends on a bus that stops running early, cannot give up an evening shift, and would feel a \$250 expense for months.

Their citizenship is equal in a real and important sense. Neither has more votes than the other. Both can speak, petition, organize, donate within the law, and run for office if they satisfy the same formal requirements.

Their political capacity is not equal.

The gap is not located in the Constitution. It appears in the cost of using constitutional freedom.

Democratic equality therefore has at least two dimensions. The first is status: the law recognizes citizens as political equals. The second is capacity: citizens possess the practical resources needed to turn a preference into sustained political action.

A democracy can achieve the first and remain deeply unequal in the second.

Formal equality is not a fiction

It would be a mistake to begin by dismissing legal equality as empty.

The abolition of property qualifications, racial exclusions, sex exclusions, poll taxes, and other barriers transformed American citizenship. A wealthy person does not receive ten ballots. A person without property is not assigned a lesser First Amendment. A citizen does not need a university degree to vote, join a political organization, or petition a representative.

Those achievements matter because legal status sets the floor beneath all political capacity.

But a floor is not a measure of everything that happens above it.

Two citizens can possess the same right and face very different prices for using it. The difference is familiar in other parts of life. A public library is open to everyone, but the person who lives next door can use it more easily than the person who needs two buses and has no childcare. The formal rule is equal. The practical burden is not.

Political rights work the same way.

The hidden price of participation

Democratic participation consumes resources.

Voting takes time. Organizing takes more. A citizen who wants to follow a zoning case, attend hearings, read an agency proposal, volunteer for a campaign, testify before a school board, protest, serve on a civic committee, or run for office must spend hours that cannot be spent somewhere else.

Some of those hours are inexpensive. Others are lost wages.

The difference between those costs can determine who appears in public life.

The citizen who can rearrange a salaried workday experiences participation differently from the citizen whose employer controls the schedule. A retiree may be able to attend a ten o'clock public hearing that an hourly worker cannot. A parent with paid childcare may be able to volunteer every weekend. A parent without it may support the same cause and never appear at a meeting.

Political absence is therefore difficult to interpret. Sometimes people do not participate because they do not care. Sometimes the price of caring is too high.

Time is the least visible political resource

Money is easier to see because it leaves records. Time rarely does.

The American Time Use Survey demonstrates that civic, organizational, and religious activities occupy measurable portions of everyday life. The national averages are small because most people do not perform these activities every day. The political significance lies precisely in who can repeatedly supply the hours.

A meeting is formally open if anyone may attend. It is practically selective if attendance requires a predictable evening, transportation, and the ability to absorb several unpaid hours.

The same is true of campaign work, union organizing, public comment, litigation support, and local government.

Time is not merely leisure. It is control over one's schedule.

That distinction matters in a labor market where two people with similar incomes may have radically different predictability. A physician and a restaurant manager may both work long hours, but the kinds of control they possess over those hours can differ. A gig worker may appear flexible while actually being economically compelled to accept work whenever it becomes available.

Political capacity depends on time that can be deliberately allocated, not simply time that appears blank on a calendar.

Income is not wealth

Economic inequality is often discussed as though one number captured it. It does not.

Income is a flow. Wealth is a stock.

A household can earn a respectable income and still have little savings, high debt, and no ability to survive several months without pay. Another household with the same annual income may own a home outright, hold financial assets, and possess enough liquid savings to absorb unemployment or finance a political project.

Those households are not equally secure.

Security matters politically because political action often contains risk. Running for office can require leaving a job. Organizing at work can threaten relationships or employment. Litigation can take years. Activism can consume weekends, travel, and money. A public campaign can fail.

Wealth buys the ability to survive failure.

That is one of the most important political properties of wealth and one of the least visible.

The middle does not describe the distribution

The Census Bureau reported real median household income of \$83,730 in 2024, statistically unchanged from 2023.

The median is useful because it tells us where the middle household stands. It does not tell us how far the top is from the bottom or what kinds of assets families possess behind their annual income.

The same 2024 report found that income at the 90th percentile increased while changes at the 10th and 50th percentiles were not statistically significant.

That is not evidence of a sudden one-year transformation of the class structure. The Census Bureau did not find a statistically significant year-over-year change in the Gini index.

The stronger conclusion is persistence. The United States entered 2025 with substantial income inequality already in place.

For democratic analysis, the question is what that persistent difference permits people to do.

Poverty is not the same thing as inequality

A society can reduce poverty without becoming economically equal. It can become more unequal while poverty falls. It can also become more equal while leaving severe deprivation unchanged.

The Census Bureau's official poverty rate for 2024 was 10.6 percent. The Supplemental Poverty Measure was 12.9 percent. The measures answer different questions because they count resources and necessary expenses differently.

For this book, poverty matters because insecurity changes the cost of political independence.

A citizen worried about food, rent, medical bills, or the next paycheck does not lose constitutional rights. But the bandwidth available for sustained political action is narrower.

The democratic injury is not that poor citizens lack opinions. It is that ordinary political acts can require sacrifices that better-off citizens barely notice.

Redistribution changes capacity even when it does not create equality

Federal taxes and transfer programs materially change household resources. Social Security, refundable tax credits, food assistance, health programs, and other benefits reduce poverty or stabilize income for millions of people.

That should be treated as an institutional fact rather than a partisan slogan.

The democratic significance of social insurance is not limited to consumption. A person with health coverage can take risks that a person facing catastrophic medical exposure may avoid. A retiree with predictable Social Security income can participate in civic life without depending entirely on family or employment. Food and housing stability can free attention for activities that are impossible during crisis.

None of this means more redistribution mechanically produces more democracy.

A benefit can stabilize a citizen while the bureaucracy required to obtain it consumes enormous time. Means tests, documentation, recertification, appeals, fragmented agencies, and fear of losing eligibility can create their own form of dependence.

The right question is not how much government gives. It is whether the institutional arrangement increases or consumes independent capacity.

Administrative burden is a political burden

This problem is easy to miss because paperwork looks politically neutral.

A citizen may qualify for a benefit and still spend hours proving eligibility, producing documents, traveling to offices, waiting on calls, or appealing mistakes. Those costs are disproportionately heavy for people with unstable jobs, limited transportation, disabilities, language barriers, or irregular housing.

Administrative burden therefore sits at the intersection of state capacity and personal capacity.

A program can expand material security while making access difficult enough that some eligible people never receive it.

The same logic appeared in Chapter 5 with voting. A legal entitlement is only as usable as the pathway that delivers it.

Democratic institutions should be judged partly by how much scarce citizen time they require simply to remain eligible for rights or benefits already established by law.

Wealth is more concentrated than ordinary income

The Federal Reserve's Distributional Financial Accounts track household wealth across groups from the bottom half to the top one-tenth of one percent.

The exact shares move with asset prices, and a single quarter should not be treated as eternal. The structural fact is much more stable: ownership of equities, businesses, and other financial assets is concentrated toward the top of the distribution.

This matters because wealth compounds capacity.

A large asset base generates income, collateral, security, investment opportunities, and social connections. It can finance political activity without threatening a household's ordinary standard of living.

The political meaning of a \$10,000 expenditure therefore depends partly on who spends it. For one household it may be impossible. For another it may be financially trivial.

The law can give both citizens the same contribution limit and still leave the sacrifice radically unequal.

Asset ownership creates different exposures to prosperity

The Federal Reserve's 2022 Survey of Consumer Finances found that 58 percent of families owned stocks directly or indirectly.

Ownership was far from evenly distributed. Roughly a third of families in the lower half of the income distribution owned stocks, compared with overwhelming majorities near the top.

The value of those holdings also differed dramatically.

When financial markets rise, millions of households can benefit. But the magnitude of the gain depends on how much the household owned before the increase.

This is why economic expansion does not automatically narrow differences in security or political risk tolerance.

A rising market can improve many balance sheets and widen the distance between them at the same time.

Race and wealth remain intertwined

American wealth differences cannot be understood without racial history.

The 2022 Survey of Consumer Finances showed large gaps in median wealth across racial and ethnic groups. Black families experienced substantial gains between 2019 and 2022, yet their median wealth remained far below that of White families and some other groups.

Those facts should be held together.

Progress does not require convergence to be complete before it counts. Persistent disparity does not disappear because one period produced rapid gains.

Race also cannot be reduced to income. Homeownership, inheritance, neighborhood history, age, debt, family structure, and past exclusion from asset-building institutions all shape wealth.

The democratic consequence is again capacity. Families with fewer assets have less room to absorb political, occupational, or legal risk even when current incomes look similar.

Class cannot replace race, and race cannot replace class

American political analysis often tries to find one master variable. That instinct is especially dangerous here.

A low-income White household and a low-income Black household can share important economic constraints while inheriting different institutional histories. A wealthy Black household and a poor Black household share a racial classification without sharing the same economic capacity.

Class and race intersect. They do not dissolve into one another.

The same caution applies to geography, education, and age.

The purpose of a capacity analysis is not to sort citizens into one hierarchy. It is to understand how several constraints combine to make political action cheaper for some and more expensive for others.

Inequality and mobility are different questions

An unequal society can still be mobile if children frequently move to economic positions far from those of their parents. A more equal society can remain rigid if family position strongly predicts adult position.

For democracy, both dimensions matter.

Current inequality determines who has more capacity now. Mobility determines whether those differences become inherited political structures.

A democracy can tolerate large inequalities more easily when social positions remain permeable. It becomes harder to defend those inequalities when wealth, neighborhood, education, and networks reproduce themselves so reliably that political capacity begins to resemble status inheritance.

This is where Tocqueville's equality of conditions becomes useful again. The modern question is not whether incomes are equal. It is whether social position hardens.

The Opportunity Atlas makes geography visible

The Opportunity Atlas links anonymous longitudinal data to childhood neighborhoods and adult outcomes. It shows striking differences in economic mobility across places that can be geographically close.

The project does not establish that a ZIP code mechanically determines destiny. Families choose neighborhoods for reasons that also affect outcomes, and the researchers use sophisticated methods to address selection.

But the evidence makes one conclusion difficult to avoid: opportunity is spatially organized.

A child with a given parental income can face different adult prospects depending on local institutions, peers, schools, labor markets, safety, transportation, and networks.

Federalism therefore has an economic dimension. Citizenship is national, but the environments that help create later political capacity are profoundly local.

Changing Opportunity complicates the usual story

The 2026 Quarterly Journal of Economics publication known as Changing Opportunity followed roughly 57 million children born between 1978 and 1992.

Its findings resist a simple narrative of universal progress or universal decline.

Among White children, earnings rose for those born to higher-income parents and fell for those born to lower-income parents, widening the class gap substantially.

Among Black children, earnings improved across parental-income levels, narrowing part of the earnings gap between Black and White children from low-income families.

Class inequality and racial inequality therefore moved differently over the cohorts studied.

That matters for this book because democratic analysis is weakened when every form of inequality is assumed to move together.

Some barriers can become more permeable while others harden.

Environment is a mechanism, not a sentence

The Changing Opportunity research links these shifts to changes in childhood environments, including local parental employment and the economic circumstances of peer groups.

Those are causal claims based on research design, not simple descriptive statistics.

The distinction matters.

A public dataset can tell us that children from two places experienced different outcomes. A causal study attempts to determine how much the place itself contributed to the difference.

The result is evidence that opportunity is socially produced without implying that individuals are trapped by geography.

Credit determines which risks can be financed

Political capacity is connected to institutions that are not normally described as political.

Credit is one of them.

The Opportunity Atlas added credit outcomes in 2025, including credit scores, delinquencies, mortgage borrowing, card balances, and student debt for relevant cohorts.

Credit affects the ability to buy a home, finance education, start a business, move, or survive an emergency.

Each of those choices changes the margin available for civic action.

A citizen whose financial life is organized around expensive debt or constant liquidity risk is not less democratic in character. The citizen simply has fewer options.

Political independence is partly built from economic options that are rarely labeled political.

Education correlates strongly with voting

The Census Bureau's 2024 voting and registration tables showed a large turnout gradient by educational attainment.

Among citizens in the published categories, reported turnout was 82.5 percent for those with an advanced degree and 77.2 percent for those with a bachelor's degree, compared with 52.5 percent for high-school graduates.

Those numbers do not prove that education causes voting by itself. Education is correlated with age, income, residential stability, occupation, political interest, and other factors.

But the pattern demonstrates that the electorate that actually participates is not socially identical to the citizen population that is formally entitled to participate.

Political equality at the ballot therefore coexists with unequal probability of using the ballot.

Education is also a place where civic skills are produced

Voting is only one part of the relationship between education and politics.

Political institutions are full of learned tasks: reading a legal notice, speaking at a hearing, drafting a letter, evaluating evidence, understanding a budget, chairing a meeting, managing volunteers, navigating a bureaucracy.

Schools and universities can teach some of these abilities. So can workplaces, churches, unions, military service, clubs, neighborhood organizations, and campaigns.

This is why civic skill should not be treated as a synonym for formal education.

A citizen with little schooling can become an extraordinarily sophisticated political organizer through practical institutions. A highly educated citizen can remain politically passive.

The democratic question is where opportunities to learn political competence are located.

Networks are a form of political capital

Two citizens confronting the same problem may begin from different networks.

One knows a lawyer, a journalist, a city official, a union organizer, a donor, or someone who has already navigated the relevant agency. The other begins with a search engine.

The difference saves time, clarifies procedure, and increases confidence.

Networks can therefore operate like capital. They reduce the cost of turning a problem into action.

This is not necessarily corruption. A citizen asking a knowledgeable friend for advice has not purchased government.

The inequality lies in access to people who know what to do next.

Associations partly solve this problem by making networks collective rather than private.

Political access is not the same as bribery

A wealthy donor who can obtain a meeting with a senator possesses an advantage. That fact alone does not establish a corrupt exchange.

A union leader, civil-rights attorney, business association, mayor, nonprofit director, or major donor may all gain access because they represent resources, constituencies, expertise, or political consequences that officials consider relevant.

The democratic problem is unequal opportunity to enter the room, not necessarily illegal conduct inside it.

That distinction matters because sloppy use of the word corruption hides the actual mechanism.

Chapter 9 will examine money, campaign finance, and lobbying directly. This chapter establishes the unequal distribution of the resources that make those channels easier to use.

Running for office has an economic gate

The right to run for office is formally broad. Candidacy is economically demanding.

A campaign requires time before it produces any income. It can require childcare, transportation, travel, compliance work, digital services, fundraising, and months of uncertainty.

A wealthy candidate can self-finance some of those costs. A candidate with a secure spouse, savings, or professional network can absorb them more easily than someone living paycheck to paycheck.

This does not mean only wealthy people can win elections. American politics contains candidates who built campaigns from modest beginnings.

The point is probabilistic: some citizens can afford to try and fail.

The ability to survive failure is a major political resource.

Representation does not require a demographic mirror

The conclusion should not be that legislatures are democratic only when their members reproduce the income distribution of the population.

Representation is not statistical sampling.

A wealthy representative can faithfully represent poor constituents. A representative from a working-class background can pursue policies those constituents reject.

The concern is access to candidacy, not resemblance as an end in itself.

If the practical costs of campaigning make entire classes of citizens extremely unlikely to run, the range of experience available inside representative institutions narrows before voters make any judgment about the candidates.

Housing stability is civic infrastructure

Stable housing reduces the administrative cost of citizenship.

It stabilizes voter registration, local knowledge, school relationships, transportation routes, neighborhood networks, and access to local organizations.

Frequent moves disrupt those connections.

Again, this is not a moral distinction between homeowners and renters. Renters can be deeply rooted; owners can be socially isolated.

The relevant variable is stability.

A democracy organized around local jurisdictions quietly rewards citizens who remain in one place long enough to learn how those jurisdictions work.

Transportation is still political

Digital participation did not eliminate geography.

Polling places, courthouses, union halls, city councils, protests, campaign offices, party meetings, schools, and public hearings are physical places.

Reliable transportation lowers the cost of reaching them.

A citizen with a car in a rural county and a citizen without one may inhabit very different civic geographies. Urban transit can expand access or impose its own time costs depending on service.

Chapter 5 treated transportation as part of ballot access. Here it belongs to a broader point: political life still requires movement through space.

Health changes the price of participation

Illness, disability, and caregiving obligations consume resources.

A citizen managing chronic illness may have less predictable time, greater transportation needs, or higher financial risk. A caregiver may be unable to attend meetings scheduled without accommodation.

Accessible procedures, remote participation, disability protections, and reliable health coverage can reduce those barriers.

They cannot make every citizen equally situated.

The relevant democratic principle is not to interpret physical or medical constraint as political disinterest when institutions could reasonably lower the cost of participation.

Information also has a price

Government produces an enormous amount of information. Budgets, court filings, agency notices, zoning documents, procurement records, school-board agendas, environmental assessments, and legislative amendments are formally public in many settings.

Public availability does not mean equal usability.

Understanding these documents takes time and sometimes expertise. People whose jobs or education expose them to legal and bureaucratic language have an advantage.

Organizations can democratize that advantage by hiring specialists once for many members.

This is one of the strongest answers to individual capacity inequality: collective institutions can turn scarce expertise into a shared resource.

Association is the counterweight to individual inequality

The previous chapter described association as a way weak individuals become capable together. That mechanism is central here.

A worker who cannot hire a labor lawyer can join a union. A tenant who cannot afford counsel can join a tenant organization. A disabled citizen can rely on an advocacy group with policy expertise. A congregation can provide transportation, meeting space, and volunteers. A veterans organization can help members navigate a federal bureaucracy.

Association does not eliminate inequality. It changes the unit of action.

This is why the decline or absence of intermediary organizations matters more for low-resource citizens than for people who can purchase the same capacity privately.

A wealthy citizen can hire what an ordinary citizen may need to build collectively.

Public institutions can make rights cheaper to use

Not every capacity gap requires transferring private resources.

Institutional design can reduce the cost of citizenship.

Same-day voter registration can reduce the penalty for an administrative mistake. Remote attendance can reduce transportation costs. Plain-language notices can reduce expertise barriers. Publicly accessible data can reduce research costs. Constituent services can reduce the need for private intermediaries. Accessible meeting times can reduce scheduling burdens.

These measures do not equalize citizens economically.

They reduce the price of using political rights.

That may be a more precise democratic goal than equalizing every resource that influences participation.

The strongest case for allowing unequal outcomes

A liberal democracy does not promise economic sameness.

People choose different occupations, take different risks, save differently, inherit different amounts, live in different places, form different households, build firms, lose firms, and accumulate resources across a lifetime.

Some inequality will therefore exist in any society that preserves substantial private choice and property.

Attempts to equalize political communication by limiting how much citizens may spend to express ideas also collide with serious First Amendment concerns. Government cannot easily ration political speech according to a theory of how much influence each citizen deserves.

The fact that unequal resources affect politics does not create a simple constitutional mandate to equalize them.

The strongest objection to durable capacity hierarchy

The objection begins when inequality becomes self-reinforcing.

The same citizens repeatedly have the savings to take political risks, the education to understand institutions, the networks to reach decision-makers, the flexible time to participate, and the money to remain involved after losing.

Their children then inherit neighborhoods, schools, assets, and networks that reproduce those advantages.

At that point formal equality can coexist with a stable hierarchy of political effectiveness.

No one needs to steal a vote. Power can become unequal through the cumulative cost of using equal rights.

Why oligarchy is too large a word for the evidence

It is tempting to call any system with concentrated wealth an oligarchy.

That skips a necessary step.

Wealth must be converted into governing power. Rich candidates can lose. Wealthy donors can fail to persuade voters. Corporations can lose regulatory fights. Organized low-income citizens can win.

The democratic concern is therefore a mechanism, not a label.

Where does wealth buy time, access, expertise, communication, litigation, organization, or the ability to survive defeat? How often do those advantages determine outcomes? Which institutions counterbalance them?

Those questions should be answered before the regime is named.

Capacity is relational

Political capacity does not exist entirely inside the citizen.

It depends on the institution being confronted.

A neighborhood association may have enough power to alter a local street plan and almost none to change federal tax policy. A worker may be weak against an employer individually and strong through a union. A wealthy citizen may possess enormous campaign resources and still be unable to reverse a final court judgment.

Capacity is therefore relational: actor, resources, institution, rule, and available remedy.

That makes it measurable.

Instead of asking whether a citizen is powerful in the abstract, ask what the citizen can cause a particular institution to do.

The conversion test

The best way to analyze inequality democratically is at the point of conversion.

Who can convert an opinion into attendance? Who can convert attendance into organization? Who can convert organization into expertise? Who can convert expertise into institutional access? Who can convert defeat into another attempt?

These questions reveal differences that wealth statistics alone cannot.

A citizen with modest income but a strong union, church, professional community, or neighborhood network may possess substantial political capacity.

A wealthier citizen who is isolated may possess less than the balance sheet suggests.

Resources matter through institutions.

The act-evidence: can modest resources sustain citizenship?

The act-evidence for this chapter is practical.

Can a citizen with modest income and little wealth participate meaningfully without putting basic economic security at risk?

Can the citizen attend, organize, petition, vote, learn the procedure, and survive a setback?

Can associations supply expertise that the citizen could never buy alone? Can public institutions lower the cost of access? Can a mistake be corrected without requiring a lawyer or several unpaid days?

The democratic test is not whether every citizen can devote the same amount of time or money to politics.

It is whether ordinary participation remains genuinely available to people who cannot purchase political capacity privately.

Equal citizens, unequal political capacity

Part II began with the ballot and moved steadily backward.

Chapter 5 asked whether an eligible citizen could actually cast a vote. Chapter 6 asked how the choices on that ballot were produced. Chapter 7 asked whether citizens could build organizations between elections.

This chapter asks who can afford to use all of those opportunities.

The answer is unequal.

That inequality does not erase American democracy. Legal equality remains one of its deepest achievements. Wealth does not automatically buy votes, office, or obedience. Citizens with few resources repeatedly organize and win.

But democratic freedom is more expensive for some people than for others.

Time, wealth, education, networks, health, housing stability, transportation, and the ability to survive risk shape who can remain present long enough to matter.

A resilient democracy does not need to make those resources identical. It needs enough institutions that people with modest resources can still become effective political actors.

That is the threshold between social inequality and political hierarchy.

Part III now turns to the powers that occupy the space between citizen and state at much greater scale. The first is money itself — not as a measure of personal wealth, but as an organized political instrument.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Census Bureau — Income, Poverty and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2024. <https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2025/income-poverty-health-insurance-coverage.html>
- U.S. Census Bureau — Income in the United States: 2024. <https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2025/demo/p60-286.html>
- U.S. Census Bureau — 2024 Presidential Election Voting and Registration Tables. <https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2025/2024-presidential-election-voting-registration-tables.html>
- Federal Reserve — Distributional Financial Accounts. <https://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/z1/dataviz/dfa/>
- Federal Reserve — Survey of Consumer Finances. <https://www.federalreserve.gov/econres/scfindex.htm>
- Federal Reserve — Changes in U.S. Family Finances from 2019 to 2022. <https://www.federalreserve.gov/publications/october-2023-changes-in-us-family-finances-from-2019-to-2022.htm>
- Federal Reserve — Greater Wealth, Greater Uncertainty: Changes in Racial Inequality in the Survey of Consumer Finances. <https://www.federalreserve.gov/econres/notes/feds-notes/greater-wealth-greater-uncertainty-changes-in-racial-inequality-in-the-survey-of-consumer-finances-20231018.html>
- Bureau of Labor Statistics — American Time Use Survey 2024. https://www.bls.gov/news.release/archives/atus_o6262025.pdf
- U.S. Census Bureau — Opportunity Atlas Data Tables. <https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/ces/data/public-use-data/opportunity-atlas-data-tables.html>
- Opportunity Insights — Changing Opportunity, *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 2026. <https://opportunityinsights.org/paper/changingopportunity/>

PART III

**POWERS BETWEEN CITIZEN AND
STATE**

CHAPTER 9

MONEY WITHOUT A PRICE TAG

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

One vote each, ten dollars and ten million

Two citizens enter an election with the same formal vote and the same First Amendment. One can spend ten dollars on political expression. The other can spend ten million.

The second citizen does not receive more ballots. The voting machine does not multiply the vote. The Constitution does not convert dollars into legal suffrage.

Yet the ten million dollars can do things the ten dollars cannot. It can hire staff, lawyers, pollsters, media consultants, field organizers, data specialists, researchers, fundraisers, and advertising firms. It can keep a message on television, online, in mailboxes, and on phones for months. It can finance litigation, create organizations, retain experts, and make a political argument impossible to ignore.

That difference is real even if the better-funded side loses.

Political money has no fixed exchange rate. A dollar does not buy a vote, an office, or a statute. Money buys capacity. It buys the means through which political preferences are made visible, durable, professional, and persistent.

The democratic question begins there.

The scale is not evidence of purchase

Federal politics now operates through financial infrastructure on a scale that would have been almost unimaginable in earlier periods of American democracy.

For the 2023-2024 federal election cycle, the Federal Election Commission reported roughly \$2.0 billion raised by presidential candidates, \$3.8 billion by congressional candidates, \$2.7 billion received by party committees, and \$15.7 billion raised by political action committees. Reported independent expenditures totaled about \$4.4 billion.

Those figures are extraordinary. They are also easy to misuse.

They do not tell us how many votes were bought. They do not show that the highest-spending candidate won. They do not prove that donors received policy in return.

They establish something narrower and more important: modern political competition requires and attracts enormous quantities of organized financial capacity.

The effect of that capacity has to be traced through mechanisms, not inferred from the number alone.

What campaign money actually buys

Campaign money purchases intermediate goods.

A candidate needs compliance staff before the first major rally. A national campaign needs polling, travel, digital systems, data, fundraising operations, legal advice, communications staff, field organizers, and advertising. A congressional challenger needs enough resources to be treated as viable by donors, journalists, activists, and party networks.

Money buys the possibility of remaining in the contest long enough to be considered seriously.

That is different from buying the result.

A badly positioned candidate can spend heavily and lose. A popular candidate can defeat a better-funded opponent. Advertising can saturate a market and fail to persuade. A super PAC can spend millions in a race and produce little measurable effect.

The causal chain is longer: resources create capacity; capacity creates exposure, organization, access, and persistence; those conditions can affect political outcomes.

Skipping the middle of that chain is how analysis becomes slogan.

Direct contributions are still limited

Federal law does not treat all political money alike.

For the 2025-2026 election cycle, an individual may contribute up to \$3,500 per election to a federal candidate committee. A primary and a general election count separately under the applicable rules.

That limit matters because it preserves a boundary around money transferred directly into the candidate's own campaign structure.

A billionaire cannot simply write a candidate committee a check for fifty million dollars.

The law therefore continues to recognize a special concern when money moves directly from a donor into the organization controlled by the candidate.

That concern has usually been described in the Supreme Court's campaign-finance cases as corruption or the appearance of corruption, especially quid pro quo exchange.

Corruption is a narrower concept than influence

The word corruption is often asked to do too much.

A donor may hope for access. A business may support candidates who favor lower taxes. A union may support candidates who favor collective bargaining. A wealthy individual may finance a cause for ideological reasons. A lobbyist may persuade a legislator with information the legislator considers useful.

None of those facts, standing alone, proves bribery or quid pro quo corruption.

The distinction is not a defense of every political relationship. It is a demand for precision.

Influence can be unequal without being illegal. Access can be privileged without being purchased through an explicit exchange. Political gratitude can exist without satisfying the legal elements of corruption.

If every advantage is called corruption, the actual forms of corruption become harder to identify.

The Court rejected equalization as the main constitutional theory

Modern campaign-finance doctrine has repeatedly resisted the idea that government may reduce political spending simply to equalize influence.

That principle is visible in *Buckley*, *Citizens United*, *McCutcheon*, and the cases that followed.

The constitutional concern is straightforward. Political expression costs money. Newspapers require capital. Campaigns require staff. Organizations need offices, lawyers, websites, travel, and communications systems. If government may suppress political spending because one speaker has already spoken more loudly than another, government acquires the power to decide how much political expression is enough.

That is a serious First Amendment problem.

The democratic difficulty is that refusing to equalize speech does not make expressive capacity equal. The legal right can remain identical while the ability to amplify a message differs by orders of magnitude.

Citizens United did not abolish campaign-finance law

Few Supreme Court decisions have acquired as much symbolic meaning as *Citizens United v. Federal Election Commission*.

The public shorthand is often that *Citizens United* allowed unlimited money in politics.

That is too broad.

The Court held that corporations and unions could not be prohibited from making independent political expenditures from their general treasuries. The decision rested on the First Amendment protection of political speech and on the distinction between independent expenditures and direct contributions.

It did not create a right to make unlimited direct contributions to candidate committees.

That boundary remains central to federal campaign-finance law.

SpeechNow completed the super PAC architecture

The modern super PAC emerged from more than one case.

Soon after *Citizens United*, the D.C. Circuit in *SpeechNow.org v. FEC* held that contribution limits could not constitutionally be applied to a group that made only independent expenditures.

The logic was simple within the Court's developing framework. If independent expenditures do not create the same corruption risk as direct candidate contributions, then contributions to a committee that makes only independent expenditures cannot be capped on that theory.

The result is the independent-expenditure-only committee, commonly called a super PAC.

A super PAC may accept unlimited contributions from permitted sources and spend unlimited amounts independently to advocate for or against candidates. It may not contribute those funds directly to candidates.

Unlimited contribution into the outside organization depends on the legal status of the spending as independent.

Independence is the hinge

The word independent carries enormous constitutional weight.

An expenditure supporting a candidate can be financially unlimited because it is not supposed to function as money controlled by the candidate.

That does not mean the spender is socially or politically distant.

A super PAC can passionately support the same candidate. Its donors can belong to the same political network. Its strategists may know people who have worked in related organizations. Its public messages can be perfectly aligned with the candidate's goals.

Legal independence is not social isolation.

The question is whether conduct falls inside the coordination rules that separate independent advocacy from candidate-controlled spending.

That line is difficult precisely because contemporary political networks are dense.

Coordination is a legal category, not an ordinary adjective

Political reporting often uses the word coordinated loosely. Campaign-finance law cannot.

A candidate and an outside group may say similar things without unlawful coordination. Public information can be observed by everyone. Political actors can independently reach the same strategic conclusion.

A legal finding of coordination depends on the applicable regulatory tests and facts.

This is one reason campaign-finance disputes are so technical. The democratic significance lies in classification. If unlimited outside money effectively becomes candidate-directed money, the distinction supporting the regulatory structure weakens. If government labels genuinely independent speech coordinated merely because it is effective, the state can suppress protected political advocacy.

Both errors matter.

Political parties were always an awkward middle case

Political parties do not fit neatly into the distinction between candidate and outsider.

A party exists in large part to elect its candidates. It recruits them, endorses them, shares a political identity with them, mobilizes voters for them, and attempts to govern through them.

Treating party spending as though it were fully independent can seem artificial.

Treating every party dollar as a candidate contribution can seem equally artificial because parties are themselves constitutionally protected political associations with their own members, officers, and speech.

For decades, federal law attempted to manage this middle category through limits on certain party expenditures coordinated with candidates.

In 2026, the Supreme Court changed that structure.

NRSC v. FEC

On June 30, 2026, the Supreme Court decided *National Republican Senatorial Committee v. Federal Election Commission*.

The case concerned federal limits on expenditures by political parties made in coordination with their candidates. The Court held that those coordinated-expenditure limits violated the First Amendment.

The decision displaced the older constitutional framework that had sustained such limits in *Colorado II*.

The immediate importance is practical. Parties can now coordinate campaign spending with their candidates without the federal coordinated-expenditure ceilings that had previously restricted that category.

The broader importance is conceptual. The Court treated coordination between a party and its candidate as core associational political activity rather than as a sufficient reason for expenditure limits.

That judgment moves the constitutional line again toward speech and association and away from regulation based on the possibility that party resources can function like additional candidate resources.

Three lanes after 2026

The current structure can be understood through three principal lanes.

Candidate committees remain subject to contribution limits and source restrictions. The individual limit for 2025-2026 remains \$3,500 per election.

Political parties may coordinate spending with their candidates without the federal coordinated-expenditure caps invalidated in *NRSC*.

Independent-expenditure-only committees may accept unlimited contributions because their spending remains legally independent.

The categories are not interchangeable.

The 2026 decision did not declare that every campaign-finance restriction is unconstitutional. It did not turn a super PAC into a candidate committee. It did not eliminate contribution limits.

It changed one major boundary within an already complex architecture.

The strongest defense of party coordination

The constitutional defense of *NRSC* is powerful.

A political party is an association organized around collective political action. Its members choose candidates, adopt positions, raise money, recruit volunteers, and attempt to win elections.

To say that a party may advocate for a candidate but that the First Amendment permits government to cap how much it may spend when the advocacy is coordinated with that candidate can appear to separate the organization from its purpose.

The party is not an unrelated corporation buying access. It is the political association through which citizens are trying to elect representatives.

From this perspective, coordinated spending is not evidence of corruption. It is the party acting as a party.

The strongest objection to party coordination

The objection begins from function rather than identity.

Money spent in close coordination with a candidate can perform many of the same tasks as money inside the candidate committee. It can pay for communications, organizing, research, and electoral strategy selected together with the campaign.

If direct candidate contributions are limited because large transfers create a special risk of dependence or circumvention, unlimited coordinated party spending can look like a pathway around part of that boundary.

The question is not whether parties have speech rights. They plainly do.

It is how much constitutional weight should be given to the distinction between a party and the candidate whose election is the party's immediate objective.

Money buys persistence

The most important political use of money may not be any single advertisement.

It is persistence.

A volunteer movement can surge and disappear. A funded organization can maintain staff between elections, monitor agencies, hire counsel, preserve data, cultivate reporters, train organizers, and return to the same issue for a decade.

A donor who can finance repeated efforts does not know the outcome of any one effort. The donor can survive losing.

This is the same capacity advantage described in the previous chapter at the individual level. Wealth provides resilience. Political finance converts that resilience into institutional presence.

The side that can afford to remain organized after defeat starts the next contest differently.

Candidate entry begins before the public campaign

Money also shapes who becomes visible enough to be considered a candidate.

Before a voter sees a debate or advertisement, a prospective candidate must decide whether running is financially possible. The campaign must hire compliance help, travel, build a fundraising list, create digital infrastructure, and demonstrate viability.

An incumbent already possesses donor files, public recognition, staff relationships, and established networks. A challenger must build them.

Money is not the only barrier. Party support, endorsements, district structure, ideology, and candidate quality all matter.

But early financial capacity can determine who remains in the race long enough for those other qualities to become relevant.

Small-dollar fundraising is a real counterexample

The contemporary system is not simply wealthy donors speaking while everyone else watches.

Digital fundraising allows campaigns and movements to aggregate large numbers of small contributions.

A candidate can build millions of dollars from people giving ten, twenty-five, or fifty dollars at a time. A national movement can transform broad enthusiasm into financial capacity without depending entirely on a handful of large donors.

This is democratic aggregation in financial form.

It complicates any simple claim that large political treasuries necessarily represent concentrated wealth.

The source structure matters. Ten million dollars from one person and ten million dollars from hundreds of thousands of people are the same nominal sum and different political phenomena.

Mass fundraising creates its own incentives

Small-dollar politics has costs as well.

Fundraising systems reward messages that generate immediate response. Anger, threat, urgency, symbolic conflict, and partisan identity can be especially effective at turning attention into a contribution.

That does not make small donors irrational. It means campaigns learn what kinds of communication produce repeated giving.

A democratized funding base can therefore weaken dependence on wealthy donors while strengthening incentives for emotional mobilization.

Reform moves power. It rarely abolishes incentives.

The sacrifice behind a contribution is unequal

Federal contribution limits regulate dollars, not sacrifice.

A \$100 donation can mean giving up groceries or entertainment for one household and less than the price of lunch for another.

This is unavoidable in a system where economic resources differ.

It also shows why nominally equal legal limits cannot equalize political capacity.

The law can prevent one person from placing unlimited money directly into a candidate's account. It cannot make the same permitted contribution equally affordable to everyone.

Independent spending should be measured by concentration

The FEC's \$4.4 billion in reported independent expenditures during the 2023-2024 cycle establishes scale, not distribution.

The next question is who financed those expenditures.

An outside spending system funded broadly by millions of people raises different democratic concerns from one in which a small number of donors supply a dominant share of the money.

Both can produce large totals.

A serious analysis of political money therefore needs at least two axes: how much money moved and how concentrated its sources were.

Dark money is first a problem of traceability

Political debate uses the term dark money so loosely that it can sound like a synonym for illegal cash.

It is not.

The term generally refers to political spending or transfers whose ultimate financial source is not publicly identifiable through the ordinary disclosure system.

The democratic concern is information.

A voter may see an advertisement funded by an organization with a neutral or appealing name without being able to determine which individuals, corporations, unions, or other entities supplied the money upstream.

That opacity does not prove the message is false or the donor corrupt.

It prevents the public from using source information as part of political judgment.

Not every dark-money number is an official number

Independent organizations such as OpenSecrets and the Brennan Center have developed estimates of nontransparent political spending and transfers.

Those analyses can be useful because researchers combine disclosure filings with advertising and organizational data that do not appear in a single government table.

But the resulting number is not a Federal Election Commission category.

Method matters.

A book that treats a secondary estimate as though the FEC itself reported it would make the very transparency mistake it is trying to analyze.

Disclosure is a different regulatory strategy

Disclosure does not prevent a donor from speaking.

It attempts to tell the public who financed the speech.

That makes disclosure attractive in a constitutional system suspicious of direct limits on political expression. Instead of rationing advocacy, the state can require certain information about its financial source.

Transparency creates a possible corrective mechanism. Journalists can investigate. Opponents can respond. Voters can decide whether the source matters. Regulators can examine compliance.

Disclosure turns some forms of financial power into auditable power.

Transparency can also burden association

Disclosure is not costless.

Donors to controversial organizations can face harassment, boycotts, threats, employment pressure, or social retaliation. In some circumstances, compelled disclosure can deter lawful association.

American constitutional doctrine has long recognized that associational privacy can matter, especially when disclosure exposes members to credible danger.

The democratic balance is therefore not transparency at any price.

The question is which financial relationships the public genuinely needs to evaluate political power and which forms of private association require protection from unnecessary exposure.

Lobbying is not campaign finance

Money continues to operate after the election through a different channel.

Lobbying is the organized attempt to influence legislation, regulation, administration, and public policy. It is not the same thing as contributing to a candidate or purchasing election advertising.

A group can lobby intensely while making almost no electoral expenditures. A super PAC can spend heavily in elections without employing registered lobbyists.

Treating the two as one system hides different mechanisms.

Campaign finance helps shape who governs. Lobbying attempts to shape what government does.

Lobbying is a constitutional activity

The right to petition the government is written into the First Amendment.

Businesses lobby. So do unions, environmental organizations, cities, disability groups, universities, hospitals, civil-rights organizations, professional associations, and religious organizations.

The broad category describes organized persuasion of government, not corruption.

A democracy that prohibited citizens from hiring people to present technical arguments to Congress would not simply silence corporations. It would also silence associations that exist precisely because ordinary members cannot monitor Washington themselves.

The democratic problem is unequal lobbying capacity, not lobbying as such.

The Lobbying Disclosure Act makes part of the system visible

Federal law requires registered lobbyists and lobbying organizations that meet statutory definitions and thresholds to file disclosures.

Reports identify clients, issue areas, government institutions contacted, and reportable income or expenses under the applicable regime.

The Senate's public disclosure system makes the filings searchable.

This creates a public record of part of the professional influence infrastructure.

It is incomplete by design because not every form of political advocacy meets the statutory definition of lobbying. But what is disclosed can be audited.

GAO audits the transparency system itself

The Government Accountability Office periodically reviews compliance with the Lobbying Disclosure Act.

Its July 2026 report examined 2025 filings and also corrected some historical estimates from earlier annual reviews.

That correction is more than a technical footnote.

Transparency institutions must themselves be corrigible. A system that publishes disclosure statistics but never revises mistakes would create false confidence.

The act-evidence here is not that lobbying has become equal. It is that the disclosure mechanism is capable of examining and correcting its own administrative record.

A lobbying dollar does not buy a policy

Lobbying expenditures are often treated as though they were invoices for legislation.

They are not.

A group can spend millions opposing a rule and lose. An industry can lobby Congress for years without obtaining the statutory change it wants. A small advocacy organization can sometimes prevail because its evidence is stronger, public opinion shifts, or a court changes the legal environment.

The spending number measures resources devoted to persuasion and access.

It does not establish the causal effect of those resources.

The right empirical question is what the money enabled the organization to do.

Access is one thing money can reliably purchase

Professional lobbying buys presence.

A well-funded organization can employ people whose job is to know when a committee schedules a hearing, when an agency publishes a proposed rule, which staff member handles a provision, what technical language is being considered, and when a meeting will matter most.

That does not guarantee agreement.

It guarantees a much better chance of arriving before the decision is final.

Political access is often less dramatic than a campaign contribution and more consequential than an advertisement. It places information in the room when details are still negotiable.

Expertise can improve government

That access is not automatically a democratic defect.

Modern government is technically complex. Legislators and agencies make decisions about finance, pharmaceuticals, artificial intelligence, energy grids, telecommunications, taxes, transportation, medicine, and environmental risk.

Groups affected by those decisions often know things government needs to know.

An industry can explain production consequences. A union can explain workplace consequences. A consumer organization can identify harms invisible to producers. A civil-rights group can bring litigation experience. A university can supply research.

Professional lobbying can therefore improve decisions by supplying expertise.

The inequality appears when only some interests can afford to supply expertise continuously.

Political power often lives in the details

The public sees major bills. Organized interests often live in definitions.

A threshold, exemption, reporting rule, implementation date, tax classification, technical standard, or paragraph in an agency regulation can move substantial economic value.

These details are difficult for ordinary citizens to monitor because they require time and specialized knowledge.

Permanent organizations can watch them.

This is one of the most important ways money becomes political capacity without ever appearing in an election advertisement.

It buys attention to the parts of government that most people cannot afford to follow.

Agenda power comes before final votes

Influence can occur even earlier.

Before Congress votes on a policy, someone must convince Congress that the problem deserves time. Before an agency drafts a rule, someone may define the technical problem the rule is supposed to solve.

Organizations with permanent staff can repeatedly place issues before institutions until they become legible as policy questions.

Agenda setting is difficult to quantify because attention has many causes.

It should therefore be treated as an observable mechanism rather than a mystical claim that wealthy actors secretly control government.

Hearings, meeting logs, draft language, comments, testimony, and correspondence can reveal parts of the chain.

The revolving door

Political capacity also travels through people.

Government officials, congressional staff, regulators, lawyers, and policy specialists move between public service, private firms, nonprofits, trade associations, unions, and consulting organizations.

This circulation can be beneficial. Someone who understands a complex agency may be useful to a regulated company, and someone from industry may bring valuable technical knowledge into government.

It can also create privileged knowledge of procedure, relationships, timing, and institutional culture.

The risk is not proven corruption. It is conversion: knowledge and access acquired in public office can become a valuable private asset.

Cooling-off periods, ethics rules, recusals, and post-employment restrictions exist because the risk is real enough to regulate.

Large organizations can aggregate ordinary people

A large political treasury does not necessarily represent a small wealthy elite.

Unions aggregate dues. Membership organizations aggregate contributions. Advocacy groups aggregate donations. Digital campaigns can aggregate millions of small donors.

That is precisely what association is supposed to do: transform dispersed small resources into collective capacity.

The democratic analysis must therefore ask where the money came from as well as how much exists.

Concentrated money and aggregated money can look similar in a bank account while representing very different structures of participation.

Corporate money is not one political actor

The phrase corporate money is often used as though corporations formed a single political bloc.

They do not.

Industries have different interests. Firms within an industry can disagree. Executives, shareholders, employees, trade associations, corporate PACs, and outside political groups operate through different legal channels.

Some companies lobby heavily and avoid direct electoral spending. Others support political committees. Some attempt to remain publicly neutral.

The relevant object is the specific mechanism, source, and institutional target, not an imagined unified actor called corporate America.

Union money is not one political preference

The same caution applies to labor.

A national union can endorse a candidate and spend money politically without every member sharing the endorsement.

Leadership is exercising organizational authority on behalf of a collective whose members may be politically diverse.

That is not unique to unions. Trade associations, nonprofits, churches, and corporations all face some version of the problem of organizational speech.

The democratic test is partly internal: how is the decision made, what rights do members possess, and how transparent is the relationship between the organization and the people whose resources it aggregates?

The structure is bipartisan

Political money is not a mechanism that belongs to one major party.

Democratic and Republican candidates raise large sums. Both parties interact with super PACs, wealthy donors, small-dollar networks, advocacy organizations, and professional lobbyists.

The composition of those networks differs by cycle and sector. Particular industries or donor groups can be strongly aligned with one coalition.

Those asymmetries should be documented where they exist.

The structural point remains bipartisan: both coalitions operate inside and make use of the same broad financial architecture.

Trump is an example, not the explanation

Donald Trump provides abundant examples of modern political finance, but he does not explain the system.

His campaigns and allied organizations have used candidate committees, party structures, super PACs, major individual donors, legal-expense arrangements, and outside organizations across different periods.

Each vehicle follows different rules.

Part V will examine Trump as a stress test in full. Here, the methodological lesson is enough: never say Trump money or donor money when the legal vehicle can be identified more precisely.

Political finance is architecture before it is personality.

The strongest defense of the system

The strongest defense begins with political freedom.

Government should not decide that a person, newspaper, union, corporation, association, or party has spoken enough.

Political persuasion necessarily uses resources. Citizens are allowed to combine their resources, publish arguments, organize institutions, and oppose candidates without asking the government to equalize the resulting audience.

Direct contribution limits preserve one anti-corruption boundary. Disclosure can provide information. Coordination rules distinguish outside advocacy from

candidate-controlled spending. After NRSC, parties receive broader constitutional freedom to work directly with their own candidates.

From this perspective, unequal political spending is an unavoidable consequence of protecting political association in an unequal society.

The strongest objection to the system

The objection is that formal independence and formal equality may coexist with enormous practical concentration.

A person who cannot give more than \$3,500 directly to a candidate may still supply millions to an outside organization that spends to influence the same election.

A corporation or association can maintain a Washington office every day of the year while ordinary citizens appear only when a crisis reaches them.

A donor can finance repeated losses and return. A volunteer group may disappear after one.

The system may therefore prevent literal purchase while allowing private wealth to become an extraordinary amplifier of political presence.

The constitutional rules answer part of the corruption problem. They do not solve the capacity problem.

The reciprocity test

Political money exposes selective principles quickly.

A person who condemns unlimited outside spending by political opponents may defend it when aligned organizations use the same legal form. A party that objects to wealthy donors on the other side may celebrate wealthy donors who fund its own priorities.

The same test should apply across cases.

Is the expenditure truly independent under the legal rule? Is the donor disclosed where disclosure is required? Is there evidence of quid pro quo rather than inference from access? Is the lobbying activity reported under the applicable statute? Is the organization aggregating broad membership or concentrated wealth?

The answer should not change because the political purpose is attractive.

The act-evidence: can a modestly funded voice enter the room?

The act-evidence for this chapter is not whether money disappears from politics. It will not.

The test is whether citizens and organizations with modest resources still possess credible routes into public decision-making.

Can a lightly funded candidate defeat a heavily funded one? Can a low-resource organization use litigation, public comment, association, journalism, or elections to make a fact institutionally visible? Can voters identify the major financial interests behind political communications? Can a citizen without a paid lobbyist still obtain a meaningful response through ordinary public channels?

A wealthy interest need not lose for the system to be democratic.

But wealth cannot become the price of admission to serious consideration.

Money without a price tag

The title of this chapter contains the central paradox.

Political money is meticulously priced in dollars. Its political effect is not.

There is no stable exchange rate between a million dollars and a number of votes. No table converts lobbying expenditures into statutes. No formula turns a super PAC contribution into obedience.

What money purchases is the infrastructure around those outcomes: visibility, expertise, organization, access, repetition, and the ability to survive failure.

That is enough to create a democratic problem without inventing a market in votes that does not exist.

American law has chosen to protect much of this spending because political expression and association cannot be separated cleanly from resources. It continues to limit direct candidate contributions, requires various forms of disclosure, and regulates particular financial relationships. In 2026, the Supreme Court shifted one important boundary by giving parties broader freedom to coordinate spending with candidates.

The remaining democratic question is whether the institutions outside money are strong enough to prevent financial capacity from becoming political necessity.

The next chapter turns from money as a resource to private power as an institution. The corporation, platform, employer, and concentrated market actor can shape democratic life even when no campaign check is written at all.

Sources and notes

- Federal Election Commission — Statistical Summary of 24-Month Campaign Activity of the 2023-2024 Election Cycle. <https://www.fec.gov/updates/statistical-summary-of-24-month-campaign-activity-of-the-2023-2024-election-cycle/>
- Federal Election Commission — Contribution Limits for 2025-2026. <https://www.fec.gov/documents/5661/contribution-limits-chart-2025-2026.pdf>
- Federal Election Commission — PAC and Party Committee Data / Independent-Expenditure-Only Committees. <https://www.fec.gov/data/committees/pac-party/>
- Supreme Court — Citizens United v. Federal Election Commission, 558 U.S. 310 (2010). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/09pdf/08-205.pdf>
- Federal Election Commission — SpeechNow.org v. Federal Election Commission. <https://www.fec.gov/legal-resources/court-cases/speechnoworg-v-fec/>
- Supreme Court — McCutcheon v. Federal Election Commission, 572 U.S. 185 (2014). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/13pdf/12-536_epf.pdf
- Supreme Court — National Republican Senatorial Committee v. Federal Election Commission, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-621_h35.pdf
- U.S. Senate — Lobbying Disclosure Act and Public Disclosure. <https://www.senate.gov/lobby/>
- U.S. Senate — Quarterly Reporting Requirements for Registered Lobbyists. https://www.senate.gov/legislative/Lobbying/Lobby_Disclosure_Act/5_Reports_by_Registered_Lobbyists.htm
- Government Accountability Office — 2025 Lobbying Disclosure: Observations on Compliance, July 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108486.pdf>

CHAPTER 10

PRIVATE POWER IN A DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

Owning the machine without controlling it

A farmer buys a tractor. The farmer owns the machine, pays for the fuel, carries the financing, absorbs the downtime, and bears the cost when the harvest waits.

Then an electronic fault appears.

The farmer may be able to replace the physical part and still be unable to complete the repair. A diagnostic system, software tool, or electronic pairing function can remain under the manufacturer's control. The machine is privately owned, but practical control over whether it can work may still depend on a gate the owner cannot open alone.

This is a useful place to begin because the problem is not political money, campaign speech, or public office. No election has been purchased. No law has been passed.

The issue is private power: the ability of one private institution to set terms for another person who is formally free yet practically dependent.

The democratic question is not whether private firms should have power. They must. The question is what happens when the ordinary correctives of private life — exit, switching, bargaining, entry, repair, and competition — stop working well enough to discipline that power.

Private power is not state power

A corporation is not a government.

It cannot imprison a citizen for violating company policy. It cannot levy a general tax, issue a criminal sentence, or claim the legal monopoly on coercion that belongs to the state.

That distinction should not be blurred for rhetorical force.

Private power works differently. It operates through ownership, contract, employment, market position, technical control, network effects, and access to infrastructure. Its force is usually indirect: comply with the terms or lose access to the product, job, marketplace, customer base, software, service, or route to market.

The person remains legally free to refuse.

The important question is whether refusal is realistically available.

Exit is the first correction mechanism

The strongest defense of private power is exit.

A customer dissatisfied with one seller can choose another. A worker unhappy with one employer can leave. A supplier can seek another buyer. A merchant can use another distributor.

When that possibility is real, private power is self-limiting. The threat of losing customers, workers, suppliers, or business partners constrains behavior without a regulator deciding every term.

Competition is therefore a decentralized corrective mechanism.

The logic resembles political alternation only in one narrow sense: an incumbent behaves differently when replacement is plausible.

The analogy stops there. Markets and democracies have different purposes, and purchasing power is not citizenship. But contestability matters in both.

Private power becomes more difficult when the people subject to it can formally leave and practically cannot.

A choice can exist on paper and fail in practice

There are many reasons an alternative may be weak.

Switching can require moving data, retraining employees, buying new equipment, abandoning an installed system, rebuilding a customer base, or surrendering social connections accumulated over years.

A worker may live in a region with only a few employers in the relevant occupation. A supplier may depend on one dominant buyer. A small business may need access to a platform where most of its customers already are. A farmer may own equipment whose repair ecosystem is controlled by one manufacturer.

The contract may be voluntary in the legal sense.

The bargaining environment may still be highly one-sided.

That is the space in which private power becomes democratically significant.

Competition is not a moral preference for small firms

Antitrust law does not prohibit success.

A company can become large because it built a better product, invented a technology, reduced costs, invested earlier, or created a network people genuinely prefer.

The Sherman Act does not make monopoly unlawful merely because one firm wins a large share of a market.

The legal problem is monopolization: the possession of monopoly power combined with conduct that unlawfully maintains or extends that power.

This is not a semantic distinction. It prevents competition policy from becoming a general punishment for scale.

A democracy concerned about private power still needs productive firms, innovation, investment, and reliable large-scale infrastructure.

The correct question is not, How big is the company? It is, Can the company still be challenged?

Google Search: dominance, finding, remedy

The current Google search litigation provides one of the clearest examples of private power being translated into a legal question about contestability.

In August 2024, a federal district court held that Google possessed monopoly power in general search services and general search text advertising and had unlawfully maintained that monopoly.

The judgment mattered because it did not rest simply on Google's size or popularity. The case focused on the mechanisms that helped preserve its position, including distribution arrangements that reinforced its status as the default search engine on important access points.

The remedies phase therefore became more revealing than the label monopoly itself.

In September 2025, the court imposed measures aimed at opening competitive pathways. Those measures included restrictions on certain exclusive distribution practices, access obligations involving search data, and opportunities for eligible rivals to obtain syndication.

Implementation did not end with the judgment. The Justice Department's case record shows continuing status reports through August 2026.

The democratic significance lies in the chain: private dominance, legal challenge, judicial finding, remedy, and supervised implementation.

The remedy tells us what the problem was

A remedy is a diagnosis expressed in institutional form.

If the problem were simply that Google was large, the obvious response would be to reduce size for its own sake.

Instead, the remedies targeted pathways through which competition could re-enter: distribution, access to information, and the ability of rivals to offer services without first overcoming every accumulated advantage at once.

This is what corrigibility looks like in a market context.

The law does not need to guarantee that a rival wins. It needs to make rivalry possible enough that the incumbent remains contestable.

Whether the remedy succeeds is an empirical question. The existence of a remedy is not proof that competition has been restored.

The post-judgment phase therefore matters as much as the trial.

Google Ad Tech is a different gate

Google's advertising technology litigation should not be folded into the search case.

In the ad-tech case, the Justice Department challenged Google's role in the infrastructure connecting publishers, advertisers, and the technology used to buy and sell digital advertising.

A federal court found unlawful monopolization in important ad-tech markets in April 2025.

The mechanism is different from search distribution. It concerns control over infrastructure through which other businesses transact.

That distinction matters because private power often appears not at the endpoint a consumer sees but in the intermediary layer everyone else must pass through.

A gatekeeper can be powerful precisely because many users never notice the gate.

Meta is the indispensable counterexample

A chapter about antitrust would become propaganda if government victories were treated as proof and government losses ignored.

The Federal Trade Commission's case against Meta provides the necessary counterexample.

The FTC argued that Meta had unlawfully maintained monopoly power in personal social networking, relying in part on the acquisitions of Instagram and WhatsApp.

After trial, the district court ruled for Meta in November 2025.

The Commission appealed in January 2026, and the appeal remained pending at the research cutoff.

The lesson is not that Meta lacks power or that the acquisitions were wise. It is that market power and unlawful monopolization are claims the government must prove.

A functioning correction system includes the ability of the regulator to lose.

Government power must also be contestable

Antitrust agencies possess substantial investigative and enforcement authority.

They can issue demands, challenge mergers, sue firms, negotiate settlements, and impose major litigation costs.

That authority is justified only if it is itself constrained by law.

The Meta judgment demonstrates the point. A government agency can believe a company is monopolizing a market and still fail to establish the legal case.

Judicial review is therefore part of the private-power system, not an obstacle outside it.

The democracy worth defending is not one in which government always defeats concentrated firms. It is one in which both private dominance and public enforcement remain answerable to institutions beyond themselves.

Amazon remains an allegation until it becomes a judgment

The FTC and state partners have also pursued a major monopolization case against Amazon.

The allegations concern marketplace practices and the competitive environment facing sellers and rivals.

But a pending case is not a finding.

This sounds elementary and is routinely violated in political writing.

The current record establishes only the government's theory, the procedural posture, and any operative rulings that have actually occurred.

A democracy that takes evidence seriously must preserve the difference between accusation and adjudication even when the accusation is plausible.

Antitrust policy crossed the 2025 transition

Competition policy is often narrated as though each presidential administration invents an entirely new antitrust state.

The reality is more mixed.

The Biden administration's Justice Department and Federal Trade Commission issued the 2023 Merger Guidelines, presenting a more expansive account of merger risks, including potential competition, labor markets, and concentration.

In February 2025, the new FTC leadership stated that the Guidelines would remain in effect, and the Justice Department likewise continued to use them.

That continuity matters.

It does not mean enforcement priorities are identical across administrations. They are not.

It does show that some frameworks of private-power correction can survive partisan alternation rather than belonging entirely to one coalition.

Guidelines are not law

The Merger Guidelines describe how federal antitrust agencies analyze transactions.

They are not statutes. They do not bind federal judges in the way enacted law or controlling precedent does.

A merger can be challenged under a Guideline theory and still survive in court. A court can consider the agency's analysis without accepting every proposition in the document.

This is an important institutional distinction.

Administrative frameworks guide enforcement. Courts determine contested legality.

The separation prevents policy preference from automatically becoming legal conclusion.

Concentration is a warning light, not a verdict

Highly concentrated markets deserve attention because fewer firms may mean fewer competitive constraints.

But concentration by itself does not tell us why the structure exists or what effects it has.

A market can be concentrated because economies of scale are large, because consumers overwhelmingly prefer one product, because entry barriers are high, or because anticompetitive conduct has suppressed rivals.

Those explanations are not interchangeable.

The democratic analysis should therefore treat concentration as a signal to investigate the quality of exit and entry, not as the final judgment.

Potential competition is part of present freedom

Competition depends not only on firms that already exist.

It depends on whether new firms can emerge.

A dominant company can protect itself by acquiring a nascent rival before the rival becomes a full competitive threat. That possibility is one reason merger analysis examines potential competition.

The democratic implication is subtle.

A market can look open today because no explicit rule excludes anyone while becoming less contestable over time because every plausible challenger is absorbed before it matures.

Correction depends on future alternatives as well as present ones.

Gatekeeping

The most useful concept for this chapter is gatekeeping.

A gatekeeper controls access to something other people need: customers, data, repair tools, a marketplace, an operating environment, distribution, credit, or another essential input.

Every business controls something. A store controls its shelves. A factory controls its machinery. A website controls its own servers.

Gatekeeping becomes democratically significant when the gate is difficult to bypass and the person controlling it can set terms for many dependent actors.

The power comes from the combination of control and lack of alternatives.

Deere and the right to repair

The Deere case makes gatekeeping unusually tangible.

In July 2026, the Federal Trade Commission and five states announced a settlement in litigation concerning farmers' ability to repair Deere equipment.

The complaint alleged that Deere had restricted access to software and repair capabilities needed for certain electronic repairs, forcing farmers to rely on authorized dealers.

Under the settlement, Deere must for ten years provide farmers and independent repair providers access to repair resources comparable to those made available to authorized dealers, including important diagnostic and software functions.

The case remains useful even without assuming every allegation became a litigated factual finding. The settlement identifies the dependency the government sought to correct.

The owner of a physical machine needed access to an electronic gate controlled by the manufacturer.

Ownership can be incomplete in practice

Modern products blur the boundary between owning a thing and controlling it.

A tractor, car, phone, printer, medical device, or industrial system may contain software whose operation depends on codes, pairing, authentication, cloud services, or proprietary diagnostics.

The buyer owns the physical object.

The manufacturer may retain practical control over functions necessary to maintain or repair it.

This does not make software control inherently abusive. Modern products are complex and safety matters.

It does mean that ownership no longer answers the entire question of autonomy.

A good remedy restores an alternative

The Deere settlement is democratically interesting because the remedy does not require government to become the repair shop.

It attempts to restore another pathway.

Farmers can seek the authorized dealer, repair equipment themselves, or use independent providers with access to needed resources.

That is correction through contestability rather than replacement of the market.

The remedy's success will depend on implementation, terms of access, and whether independent repair becomes genuinely workable.

Again, remedy is a beginning, not an automatic cure.

Employer power belongs in the same framework

Private dependency is not limited to consumers.

Workers sell labor. Employers buy it.

When many employers compete for the same workers, an employee can bargain partly through the possibility of leaving.

When realistic employers are scarce, that threat weakens.

This is the logic of monopsony: buyer-side market power.

The 2023 Merger Guidelines explicitly recognize that mergers can harm workers, creators, suppliers, and other providers when they reduce competition among buyers.

The democratic relevance is bargaining autonomy. A worker who can legally quit but has nowhere comparable to go is less free in practice than the contract alone suggests.

Labor markets are often local

A national unemployment rate says little about the alternatives facing a particular worker.

A nurse in a region dominated by one hospital system, a factory worker in a town with one major employer, or a specialist in a narrow occupation may face a much smaller labor market than the national economy implies.

The same is true for suppliers whose products are useful to only a handful of major buyers.

Private power is therefore often geographic and sectoral.

Market definition matters because concentration at the wrong scale can hide dependency rather than measure it.

Noncompetes and the cost of leaving

Noncompete agreements expose the boundary between contract and exit.

An employer may have legitimate reasons to protect trade secrets, customer relationships, or costly investments in specialized knowledge.

A broad noncompete can also prevent a worker from taking another job in the same field, thereby reducing the credibility of exit.

The Federal Trade Commission attempted to address the issue through a nationwide rule in 2024.

Federal courts blocked the rule, and the agency ultimately acceded to vacatur. In February 2026, the Commission removed the rule from the Code of Federal Regulations to conform to those court decisions.

A federal blanket ban is therefore not current law.

One failed tool did not end the issue

The collapse of the nationwide Noncompete Rule did not eliminate every federal competition theory involving noncompetes.

The FTC continued targeted enforcement in specific matters, including a 2026 consent order involving Rollins.

That distinction is important for the book's larger argument.

A correction system can lose one instrument and continue through another lawful path.

Courts can reject an agency's broad rule while leaving case-specific enforcement, state law, private litigation, or legislation available.

Corrigibility is redundancy, not institutional omnipotence.

Contract is neither sacred nor coercive by definition

Private ordering depends on contracts.

Exclusivity clauses, licenses, dealer agreements, platform terms, noncompetes, and vertical arrangements can make economic cooperation possible.

Treating every restrictive term as coercion would make complex markets difficult to organize.

Treating every signed term as proof of equal bargaining power would be equally naive.

The relevant question is what alternatives existed when the term was accepted and what competitive constraints exist after it is enforced.

Freedom of contract is strongest where exit and entry remain credible.

Scale can create genuine benefits

The case against concentration is weakened when it ignores why scale exists.

Large firms can spread fixed costs over millions of users. They can maintain national logistics, fund research, standardize systems, and integrate services that would be expensive to coordinate across fragmented providers.

Network effects can make a service more valuable as more people use it.

Vertical integration can reduce transaction costs and improve reliability.

A platform with millions of users can be useful precisely because everyone else is there.

These are not excuses invented after the fact. They are real economic benefits that any democratic theory of private power has to preserve where possible.

The strongest defense of concentration

Some concentrated markets may be the efficient outcome of technology and consumer preference.

Duplicating infrastructure can be wasteful. Breaking a firm apart can destroy integration that users value. Forcing interoperability can create security or privacy risks if done badly.

Antitrust policy therefore needs evidence of competitive harm.

The law should not become a machine for enforcing an aesthetic preference for smallness.

A democracy can fear dependence without romanticizing fragmentation.

The strongest objection to concentration

Efficiency does not erase dependency.

A service can be excellent and still become difficult to leave. A platform can lower costs for users and still control access to customers. An employer can provide good jobs and still possess unusual bargaining leverage because alternatives are scarce.

This is why private power cannot be measured only by consumer satisfaction.

The question is whether the actor remains answerable to competition or whether success has hardened into control over the pathways others need.

Private rule-setting

Large intermediaries write rules.

They set fees, technical standards, ranking systems, seller requirements, access conditions, repair protocols, and dispute procedures.

Those rules are not statutes.

Users often agree to them contractually and can sometimes leave.

Yet when an intermediary controls a route to market that is difficult to bypass, its terms can function as practical rules for an entire ecosystem.

The phrase private governance is useful only if used carefully. It describes rule-setting within a relationship of dependence. It does not convert the firm into a sovereign state.

Platforms belong here only as economic gatekeepers

Digital platforms create a temptation to merge every form of private power into one argument.

That conflation would obscure the distinction between campaign-finance power and private market power.

This chapter is concerned with platforms when they act as market intermediaries: when access, fees, interoperability, ranking, data, or distribution affect competition and dependency.

The next chapters will address information, moderation, media, and the common factual world.

Market power and speech power can exist in the same company. They are not the same mechanism.

Interoperability can be a democratic remedy

One way to reduce private dependence is to make switching easier.

Interoperability, data portability, access requirements, or syndication can allow users and rivals to move without abandoning everything accumulated inside the incumbent system.

These remedies are attractive because they preserve private operation while reopening competitive pathways.

They are difficult because forced access can reduce incentives to invest, create security risks, or require long-term technical supervision.

The democratic value of interoperability therefore depends on whether it restores contestability without turning government into the permanent manager of a private system.

Structural and conduct remedies solve different problems

Antitrust remedies can change structure or behavior.

A structural remedy, such as divestiture, changes ownership or organizational boundaries. It can reduce the need for continuous behavioral monitoring but may be disruptive or difficult to reverse.

A conduct remedy leaves the firm intact while prohibiting or requiring particular behavior.

That approach can preserve efficiencies but requires ongoing supervision and can invite disputes over compliance.

The Google search remedy illustrates the continuing challenge. The important question is not which remedy sounds tougher. It is which one restores a competitive pathway that can function after the court leaves.

A judgment without a functioning remedy is incomplete

Antitrust litigation can take years.

By the time a court finds a violation, the technology, market, or competitive landscape may already have changed.

That delay makes remedy design central to the democratic analysis.

A declaration of illegality that leaves the underlying dependence untouched is a weak correction.

A remedy that opens access but requires constant judicial micromanagement may also prove fragile.

The act-evidence comes later: do rivals enter, do users switch, do independent providers become viable, and does the incumbent face renewed discipline?

Antitrust agencies are political institutions

The Federal Trade Commission and the Justice Department do not exist outside politics.

Their leaders are appointed through political institutions. Presidents choose enforcement priorities. Administrations differ in their attitudes toward mergers, labor markets, remedies, and regulation.

That does not make every case partisan.

The persistence of the 2023 Merger Guidelines into the Trump administration is useful precisely because it shows some continuity across partisan control.

The correction system becomes stronger when a legal framework can survive an election without becoming immune to revision.

Judicial review constrains the corrector

The agency that identifies private power should not have final authority over its own judgment.

Courts provide that external check.

Meta shows an enforcement case can fail. The nationwide Noncompete Rule shows a broad regulatory approach can be invalidated.

Those outcomes can frustrate officials who believe the underlying economic problem is serious.

They are nevertheless part of democratic legality.

A correction mechanism that cannot itself be corrected becomes another concentration of power.

Federalism adds another layer

Antitrust enforcement is not exclusively federal.

State attorneys general regularly join federal cases or bring claims under state law. The Deere settlement involved the FTC and five states. The Google search litigation included plaintiff states.

Private plaintiffs also possess important antitrust causes of action under applicable law.

This creates redundancy.

If one institution declines to act, others may sometimes remain available. The price is complexity, overlapping litigation, and the possibility of inconsistent approaches.

As elsewhere in American democracy, redundancy and friction arrive together.

Price is not the only form of harm

Antitrust is often reduced to whether consumers pay more.

Price matters. It is not the only competitive variable.

Market power can affect quality, innovation, choice, wages, supplier terms, access to repair, entry, and the ability of independent firms to reach customers.

The democratic vocabulary of dependence can illuminate these mechanisms, but it cannot replace legal analysis.

A plaintiff still has to prove the statutory case.

Democratic concern is a reason to investigate, not a substitute for evidence.

Consumer choice is not citizenship

Markets distribute power through purchasing decisions.

Democracy distributes political status through citizenship.

The two should not be conflated.

A person with little money has little purchasing power in a market but retains the same formal vote as a billionaire. A corporation can lose customers and still possess no right to vote in a federal election.

Market competition can discipline private actors, but it cannot substitute for political equality.

This is why a democratic republic needs both: political institutions that treat citizens as equals and economic institutions sufficiently contestable that private dependency does not hollow out that equality between elections.

Private power can become political without entering politics

A company does not need to make a campaign contribution to affect democratic capacity.

An employer can determine whether a worker has time, income, or bargaining leverage. A manufacturer can determine whether independent repair is possible. A marketplace can determine whether a seller reaches customers. A dominant

intermediary can determine the fees and technical rules that structure another business.

These effects occur before any lobbying or electoral spending.

That is why this chapter follows political money but does not repeat it.

Private power has an economic life of its own.

The reciprocity test

Private-power analysis becomes partisan very easily.

A technology company may be condemned as dangerous when its executives hold disliked political views and defended as innovative when its politics are congenial. A manufacturing firm can be romanticized because it produces tangible goods while a platform is treated as uniquely suspect because its power is less visible.

The standard should not move.

Can users leave? Can rivals enter? Can workers switch? Can suppliers find other buyers? Can courts hear the claim? Can government prove its case? Can a remedy reopen the pathway?

The politics of the firm do not answer those questions.

The act-evidence: can the gate be bypassed?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is contestability.

Can the person subject to private power realistically exit, switch, enter, bargain, repair, or reach customers without the permission of the dominant actor?

Can a rival enter without buying access from the incumbent? Can a worker move without unreasonable restraints? Can an owner repair a product through an independent provider? Can a seller find another route to customers?

And when those pathways fail, can law create a remedy that changes the relationship rather than merely declaring that power was excessive?

The answer need not be perfect competition.

The requirement is credible correction.

Private power in a democratic republic

A democratic republic does not end at the boundary of government.

Citizens spend most of their lives inside private institutions: workplaces, markets, platforms, banks, schools, hospitals, landlords, insurers, manufacturers, and networks.

Those institutions are not governments, and the distinction matters.

But legal freedom can become thin when private dependency becomes durable and alternatives become merely theoretical.

American competition law offers one mechanism of correction. It can challenge exclusion, prevent anticompetitive mergers, restore access, and protect rivalry. It can also lose, be overruled, or be forced into narrower tools.

That is not weakness by definition. It is the structure of a system in which correctors are themselves constrained.

The deepest democratic test is not whether large private institutions exist. It is whether they remain contestable.

The next chapter turns from control over markets to control over attention and information. A citizen can be economically free to choose among sellers and still inhabit an information environment in which the basic facts needed for democratic judgment no longer arrive through common channels.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Department of Justice — U.S. and Plaintiff States v. Google LLC [Search]. <https://www.justice.gov/atr/case/us-and-plaintiff-states-v-google-llc>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Significant Remedies Against Google, Sept. 2, 2025. <https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/departments-justice-wins-significant-remedies-against-google>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Google Ad Tech monopolization case. <https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/departments-justice-prevails-landmark-antitrust-case-against-google>
- Federal Trade Commission — FTC v. Meta Platforms. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/cases-proceedings/191-0134-facebook-inc-ftc-v>
- Federal Trade Commission — FTC appeal in Meta monopolization case, Jan. 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2026/01/ftc-appeals-ruling-meta-monopolization-case>
- U.S. Department of Justice / Federal Trade Commission — 2023 Merger Guidelines. <https://www.justice.gov/atr/2023-merger-guidelines>
- Federal Trade Commission — 2023 Merger Guidelines remain in effect, Feb. 2025. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2025/02/ftc-chairman-andrew-n-ferguson-announces-ftc-doj-joint-2023-merger-guidelines-are-effect>
- Federal Trade Commission — Deere & Company settlement, July 8, 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2026/07/ftc-states-secure-settlement-deere-company-advancing-farmers-right-repair>
- Federal Trade Commission — Noncompete Rule status. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/rules/noncompete-rule>
- Federal Trade Commission — Rollins noncompete matter, 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/cases-proceedings/251-0011-rollins-inc-matter>

CHAPTER II

THE COLLAPSE OF A COMMON FACTUAL WORLD

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

One event, many versions

A political event happens once and arrives everywhere in different forms.

There is the official document. There is a television clip cut to forty seconds. There is the full recording. There is a creator explaining what the clip supposedly means. There is a partisan account turning it into evidence of a larger betrayal. There is a joke. There is a parody. There is a manipulated version. There may be a fabricated version that looks real enough to require forensic work before anyone can confidently dismiss it.

All of these objects can reach the same citizen before the citizen has opened the original source.

The democratic problem is not that too many people are allowed to speak. It is that the status of what they are saying is increasingly difficult to see at the moment it matters most.

A democracy can survive deep disagreement over values. It cannot correct itself if evidence loses the ability to travel from one political camp to another.

The common factual world is therefore not a common political opinion. It is the set of procedures by which claims can be traced, tested, challenged, corrected, and revised.

A common factual world is procedural

Americans do not need to agree on abortion, taxation, immigration, religion, war, climate policy, or the meaning of equality.

They do need ways to establish narrower propositions: who received more certified votes, what a court actually ordered, what a statute says, whether a video was altered, whether an agency released a dataset, whether a witness testified under oath, whether a photograph came from the event it claims to show.

Those propositions can still be contested.

A court can reverse a lower court. An election tally can be corrected. A journalist can retract a story. A scientific finding can fail replication. An agency can revise a dataset.

That reversibility is not weakness.

It is what makes factual authority democratic rather than dogmatic.

The old gatekeepers were never neutral

It would be easy to turn this chapter into nostalgia for an age when Americans supposedly watched the same evening news and therefore shared reality.

That world never existed in the pure form memory gives it.

Earlier media institutions had their own biases, blind spots, exclusions, ownership structures, and professional conventions. National broadcasters and metropolitan newspapers could ignore communities, normalize establishment assumptions, and make mistakes that traveled widely because fewer rival institutions existed to challenge them.

The democratic gain of the contemporary environment is real.

More people can publish. Witnesses can reach audiences directly. Dissident voices need less permission. Minority communities can build their own channels. Experts can speak without first passing through a newsroom.

The problem is not the loss of a perfectly neutral past.

It is the weakening of shared intermediaries without the emergence of equally shared procedures of verification.

Social media is now news infrastructure

Social platforms can no longer be treated as a side channel to the news system.

Pew reported in 2025 that 53 percent of U.S. adults get news from social media at least sometimes.

That does not mean most Americans rely exclusively on social platforms or that every platform functions like a newspaper.

It means the infrastructure through which news arrives now includes systems whose primary design goal is not journalism.

A political claim can appear between a family photograph, a comedy clip, a recipe, a product advertisement, and a message from a friend.

The context of reception has changed.

The user may encounter the claim before deciding to seek news at all.

Incidental news changes who chooses the intermediary

In older media systems, choosing a newspaper, radio station, or nightly broadcast usually meant choosing an information institution first.

On a social feed, the sequence can reverse.

The user chooses a platform for many reasons and encounters political information inside it.

Recommendation systems, accounts followed, friends, creators, advertising, and viral circulation all help determine what arrives.

The intermediary can therefore reach the citizen before the citizen has consciously selected it as a political source.

This does not eliminate agency.

Users can follow, unfollow, search, mute, compare, or leave.

But the architecture of attention now participates in source selection.

News influencers are durable intermediaries

One of the clearest signs of this change is the rise of the news influencer.

Pew found in 2025 that 21 percent of U.S. adults regularly get news from news influencers on social media. Among adults ages eighteen to twenty-nine, the share was 38 percent.

The overall figure was unchanged from 2024.

That stability matters.

Influencer news is not merely an election-year novelty. It has become part of the ordinary information system.

Most consumers of influencer news say they mainly happen to come across it rather than actively seek it out.

The political intermediary therefore often arrives through the feed, not through a deliberate subscription to a newsroom.

From institutional trust to relational trust

Many news influencers do not come from traditional news organizations.

That fact should not be used as a shortcut for saying they are inaccurate.

It means their authority is built differently.

A newspaper asks readers to trust an institution, its procedures, editors, brand, and record. An influencer can ask audiences to trust a person: a voice that feels direct, familiar, authentic, ideologically aligned, expert, entertaining, or emotionally legible.

That relationship can produce democratic benefits.

An individual creator can explain technical subjects more clearly than a general newsroom. A witness can speak directly. A marginalized perspective can build an audience without institutional permission.

It can also collapse confidence in a claim into confidence in the person making it.

Relational trust is powerful because it feels less mediated. It is still mediation.

Younger Americans inhabit a different news ecology

The generational difference is large enough to matter politically.

Adults under thirty are substantially more likely than older Americans to receive news through social platforms and influencers.

That means the national information environment is not one system used differently by all ages.

It is partly a set of overlapping systems organized by generation.

A democratic institution trying to correct a false claim can therefore face a distribution problem before it faces a persuasion problem.

The correction may never reach the same channels through which the original claim traveled.

Algorithms do not write the story, but they organize salience

Recommendation systems are often described as though they produce political content.

Usually they do not.

Users, creators, publishers, campaigns, advertisers, and organizations produce the material.

Algorithms help decide what becomes visible, repeated, recommended, and socially reinforced.

That is a form of mediation.

Attention is scarce. A claim that appears repeatedly and near the top of a feed has an advantage over one that technically exists but remains unseen.

The political power lies less in deciding what citizens are allowed to know than in influencing what they are likely to notice.

The filter-bubble story is too simple

Personalization does not prove that every user is trapped inside an ideological bubble.

People follow opponents, encounter disagreement, click outside their usual sources, and see material they did not choose.

Political polarization also predates Facebook, TikTok, X, and algorithmic recommendation.

The stronger claim is more modest and more durable.

Digital platforms make it easier to construct highly distinct information environments and easier to measure which content keeps people engaged.

They can amplify segmentation without having created every social division that segmentation expresses.

Reporting, opinion, satire, advocacy, and fabrication now share the same frame

A printed newspaper signaled genre through layout, section, byline, headline, and institutional context.

A social feed places many kinds of content into the same scroll.

A reported article, an activist video, a satirical post, a campaign advertisement, a personal interpretation, a rumor, and a manipulated clip can all arrive with similar visual weight.

The democratic difficulty is epistemic legibility.

Can the user tell what kind of claim is being made?

Can the source be identified? Is there evidence? Is the content original, edited, sponsored, synthetic, or copied?

The problem is not that opinion and satire exist. Democracy needs both.

The problem is when the status of a claim becomes difficult to discern before it has already shaped judgment.

Opinion is not misinformation

Precision matters most when the political stakes are high.

A prediction can be wrong without being misinformation. An interpretation can be biased without being false. A moral judgment cannot be fact-checked in the same way as a vote total. Satire can be deliberately untrue and still not be an attempt to deceive.

The category misinformation becomes analytically useless when it simply means speech someone considers harmful or incorrect.

Narrower descriptions are more accurate: demonstrably false factual claim, unverified claim, manipulated media, impersonation, coordinated inauthentic behavior, propaganda, fabrication, or error.

The label should follow the evidence.

Why 'fake news' should be retired as an analytic category

The phrase fake news once described fabricated material presented as journalism.

It quickly expanded to include partisan reporting, factual error, satire, unfavorable coverage, and sometimes any institution the speaker wanted to delegitimize.

That elasticity is politically useful and analytically destructive.

A democracy needs distinctions that survive partisan reversal.

An inaccurate story is not the same as an invented story. An invented story is not the same as propaganda. Propaganda is not the same as satire. A hostile editorial is not fake because it is hostile.

The vocabulary of correction must be narrower than the vocabulary of accusation.

Partisan segmentation is strong but incomplete

American news use is visibly sorted by political identity.

Pew's 2025 analysis of major news sources found large partisan differences in use, trust, and distrust.

Democrats were much more likely to use and trust major broadcast networks, CNN, MSNBC, PBS, NPR, and The New York Times. Republicans were much more likely to use and trust sources including Fox News, Newsmax, The Daily Wire, Tucker Carlson's network, Breitbart, and The Joe Rogan Experience.

This does not mean every Democrat or Republican inhabits a sealed information universe.

People use multiple sources. Many encounter disagreement.

The important fact is that a correction from one institution can arrive already marked by partisan identity before its evidence is considered.

Trust is a transmission mechanism

Evidence has to travel through trust.

A court filing, audit report, news investigation, or official statement may be accurate and still fail politically if the audience regards the institution as fundamentally hostile.

That is not always irrational.

Institutions can have histories of error, bias, secrecy, or unequal treatment.

Skepticism can therefore be healthy.

But once source identity substitutes entirely for evidence, correction becomes structurally difficult.

The question changes from What does the record show? to Which side does this institution belong to?

A correction can fail without the evidence failing

This distinction is essential.

An election official can publish certified results. A court can reject unsupported claims. Journalists can reproduce the documents. Auditors can examine the machines or ballots.

Citizens can still reject the conclusion.

That does not prove the correction process was weak.

It may prove that the correction lacked social authority in part of the public.

Chapter 19 will later examine this problem in the 2020 election crisis.

For now, the mechanism is enough: factual correction requires institutions capable of producing evidence and publics still willing to treat evidence as more than factional speech.

Organized foreign disinformation is real

Not every false political claim is a foreign operation.

Some are domestic, accidental, opportunistic, ideological, or commercial.

But organized foreign influence is not hypothetical.

In 2024, the Justice Department disrupted an operation it attributed to Russian government direction that used domains designed to imitate legitimate media organizations, fake social profiles, paid advertising, influencers, and AI-assisted content.

The government seized thirty-two domains in the operation commonly described as Doppelganger.

The procedural status matters. Affidavits and enforcement actions are not the same as a final criminal conviction after trial.

The mechanism, however, is sufficiently documented to matter: impersonate trusted sources, conceal origin, and inject narratives into an existing political environment.

AI makes synthetic scale cheaper

The Justice Department also disrupted an AI-enhanced bot operation involving hundreds of social accounts allegedly connected to Russian actors.

Artificial intelligence did not invent propaganda, fake identities, or political deception.

It changes the economics.

Synthetic text, images, audio, and personas can be produced more quickly and at greater scale. A coordinated operation can create the appearance of many independent voices at a lower cost than before.

The democratic problem is not intelligence in the abstract.

It is the reduced cost of manufacturing apparent social evidence.

Foreign operations often exploit domestic divisions

The most effective foreign influence campaign does not need to invent a grievance Americans have never heard of.

It can amplify one that already exists.

U.S. intelligence statements in 2024 described Russian efforts aimed at weakening trust in election integrity and intensifying domestic divisions.

That makes the vulnerability partly endogenous.

A polarized society supplies ready-made identities, resentments, fears, and narratives that an outside actor can imitate.

Technology increases the scale of manipulation. Social division supplies the material.

Synthetic media raises the cost of proof

A realistic fake video does more than create one false claim.

It changes the burden placed on every real video.

Citizens who know convincing synthetic media exists become more cautious about visual evidence. That caution is rational.

Verification may require provenance, metadata, source tracing, reverse image search, geolocation, frame analysis, or forensic expertise.

Fabrication can take minutes. Verification can take hours.

The asymmetry favors the first mover.

AI therefore creates an epistemic cost even when a specific fabrication is eventually exposed.

Speed favors the claim that arrives first

Breaking information environments reward novelty.

A dramatic claim can circulate before a newsroom, court, agency, campaign, or researcher has time to verify it.

The correction arrives later and often looks weaker because uncertainty is less emotionally compelling than certainty.

This timing asymmetry cannot be solved by pre-approving every statement before publication.

A free society has to tolerate unverified claims.

The democratic challenge is to make verification fast, visible, and traceable enough that later evidence can still catch the original narrative.

Repetition can simulate corroboration

A single false claim is one object.

The same claim repeated by hundreds of accounts, creators, sites, and clips can look like many independent confirmations.

This is why coordinated inauthentic behavior is analytically different from many citizens independently making the same mistake.

The content may be identical. The mechanism of social proof is not.

Correction therefore has to address provenance as well as proposition.

Platform moderation has no cost-free setting

A platform can remove false or harmful content aggressively.

It will make mistakes.

A platform can allow more speech and remove less.

It will allow more false or manipulative material to circulate.

There is no moderation regime that maximizes both openness and error prevention at once.

The democratic question should therefore move away from whether a platform moderates and toward how the system corrects its own moderation.

Are the rules specific? Can users appeal? Are enforcement errors measured? Are policy changes explained? Can the platform reverse itself?

YouTube moved toward more speech

In June 2023, YouTube changed its policy on claims about prior U.S. presidential elections.

The platform stopped removing content solely because it falsely claimed that widespread fraud or errors changed the result of earlier presidential elections.

YouTube argued that the policy had removed some harmful misinformation but also risked restricting political discussion.

It retained other election-integrity rules, including prohibitions involving false information about voting procedures and content encouraging interference with democratic processes.

The example matters because moderation is not a one-direction ratchet.

A platform can conclude that a rule intended to protect information integrity restricts too much speech and narrow it.

Meta changed the correction model

In January 2025, Meta announced a larger change in the United States.

The company ended its third-party fact-checking program and moved toward Community Notes.

It also announced reduced proactive enforcement for lower-severity violations and a more personalized approach to political content.

This was a private governance decision with public consequences.

No legislature voted. No court ordered the change.

A company altered the correction architecture used across platforms serving enormous audiences.

That is neither inherently illegitimate nor democratically trivial.

Meta's explanation is evidence of Meta's explanation

Meta said the prior system produced too many enforcement mistakes, generated bias concerns, and restricted legitimate speech.

Those claims should be attributed to the company.

A platform's own metrics about reduced mistakes after a policy change can be useful, but they remain measurements defined and produced by the platform unless independently audited.

This distinction is small and important.

A democratic information system should be able to separate what an institution says about itself from what outside evidence establishes.

Community Notes changes who performs correction

Third-party fact-checking and Community Notes represent different institutional theories.

Professional fact-checking delegates verification to specialized organizations operating through research and editorial methods.

Community Notes distributes correction among users and generally requires agreement across contributors with different histories of evaluation before a note becomes broadly visible.

The professional model emphasizes expertise.

The crowd model emphasizes cross-perspective legitimacy.

Both can fail.

Experts can make biased selections or incorrect judgments. Crowds can move slowly, fail to reach agreement, or leave highly polarized claims uncorrected.

Correction systems should themselves be corrigible

The democratic question is not which model deserves permanent authority.

It is whether the system can discover its own failures.

Can a mistaken fact-check be reversed? Can a bad note be challenged? Can rules change when false positives become too frequent? Can a platform publish enough data for outsiders to evaluate whether a new policy works?

A correction system that cannot be corrected merely relocates the epistemic problem.

Platforms have editorial rights of their own

The state cannot treat platforms simply as neutral pipes to be commanded.

In *Moody v. NetChoice* and *NetChoice v. Paxton*, the Supreme Court emphasized in 2024 that at least some platform decisions about selection, ranking, and presentation can constitute protected editorial judgment.

The Court did not hold that every platform practice is immune from regulation.

It required a more careful First Amendment analysis of the challenged Texas and Florida laws.

The underlying principle matters.

A private intermediary can be powerful enough to shape public discourse and still possess constitutional speech rights against government control.

Government must be able to speak without becoming the arbiter of truth

Public institutions also have information responsibilities.

Election officials must be able to explain voting procedures. Security agencies must be able to warn about identified foreign operations. Public-health agencies must be able to publish evidence. Law-enforcement agencies must be able to alert platforms to impersonation or fraud.

A government that could never communicate with private platforms would be artificially disabled.

A government that could secretly compel platforms to suppress lawful political speech would be constitutionally dangerous.

The boundary lies between communication and coercion.

Murthy did not settle that boundary on the merits

Murthy v. Missouri arose from claims that federal officials had pressured social platforms over content involving COVID-19 and elections.

In 2024, the Supreme Court rejected the plaintiffs' claims for lack of standing.

The Court concluded that the plaintiffs had not established the causal connection and future injury required for the requested injunction.

That is not the same as a broad holding that every government-platform communication in the record was constitutional.

The distinction matters because standing resolved the case before the Court established a comprehensive merits rule.

Vullo states the coercion principle more clearly

NRA v. Vullo provides a cleaner constitutional boundary.

The Supreme Court held that a government official may not use regulatory authority to coerce private entities into suppressing disfavored advocacy.

Government officials may criticize, persuade, provide information, and advocate.

What they may not do is use the threat of state power to induce private censorship they could not constitutionally command themselves.

This principle allows the state to participate in factual correction while preserving the independence of the intermediary.

Traceability is the safeguard

The most useful democratic protection in government-platform communication is traceability.

Who contacted whom? What did the government say? What authority did the official possess? Was a threat made? Did the platform retain independent judgment? Was the communication later reviewable in litigation, records, testimony, or oversight?

Those questions are more useful than broad accusations that every contact is censorship or every warning is benign.

Corrigibility requires a record.

Section 230 is not the master explanation

Section 230 is important to the legal architecture of online intermediaries.

It is not an adequate explanation for the contemporary information environment.

It does not by itself explain recommendation algorithms, partisan trust, influencer news, synthetic media, foreign operations, or the internal moderation choices platforms make.

A chapter organized around Section 230 would mistake one liability rule for the entire epistemic system.

The law should appear only where it clarifies a specific mechanism.

No institution should monopolize factual authority

A democratic response to fragmentation cannot be to appoint one final arbiter of political truth.

The stronger system is redundant.

Journalists investigate. Courts create records. Election officials count and certify. Inspectors general audit. Scientists publish methods. Agencies release data. Archives preserve documents. Legislatures hold hearings. Private researchers test public claims.

These institutions have different incentives and make different kinds of mistakes.

Their plurality is a strength if evidence can move among them.

One institution can correct another.

Courts are factual institutions

Courts do more than interpret law.

They organize factual conflict.

Parties file evidence. Witnesses can testify under oath. Documents can be produced. Opposing counsel can challenge claims. Judges make findings. Appellate courts review legal and sometimes factual issues under defined standards.

A court is not a universal truth machine.

Its procedures are designed for disputes within jurisdiction and rules of evidence.

But where political claims become legal claims, litigation forces assertion into a structure that creates a record and assigns costs to unsupported statements.

Election administration is also a factual institution

Election results do not become facts because a television network calls a race.

They become official through ballots, tabulation, canvassing, certification, audits, recounts, and litigation under applicable law.

Chapter 5 examined that machinery as access and administration.

Its relevance here is epistemic.

Democratic facts often emerge from procedure rather than from trust in a narrator.

A certified result is powerful because many acts produced it, not because one official declared it.

Journalism remains essential without becoming sovereign

Professional journalism retains functions no algorithm or crowd note automatically replaces.

Reporters cultivate sources, obtain documents, attend institutions, compare claims, verify facts, and publish corrections.

News organizations can also fail.

They can rely on weak sources, overstate certainty, follow one another into the same mistake, or overlook communities outside their institutional field of vision.

The democratic case for journalism should therefore rest on method rather than prestige.

A source earns authority through evidence, transparency, correction, and a record of accountable work.

Provenance matters more when trust is low

In a high-trust environment, an institutional name can function as a shortcut.

In a low-trust environment, the evidence needs to be more visible.

A strong correction should point back to the court order, audit, dataset, recording, transcript, source document, or methodology.

The audience should be able to inspect the chain without accepting the corrector's identity as sufficient.

This is slower and more demanding.

It is also more democratic.

Skepticism is not nihilism

Citizens should be skeptical.

Government lies. News organizations err. Experts disagree. Courts reverse. Platforms make mistakes.

A democracy that punishes skepticism creates brittle authority.

But skepticism asks for evidence.

Epistemic nihilism says there is no evidence capable of deciding anything because every institution is merely an instrument of power.

The difference is decisive.

The skeptical citizen can be persuaded by a better record. The nihilistic citizen has no correction mechanism left.

A common factual world is not a common national story

The next chapter will examine the institutions that tell Americans what America is.

That is a different problem.

Citizens can agree that an event occurred and disagree radically about what it means. They can accept the same unemployment number and disagree about economic policy. They can accept a court ruling and disagree about whether the Court was wise. They can accept an election result and disagree about the legitimacy of the winning program.

A common factual world is thinner than a common narrative.

That thinness is its democratic virtue.

It leaves room for politics.

The strongest defense of fragmentation

Fragmentation opened the public sphere.

Minority voices no longer need the approval of a national newsroom. Experts can explain their work directly. Local events can become visible nationally in minutes. Citizens can compare documents, recordings, and commentary from many sources.

A small group of old gatekeepers no longer decides alone what becomes news.

Any attempt to restore a narrow centralized information system would sacrifice real democratic gains.

The goal cannot be to make everyone watch the same broadcast again.

The strongest objection to fragmentation

The danger appears when pluralism stops being interoperable.

Each political coalition can develop its own sources, creators, validators, corrections, and standards of credibility.

A claim rejected in one information system can remain fully alive in another.

At the extreme, evidence no longer moves between them.

The society is not merely divided over values.

It is divided over what counts as proof.

At that point alternation becomes harder because defeat can always be explained as fabrication by an enemy institution.

The strongest defense of platform discretion

Platforms need freedom to make editorial decisions.

A service that cannot rank spam below ordinary speech, remove impersonation, enforce safety rules, or organize feeds would become difficult to use.

Government control over those choices can threaten political expression and private editorial judgment.

Private experimentation also allows moderation systems to change when they prove overbroad or ineffective.

There is democratic value in not requiring one national content code.

The strongest objection to platform discretion

The same discretion can affect millions of users.

A platform can alter ranking, recommendation, labeling, fact-checking, or enforcement policy without public legislation.

The criteria may be opaque. The mistakes may be difficult for outsiders to measure. Appeals can be weak or inconsistent.

The democratic problem is not simply that private actors make choices.

It is that a small number of choices can reorganize political visibility at enormous scale.

The answer, if there is one, lies in transparency, user control, competition, appeal, and external scrutiny rather than in pretending discretion can disappear.

The reciprocity test

Epistemic standards are easiest to abandon when the claim helps one's own side.

A falsehood does not become harmless because it advances a favored cause. A platform mistake does not become irrelevant because the suppressed speaker is disliked. A government warning is not trustworthy merely because the administration issuing it is politically congenial.

The same standards have to apply.

What is the source? What evidence exists? What is the procedural status? Can the claim be reproduced? Can the correction be inspected? Was government persuasion or coercion involved? Can the corrector itself be challenged?

Without reciprocity, factual criticism becomes another partisan weapon.

The act-evidence: can a fact survive contradiction?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is procedural.

Can a high-stakes factual claim be challenged through an open process that produces evidence, permits counterargument, corrects mistakes, and leaves a trace citizens outside one political camp can inspect?

The claim does not need unanimous acceptance.

A democracy cannot force belief.

The test is whether the institutional record becomes stronger than assertion: ballots and audits against an election rumor, court evidence against an unsupported allegation, provenance against a manipulated video, documents against an invented quote.

The common factual world survives when disagreement still has somewhere to go.

The collapse of a common factual world

The title of this chapter is deliberately stronger than the empirical conclusion.

The common factual world has not disappeared.

Americans still rely every day on shared records, courts, measurements, election systems, professional reporting, scientific institutions, and ordinary documentary evidence.

What has weakened is the expectation that those institutions will be recognized across political boundaries as legitimate correctors.

The information environment is more fragmented, more personalized, more dependent on private distribution systems, and more vulnerable to synthetic or coordinated manipulation.

That does not require a ministry of truth.

It requires the opposite: multiple institutions whose claims remain traceable, contestable, and revisable.

A democratic factual world is not a place where everyone believes the same thing.

It is a place where evidence can still change what a responsible person is entitled to claim.

The next chapter asks what happens after facts are established. Who selects which facts matter, arranges them into stories, remembers some events, forgets others, and tells Americans what kind of country they inhabit?

Sources and notes

- Pew Research Center — Social Media and News Fact Sheet, Sept. 25, 2025.
<https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/fact-sheet/social-media-and-news-fact-sheet/>
- Pew Research Center — News Influencers Fact Sheet, 2025.
<https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/fact-sheet/news-influencers-fact-sheet/>
- Pew Research Center — The Political Gap in Americans' News Sources, June 10, 2025.
<https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/2025/06/10/the-political-gap-in-americans-news-sources/>
- Meta — More Speech and Fewer Mistakes, Jan. 7, 2025.
<https://about.fb.com/news/2025/01/meta-more-speech-fewer-mistakes/>
- YouTube — U.S. Election Misinformation Policy Update, June 2, 2023.
<https://blog.youtube/inside-youtube/us-election-misinformation-update-2023/>
- Supreme Court — *Murthy v. Missouri*, 603 U.S. 43 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/23-411_3dq3.pdf
- Supreme Court — *Moody v. NetChoice* / *NetChoice v. Paxton*, 603 U.S. 707 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-277_d18f.pdf
- Supreme Court — *NRA v. Vullo*, 602 U.S. 175 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-842_6kg7.pdf
- U.S. Department of Justice — Doppelganger disruption, Sept. 4, 2024.
<https://www.justice.gov/usao-edpa/pr/justice-department-disrupts-covert-russian-government-sponsored-foreign-malign>
- U.S. Department of Justice — AI-enhanced Russian bot farm disruption, July 9, 2024.
<https://www.justice.gov/usao-ndil/pr/justice-department-leads-efforts-among-federal-international-and-private-sector>
- FBI/ODNI/CISA — Joint statement on Russian election influence efforts, 2024.
<https://www.fbi.gov/news/press-releases/joint-odni-fbi-and-cisa-statement-on-russian-election-influence-efforts>

CHAPTER 12

WHO TELLS AMERICA WHAT AMERICA IS?

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

One past, several narrators

Take one event in American history and place it in five institutions.

A museum gives it three objects, two wall labels, and a place in a larger exhibition. A school textbook gives it four pages and a chapter heading. A president gives it six sentences in a commemorative speech. A local newspaper remembers what happened in that town. A monument reduces the same event to a name, a date, and a public act of honor.

All five can be factually accurate and still tell different stories.

Narrative power begins with selection.

What appears first? What is omitted? Which cause receives emphasis? Which contradiction is treated as central? Which person becomes representative? Which achievement is remembered as fulfillment and which failure as betrayal?

The problem is not that institutions tell stories. They cannot avoid doing so.

The democratic question is whether those stories remain answerable to evidence, open to contradiction, and revisable without requiring one faction to conquer the institution that tells them.

Facts are not narratives

The previous chapter asked whether Americans can still establish enough shared facts to disagree meaningfully.

This chapter begins after that work has succeeded.

Suppose everyone agrees that a law was passed, a battle occurred, slavery existed, a court issued a ruling, a president gave an order, or a protest took place.

The argument is not over whether the event happened.

It is over what the event means.

Narrative selects facts, orders them, connects them, and assigns weight.

A country can share the same archive and tell several legitimate stories from it.

A democratic national narrative therefore cannot be reduced to fact-checking. It must answer a harder question: how can selection be plural without becoming arbitrary?

History, memory, and national narrative

History is a discipline.

It depends on sources, criticism, argument, comparison, and revision. Historians disagree, but they are expected to show why.

Memory is different. Individuals and communities remember, honor, mourn, inherit, and sometimes forget.

National narrative is different again. It links selected events into an intelligible account of a political community.

A museum exhibit may contain all three. A national anniversary may contain mostly memory and narrative. An archive may preserve evidence without offering a single interpretation.

Confusing these functions creates bad democratic arguments.

A monument is not a textbook. A presidential speech is not a scholarly monograph. A museum is not an archive with labels added at random.

Each institution does different narrative work.

Every national story selects

Selection is unavoidable because attention is finite.

No museum can exhibit every artifact. No course can teach every episode. No newsroom can investigate every public meeting. No anniversary can commemorate every achievement and crime.

The mere fact of omission is therefore not proof of censorship or manipulation.

The better questions are visible and procedural.

Why was this included? Why was that omitted? Were the sources strong? Was the frame stated honestly? Were important contradictions suppressed? Can the institution revise the account when criticism reveals a problem?

Narrative legitimacy begins when selection stops pretending to be absence of selection.

The founding contradiction

The American national story becomes difficult immediately.

The Declaration of Independence announced that all men are created equal inside a society that practiced slavery.

The Constitution created a durable republican structure while accommodating slavery and leaving much of the population outside full political citizenship.

Those facts support more than one interpretation.

One story emphasizes hypocrisy: universal language coexisted with exclusion so profound that the founding cannot be understood without it.

Another emphasizes corrigibility: principles articulated imperfectly became tools later generations used against institutions that violated them.

A democratic account does not need to choose only one.

The contradiction is the story.

American history repeatedly turns on the distance between declared principle and lived institution, and on the fights over whether that distance can be closed.

Patriotism and criticism are not opposites

A country that cannot honor anything has difficulty sustaining political attachment.

A country that cannot criticize itself has difficulty sustaining correction.

Patriotic history can legitimately teach constitutional achievement, sacrifice, institutional innovation, abolition, democratic expansion, scientific accomplishment, civic courage, and the work required to preserve self-government.

Critical history can legitimately teach slavery, dispossession, segregation, political violence, exclusion, failed Reconstruction, unlawful surveillance, internment, corruption, and abuse of state power.

Neither function is democratic merely because of its tone.

Patriotism becomes propaganda when gratitude requires suppressing established facts.

Criticism becomes reduction when every institutional achievement is treated as camouflage for domination.

A mature national story can admire and indict the same political tradition.

The conflict is over what contradiction means

Many contemporary disputes over American history are not disputes over the underlying events.

They are disputes over whether failure is a betrayal of the national promise or proof that the promise itself was fraudulent.

A conservative critic may argue that some institutions teach the country's crimes as its essence and its achievements as incidental.

A progressive critic may argue that older narratives treated founding principles as the essence and exclusion as an unfortunate footnote.

Both arguments can identify real distortions.

The democratic challenge is to build institutions capable of showing achievement and exclusion without predetermining which one cancels the other.

Journalism narrates the present

Narrative authority is not confined to history museums.

Journalism tells the country what matters now.

A newsroom decides which event receives a reporter, which investigation receives months of work, which quotation becomes a headline, which policy conflict becomes national, and which remains local.

These are not simply factual acts.

They are acts of emphasis.

Professional journalism is necessary because attention is scarce and somebody must decide where to place it.

The democratic danger is not editorial judgment itself. It is editorial judgment that becomes socially narrow, economically concentrated, politically intimidated, or insulated from correction.

Local news tells citizens what their own government is

A democracy is experienced locally long before it is experienced on cable television.

School boards, county commissions, courts, sheriffs, zoning boards, utilities, local businesses, hospitals, and civic organizations shape daily life.

A local newsroom tells residents which of those activities are public problems.

Without that institution, citizens can possess enormous quantities of national political information and very little information about the government closest to them.

A news desert is therefore not a desert of information.

It is a desert of shared local narration.

The local-news infrastructure continued to shrink

Medill's 2025 State of Local News project counted 213 U.S. counties with no local news source and another 1,524 with only one.

The researchers estimated that roughly fifty million Americans lived with limited or no access to local news.

They also counted 136 newspaper closures during the year.

Those numbers are not federal administrative statistics. They are research estimates built from a systematic national inventory.

Their importance lies in the geography.

The decline is not merely that newspapers are smaller than they once were. Some communities are losing the institution that regularly turns local public life into a common record.

Decline is not disappearance

The same Medill research documented more than three hundred local news startups launched over the previous five years, most of them digital-only.

That fact matters because institutions can be replaced.

The newspaper as a business form is not the democratic principle.

Reporting capacity is.

A digital nonprofit, neighborhood publication, public-radio newsroom, local newsletter, or collaborative reporting project can perform democratic functions once associated with a daily paper.

The problem is that replacement is uneven.

New models tend to emerge more easily where money, population, philanthropy, and professional networks already exist.

The communities losing old news institutions are not always the communities best positioned to build new ones.

Public media was a different institutional bargain

The Corporation for Public Broadcasting represented another way of supporting narrative infrastructure.

Congress created CPB as a private nonprofit corporation to distribute federal support for public broadcasting while maintaining institutional distance between elected government and editorial production.

The model was deliberately indirect.

Federal money supported a system that included local public television and radio, but CPB itself was not a federal newsroom deciding the content of every broadcast.

The architecture acknowledged two truths at once: markets do not support all forms of public-interest media equally, and government financing creates a risk of political control.

Congress rescinded the funding

In 2025, Congress enacted the Rescissions Act and withdrew previously appropriated CPB funding for fiscal years 2026 and 2027.

This was not merely a presidential threat or administrative maneuver.

It was an enacted funding decision.

That distinction matters because public institutions supported by appropriations remain accountable to political branches that can change the appropriation.

The democratic defense of the decision is straightforward.

Taxpayers are not constitutionally required to finance a particular media institution forever, and elected representatives can conclude that the subsidy is unnecessary, biased, or better spent elsewhere.

The democratic objection is also straightforward.

A funding decision can destroy infrastructure that private markets will not readily replace.

CPB voted to dissolve

On January 5, 2026, CPB announced that its Board had voted to dissolve the organization after the loss of federal funding.

The event should be described precisely.

It did not mean NPR vanished. It did not mean PBS ceased broadcasting. It did not mean every local public station closed.

Those organizations and stations have distinct legal and financial structures.

What disappeared was the national intermediary created to steward federal investment in public broadcasting.

The narrative consequence will therefore be uneven.

Stations with strong membership bases, philanthropy, underwriting, or state support may adapt. Smaller or rural stations may face greater difficulty.

The democratic issue is institutional substitution: what replaces the lost capacity, and where does nothing replace it?

Public funding creates accountability without deciding editorial control

The public-media conflict reveals a recurring problem in democratic institutions.

If public money supports an organization, elected officials have legitimate oversight interests.

If elected officials can directly determine editorial conclusions as the price of funding, public media becomes vulnerable to political narration.

The solution is rarely total insulation or total control.

Institutional design creates distance: boards, charters, professional norms, multiyear funding, public reporting, and plural revenue sources.

Those devices do not eliminate politics.

They make political intervention more visible and therefore more contestable.

Ownership is only one kind of media concentration

Media concentration is often discussed as though ownership answers every question.

It does not.

A large chain can cut local reporting to the bone. It can also preserve a newsroom that a small family owner can no longer finance.

An independent outlet can be deeply local and excellent. It can also collapse after one owner retires.

The democratic question is not who owns the masthead in the abstract.

It is whether the institution maintains reporting capacity, local presence, editorial independence, and correction.

Ownership matters through those mechanisms.

Audience power can exceed ownership power

A narrative actor does not need to own all the reporting beneath it.

A national platform, cable network, podcast, newsletter, or personality can dominate attention while relying heavily on reporting produced elsewhere.

Chapter 11 examined how distribution shapes factual visibility.

Here the narrower point is narrative.

The institution that selects which facts receive repeated attention can acquire framing power even when it does not originate those facts.

Who owns the story and who owns the audience are different questions.

Museums turn evidence into public memory

Museums do not merely store objects.

They place objects beside one another, write labels, build chronology, construct rooms, assign titles, and decide what visitors encounter first.

Those choices create interpretation.

A museum can display a slave cabin as evidence of labor, violence, family life, architecture, resistance, or all of them. The object does not choose the frame.

Curatorial expertise therefore carries real narrative power.

The democratic question is how that power is governed without pretending that an exhibition can exist without interpretation.

The Smithsonian is not an ordinary executive agency

The Smithsonian makes the governance problem unusually clear because its institutional structure is hybrid.

Created by Congress in 1846, it is governed by a seventeen-member Board of Regents.

The Chief Justice and Vice President serve *ex officio*. Congress supplies six Regents.

Nine citizen Regents are selected through a process involving the Board and Congress.

The Institution receives federal appropriations and also holds private and trust resources.

It is therefore neither a private museum independent of government nor an ordinary cabinet department controlled through the presidential chain of command.

That hybridity is not an accident to be explained away.

It is part of the mechanism designed to hold public purpose and institutional independence together.

Governance became politically visible in 2025

In June 2025, the Smithsonian's Board publicly emphasized that the Institution is governed by the Regents and managed by its Secretary.

The statement supported Secretary Lonnie Bunch's management authority and reaffirmed a commitment to nonpartisanship, scholarship, and accuracy.

It also directed the Secretary to articulate expectations to museum directors and to address content that failed those standards.

The statement is important because it rejects two simplifications.

The Smithsonian did not claim absolute curatorial sovereignty.

It also did not accept that the executive branch could simply manage the museums as ordinary agencies.

Executive Order 14253

President Trump brought the conflict over national narrative directly into federal policy on March 27, 2025.

Executive Order 14253, Restoring Truth and Sanity to American History, criticized what the administration described as divisive and anti-American historical framing.

The order directed the Vice President, in his role as a Smithsonian Regent, to work through the Institution's governance structure and called for the administration to work with Congress on future appropriations conditions.

The distinction between position and proof matters here.

The order is authoritative evidence of what the administration believed was wrong.

It is not independent proof that the museums it criticized were historically inaccurate.

Political oversight and historical conclusion are not the same thing

An elected administration may criticize a public cultural institution.

Congress may investigate its funding. Regents may demand review. Citizens may object to exhibits. Historians may publish counterarguments.

None of those acts is inherently illegitimate.

The democratic line is crossed when political authority ceases to ask whether the evidence and methods are sound and instead predetermines the conclusion the evidence must produce.

Public accountability concerns process and purpose.

Political dictation concerns permissible interpretation.

Executive Order 14416 raised the stakes

On July 24, 2026, the White House issued Executive Order 14416, Restoring Trust in the Smithsonian Institution.

The order cited a Domestic Policy Council review of the National Museum of American History and declared that the review demonstrated ideological capture.

It directed executive officials to identify and use available authorities, including mechanisms related to funding and contracts, to encourage correction.

It also directed the National Park Service to place temporary signage along public approaches to the museum informing visitors of the administration's findings.

This is a remarkable narrative act.

The executive branch did not merely criticize the museum from outside.

It ordered the creation of a competing interpretation at the museum's threshold.

The administration's report is not an independent verdict

A Domestic Policy Council report is a primary source.

It tells us what the administration concluded and which exhibits it considered objectionable.

It does not settle the historical dispute.

Evaluating a specific claim requires examining the exhibition itself, the evidence cited by curators, the scholarship behind the label, the administration's criticism, and the museum's response.

This is not false balance.

It is the method demanded by the subject.

Narrative conflict cannot be resolved by accepting whichever institution happens to possess governmental authority or professional credentials.

Public money creates a real claim to accountability

The strongest defense of political intervention begins with funding.

The Smithsonian receives federal appropriations. Congress created its governance structure. Public officials sit on the Board.

The institution therefore cannot plausibly claim that democratic government has no legitimate interest in mission, accountability, expenditures, or public trust.

Taxpayer support creates obligations.

A museum using public resources must be able to explain what it is doing and why.

Professional expertise is not a substitute for public accountability.

Expertise is a protection against narrative spoils

The strongest objection begins with the same institutional design.

A museum exists partly because historical interpretation requires specialized knowledge.

If every change in presidential control can rewrite exhibits to fit the new administration's preferred moral conclusion, public history becomes a symbolic spoils system.

A national museum would cease to preserve memory across administrations and instead narrate history through the incumbent coalition.

Professional norms, archival evidence, peer criticism, and trustee governance therefore serve as checks against partisan revision.

The challenge is to protect expertise without turning it into an untouchable caste.

Professional independence is not sovereignty

Curators can be wrong.

Historians can share assumptions. Academic fields can develop fashions. Institutions can become socially narrow.

Professional autonomy should therefore protect methods, not conclusions.

A museum should be open to critique from scholars, citizens, elected officials, and the communities represented.

It should be able to revise an exhibition without treating revision as surrender.

The relevant democratic question is who can force examination, who can force a conclusion, and whether those are the same power.

The museum test is procedural

A museum exhibit can be evaluated without pretending that all interpretations are equally sound.

What sources does it use? What does it omit? Does the label distinguish evidence from interpretation? Are major scholarly disputes acknowledged where they materially affect the claim? Who approved the framing? Can critics see the basis for it? Can the institution revise it?

Political officials can demand answers to those questions.

They should be more cautious about supplying the answers in advance.

The stronger the procedure, the less the public must choose between blind trust in experts and blind trust in politicians.

The federal government is also building patriotic civic programs

The narrative conflict is not limited to criticism of museums.

The 250th anniversary of American independence created an opportunity for the federal government to promote a particular civic emphasis through education programs, prizes, partnerships, and public events.

These initiatives are important because they show how governments shape memory without necessarily commanding a curriculum.

Narrative policy can operate through incentives and prestige as well as prohibition.

History Rocks!

The Department of Education reported that its History Rocks! Trail to Independence Tour completed visits in all fifty states in June 2026.

The Department said the initiative reached nearly twenty thousand students through school visits, assemblies, conversations, and interactive programs.

It described the project as strengthening civic literacy and connecting students to America's founding principles, citizenship, and civic responsibility.

That description is evidence of the Department's intended civic narrative.

It is not, by itself, evidence of the program's educational effects.

The distinction between program and outcome should remain explicit.

The Presidential 1776 Award

The Department also launched the Presidential 1776 Award in December 2025.

The competition tests high-school students on the American founding and civics, with examinations described as independently developed by the James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation.

This is a softer form of state narrative power.

Students are not compelled to use one national textbook.

Government uses recognition, scholarship money, visibility, and prestige to encourage attention to a particular civic canon.

That can be legitimate.

The democratic question is whether the canon leaves room for contradiction or becomes a loyalty test.

Commemoration is not historical education

The distinction matters especially during an anniversary.

A national commemoration is supposed to commemorate.

A Fourth of July speech does not need to allocate equal time to every national crime.

A classroom does something different.

Historical education must explain causation, conflict, contingency, evidence, and disagreement.

A museum may do both, depending on its mission.

Problems begin when a commemorative institution is judged as though it were a graduate seminar or when a school course is reduced to celebration.

Different narrative institutions have different obligations.

The 250th anniversary is a stress test of narrative governance

Anniversaries force selection.

They ask what deserves celebration now.

The 250th anniversary therefore magnifies disagreements that already existed over founding principles, slavery, expansion, immigration, civil rights, military history, and national achievement.

Federal, state, local, private, educational, and cultural institutions all make choices about what to foreground.

The anniversary is useful not because it creates the conflict but because it makes institutional choices unusually visible.

Monuments turn narrative into landscape

A monument is a physical argument about memory.

It can honor, mourn, warn, or mark.

It does not provide a complete historiography.

That is why debates over monuments become confused when participants treat the object either as mere history or as a total endorsement of everything associated with its subject.

Removing a monument does not erase the archival event.

Keeping one does not necessarily mean the community endorses every act of the person depicted.

The political question is what the public space chooses to honor now.

Confederate monuments show why context matters

Confederate monuments cannot be interpreted responsibly by category alone.

The date of erection matters. The inscription matters. The sponsor matters. The location matters.

A battlefield marker placed shortly after a war can perform a different social function from a monument installed during Jim Crow as part of a broader politics of racial memory.

A democratic approach should therefore investigate each object rather than use a universal moral shortcut.

Context is not evasion.

It is historical method.

National parks also tell stories

The National Park Service interprets sites where slavery, war, expansion, Indigenous history, migration, civil rights, labor, and political conflict overlap.

A sign at a battlefield or historic home is necessarily selective.

It names causes, actors, and consequences in a few paragraphs.

The correct demand is not viewpointlessness.

It is fidelity to evidence and the ability to revise interpretation as scholarship changes.

An interpretive sign should not become unchangeable simply because it has been installed by government.

Slavery is constitutive, not peripheral

Any national narrative that treats slavery as a regional footnote is historically inadequate.

Slavery affected constitutional compromise, territorial expansion, finance, agriculture, war, Reconstruction, citizenship, and racial hierarchy.

It belongs near the center of the American story.

But centrality is not totality.

A narrative that explains every American institution solely as an extension of slavery cannot account adequately for abolition, immigration, industrialization,

constitutional amendment, labor conflict, democratic reform, and the many movements that changed the state.

Integration requires keeping the contradiction without allowing one term to consume the entire history.

Reconstruction is the narrative test

Reconstruction may be the strongest test of whether an institution can narrate democratic achievement and failure together.

The Reconstruction Amendments transformed the constitutional order.

Black political participation expanded dramatically.

Federal institutions attempted to protect new citizenship.

Political violence, state resistance, judicial retreat, and national abandonment helped destroy much of that experiment.

If Reconstruction is told only as triumphant constitutional progress, the collapse disappears.

If it is told only as inevitable failure, the institutional achievements disappear.

The history is democratic precisely because both are true.

Archives are the memory of future correction

Narrative institutions select.

Archives preserve more than the current narrative can use.

That makes archives one of democracy's quiet corrective mechanisms.

A later generation can reopen letters, court records, photographs, meeting minutes, census schedules, newspapers, maps, oral histories, and government files and ask a different question.

The current story is therefore less dangerous when the underlying evidence remains accessible.

Narrative authority becomes more corrigible when it cannot destroy the archive that could later challenge it.

Revision is not falsification

Historical revision is often spoken of as though changing an interpretation proves ideological manipulation.

That misunderstands scholarship.

New evidence appears. Old evidence is read differently. Questions once ignored become central. Methods improve.

A revised account can be better than the one it replaces.

The democratic requirement is not stability of conclusion.

It is stability of method: evidence, criticism, response, and revision.

A history that can never change is not strong. It is closed.

National myths stabilize and distort

Political communities use simplified stories because citizens cannot carry the whole archive in their heads.

Founders become symbols. Wars become turning points. Speeches become shorthand. Movements acquire heroes.

Myth in this sense is not necessarily false.

It is compressed.

Compression can create gratitude, solidarity, and orientation.

It can also conceal contradiction and turn inherited interpretation into sacred truth.

The strongest national myths are therefore those that survive complication.

A democratic patriotism should not collapse when the citizen learns more history.

The strongest defense of patriotic education

Citizens need reasons to care about self-government.

A civic culture made entirely of exposure and accusation can produce cynicism faster than understanding.

Schools and public institutions can legitimately teach why constitutional government, political equality, rights, peaceful transfer of power, civic courage, and public service matter.

They can commemorate people who expanded those principles.

Patriotic education can therefore be a form of democratic maintenance.

The stronger version of patriotism does not require historical innocence.

It asks citizens to inherit responsibility for a political project that has succeeded and failed in recognizable ways.

The strongest objection to patriotic education

The objection begins when civic attachment becomes a predetermined conclusion.

If public funding, curriculum incentives, prizes, or museum oversight require teachers and historians to arrive at a prescribed moral judgment regardless of evidence, civic education becomes political certification.

The state may encourage study of founding principles.

It should be more reluctant to condition legitimacy on gratitude alone.

A democracy strong enough to deserve loyalty should be able to tolerate citizens discovering reasons for anger as well as pride.

The strongest defense of critical history

Critical history performs one of democracy's oldest functions.

It identifies the distance between institutional claims and institutional behavior.

A history of slavery explains why constitutional equality needed expansion. A history of segregation explains why formal emancipation was insufficient. A history of failed Reconstruction explains why rights without enforcement can collapse.

Criticism can therefore deepen the logic of democratic correction.

It tells citizens not that the country has no principles but that principles require institutions capable of enforcing them.

The strongest objection to critical history

Critical frameworks can also become totalizing.

If every institution is interpreted only as domination, then no evidence of reform can count as reform.

If every expansion of rights is reclassified as a more sophisticated form of control, the theory becomes difficult to falsify.

That is not a problem because the interpretation is negative.

It is a problem because a narrative that cannot admit contrary evidence has ceased to be corrigible.

Democratic criticism needs the possibility that institutions sometimes improve.

Press freedom and press access

Government can shape narrative not only by suppressing publication but by controlling access.

The First Amendment does not give every journalist a universal right to enter every nonpublic governmental space.

Presidents and agencies necessarily make access decisions.

The democratic problem appears when access becomes a reward for favorable treatment or a punishment for hostile coverage.

A government need not censor an article if it can systematically determine which reporters receive proximity, information, briefings, or opportunities to ask questions.

Access rules therefore belong to narrative power when they affect who can observe government directly.

No narrator should be final

The strongest defense against narrative domination is institutional plurality.

A museum can be criticized by historians. A presidential history project can be challenged by universities. A newsroom can be contradicted by another newsroom. A public broadcaster can be audited. A monument can be contextualized. A school standard can be revised. An archive can reveal evidence that embarrasses everyone.

Plurality works when institutions remain open enough to encounter one another.

It fails when each narrative becomes self-contained and treats outside criticism as illegitimate by definition.

Narrative pluralism can become narrative disintegration

A free society should contain rival histories.

It becomes difficult to remain one political community when those histories no longer share chronology, evidence, or institutional inheritance.

One group can see the founding as a usable promise. Another can see it as a permanent fraud. One can see Reconstruction as a constitutional rebirth. Another can barely recognize Reconstruction as a central national event.

The goal is not to force one verdict.

It is to preserve enough common material that the argument is still about the same country.

A common country does not require a common verdict

Citizens can agree that slavery existed and disagree about reparations.

They can agree that Japanese Americans were incarcerated during World War II and disagree about what that episode means for present national-security policy.

They can agree that *Brown v. Board of Education* was decided and disagree about the constitutional logic of later school policy.

They can agree that September 11 occurred and disagree about the wars that followed.

Shared event does not imply shared judgment.

That distinction is one of the deepest protections of pluralism.

Democracy needs common objects of argument, not mandatory conclusions.

Narrative authority should be distributed by function

A resilient system does not ask one institution to perform every task.

Archives preserve.

Historians investigate.

Schools teach.

Museums curate.

Journalists select present events.

Monuments commemorate.

Political leaders interpret and persuade.

Citizens criticize all of them.

Problems arise when one role absorbs the others: when a president becomes curator-in-chief, when a museum claims archival neutrality for an interpretive choice, when a commemoration becomes compulsory history, or when a newsroom treats its framing as the only legitimate national narrative.

The act-evidence: can the story be revised without conquest?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is revision.

Can a public narrative institution change its account when contrary evidence, credible criticism, or a better interpretation appears without requiring the political destruction of the institution itself?

Can a museum revise a label? Can a newsroom correct framing? Can a school board change a standard? Can a historical commission publish dissent? Can an archive expose evidence inconvenient to the institution that funds it?

A narrative does not remain democratic because it never changes.

It remains democratic because change can occur through criticism, evidence, governance, and review rather than through ideological conquest.

Who tells America what America is?

The answer is everyone and not everyone equally.

Presidents have microphones. Museums have objects. Schools have captive hours of attention. News organizations have reporters. Platforms have audiences. Archives have records. Local journalists have proximity. Monuments have permanence.

These institutions do not perform the same work and should not possess the same authority.

A democracy needs enough narrative plurality that no one actor becomes the country's official storyteller.

It also needs enough common evidence and chronology that plural stories remain recognizable as arguments about one political community.

The American narrative is strongest when it can contain the founding and slavery, constitutional endurance and constitutional failure, war and reform, exclusion and expansion, achievement and betrayal.

The goal is not a story everyone must love.

It is a story no institution can permanently own.

With Part III complete, the book now turns from powers between citizen and state to the machinery of executive government itself: the permanent institutions, personnel systems, administrative capacities, and legal authorities through which a modern president actually governs.

Sources and notes

- Medill Local News Initiative — State of Local News 2025.
<https://www.medill.northwestern.edu/news/2025/news-deserts-hit-new-high-and-50-million-have-limited-access-to-local-news-study-finds.html>
- Rescissions Act of 2025 — Public Law text.
<https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/house-bill/4/text>
- Corporation for Public Broadcasting — Impact of Federal Rescission, Oct. 9, 2025.
<https://cpb.org/spotlight/impact-federal-rescission-public-media>
- Corporation for Public Broadcasting — Board Votes to Dissolve, Jan. 5, 2026.
<https://cpb.org/pressroom/corporation-public-broadcasting-board-votes-dissolve-organization-act-responsible>

- Smithsonian Institution — Our Organization. <https://www.si.edu/about/organization>
- Smithsonian Institution — The Smithsonian Board of Regents, Apr. 13, 2026. <https://www.si.edu/newsdesk/factsheets/smithsonian-board-regents>
- Smithsonian Institution — Statement on Board of Regents and Secretary Governance, June 9, 2025. <https://www.si.edu/newsdesk/releases/smithsonian-statement>
- White House — Executive Order 14253, Restoring Truth and Sanity to American History, Mar. 27, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/03/restoring-truth-and-sanity-to-american-history/>
- White House — Executive Order 14416, Restoring Trust in the Smithsonian Institution, July 24, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/07/restoring-trust-in-the-smithsonian-institution-eo61/>
- U.S. Department of Education — History Rocks! 50-State Tour Completion, June 17, 2026. <https://www.ed.gov/about/news/press-release/us-department-of-education-concludes-50-state-history-rocks-tour-commemorate-americas-250th-birthday>
- U.S. Department of Education — Presidential 1776 Award, Dec. 15, 2025. <https://www.ed.gov/about/news/press-release/us-department-of-education-launches-presidential-1776-award-celebrate-americas-semiquincentennial>

PART IV

**THE MODERN PRESIDENCY AND
THE ADMINISTRATIVE STATE**

CHAPTER 13

GOVERNING THROUGH THE PERMANENT STATE

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

After the signature

A president signs an order in seconds. Government does not move in seconds.

The text has to be read by lawyers. An agency has to identify which statute authorizes the action and which statute limits it. Budget officers have to determine whether Congress appropriated money for the task. Human-resources staff have to find people who can do the work. Program offices have to translate political language into operational instructions. Databases may need to be changed. Contracts may need to be modified. Field offices need guidance. Regulated parties may need notice. A rule may need to pass through notice and comment. Courts may be asked to decide whether any of this is lawful.

The signature is presidential power in its most visible form.

The administrative chain is presidential power in its usable form.

Modern presidents do not govern by command alone. They govern through institutions that existed before they arrived and, in most cases, will remain after they leave.

The permanent state is not a hidden government

The phrase permanent state can sound conspiratorial if it is left undefined.

It should mean something much more ordinary.

The federal government contains more than two million civilian employees, thousands of offices, enormous information systems, standing legal authorities, procurement networks, inspectors, engineers, scientists, analysts, benefit administrators, auditors, investigators, field officers, accountants, and managers.

These people are not one ideological bloc. They do not answer to one secret command. They work in organizations created by different statutes, with different missions, different leadership structures, different professional cultures, and different degrees of presidential control.

The permanence is institutional.

Weather forecasting continues after an election. Social Security payments continue. Air-traffic systems continue. Nuclear safety continues. Veterans still need care. Federal contracts still have to be managed. Courts still issue orders that agencies must process.

A state that had to reconstruct this machinery every four years would not be democratic. It would be incapable.

Elections need machinery

Democratic theory often concentrates on who wins authority.

Administration is about whether authority can be converted into action.

An elected president who cannot redirect lawful executive policy is not fully governing. A career bureaucracy that can ignore electoral change because it dislikes the result is not neutral. It has become a rival source of policy authority.

But the opposite failure is equally serious.

A president who can replace expertise, evidence, legal judgment, and public-service rules with personal loyalty has not made the state more democratic. He has made it more personal.

The central problem is therefore double.

How can the state remain responsive enough that elections matter and impersonal enough that citizens are governed by law rather than by the political loyalty of whoever holds office?

Scale is not the same as power

As of May 2026, the Office of Personnel Management reported 2,025,993 federal civilian employees in its workforce data.

That number is large enough to mislead in two directions.

One direction treats it as proof of an uncontrollable bureaucracy.

The other treats every reduction as proof that government capacity is being destroyed.

Neither conclusion follows from headcount alone.

A state can employ too many people in one function and too few in another. It can automate repetitive work while losing the engineer who understands a fragile system. It can remove obsolete positions and simultaneously weaken an inspector-general office. It can shrink overall while becoming more capable in the functions an administration values most.

Administrative capacity is mission-specific.

The correct question is not how many people work for the federal government. It is what those people are able to do, under what legal authority, with what professional competence, and with what ability to be corrected.

The federal workforce has already changed

Between January 20, 2025 and May 2026, OPM reported a net decline of more than 272,000 federal civilian employees.

That decline did not occur through one mechanism.

Some employees accepted deferred-resignation programs. Some retired. Some probationary employees were terminated. Some positions disappeared through reductions in force or reorganization. Hiring slowed or stopped in parts of government. Other employees left voluntarily under conditions created by the restructuring.

The word firing therefore hides more than it reveals.

The relevant democratic question is what capabilities left with the people.

Government Accountability Office reviews in 2026 documented workforce changes across agencies and warned that particular reductions could deepen existing skill gaps and weaken institutional knowledge.

Those warnings matter more when attached to specific functions than when converted into a general argument for or against smaller government.

OPM became a case study in its own policy

The Office of Personnel Management is not just another agency in this story.

It is the institution responsible for much of the government's human-capital architecture.

GAO reported in July 2026 that OPM's headcount had fallen by 35 percent between December 2024 and March 2026.

That makes OPM an unusually revealing case.

The agency helping to redesign the federal workforce was itself undergoing major redesign.

GAO warned about risks to institutional knowledge and existing skills gaps.

The right question is not whether a 35 percent reduction sounds bold or alarming.

It is whether OPM still possesses enough capacity to process retirements, maintain government-wide personnel rules, oversee merit principles, run human-resources systems, support hiring, and perform the statutory work Congress assigned to it.

Administrative reform is successful only if the institution still works after reform.

Why the merit service exists

The modern civil service was not created because nineteenth-century Americans feared presidents would govern too effectively.

It developed in part because patronage made government unstable, corruptible, and partisan.

Public employment could be treated as a reward distributed through party machines. Elections changed not only leadership but large portions of the administrative workforce.

That system was responsive in one crude sense.

The winning coalition could place loyal people into office.

It was also weak government.

Competence depended on political connection. Institutional memory disappeared. Public jobs became currency. Administration blurred into party organization.

Merit rules were therefore not invented to remove democracy from the executive branch.

They were created to stop elections from becoming personnel spoils all the way down.

Merit does not mean political autonomy

The civil service is not a fourth branch of government.

Career employees do not acquire a democratic mandate by passing an examination, earning professional credentials, or accumulating years of experience.

They work within missions established by statute, appropriations, lawful regulation, executive direction, and judicial interpretation.

A public-health scientist can advise that a policy is unsupported by evidence. An agency lawyer can explain that a proposal exceeds statutory authority. A procurement officer can say that a contract violates the rules.

But a career employee cannot simply refuse a lawful policy because another policy would be better.

Expertise gives advice weight.

It does not create final political authority.

Neutrality means nonpersonal administration

Neutrality is also misunderstood.

A career employee serving a Republican administration is not required to act as though the Republican administration never won. A career employee serving a Democratic administration is not required to preserve the prior Republican program.

The job is to implement lawful policy through impersonal rules.

That means the employee may carry out a policy personally opposed while still refusing to falsify data, violate a statute, discriminate against citizens by party, or protect the president's private interest.

The distinction is not loyalty versus disloyalty.

It is loyalty to lawful office versus loyalty to the person who temporarily occupies it.

Personal loyalty is a different thing

Every president wants people who will execute the administration's program.

No president can govern through subordinates who consider themselves entitled to veto policy.

The democratic problem begins when responsiveness is defined as personal allegiance rather than faithful execution.

A civil servant can tell a president's appointee that the law does not permit the preferred action and still be loyal to the executive function.

An analyst can produce numbers that damage the administration's argument and still be doing the job correctly.

A scientist can explain uncertainty rather than manufacture certainty.

An inspector can report misconduct inside an administration whose broader program the inspector supports.

The permanent state remains democratic only if these acts are not treated automatically as betrayal.

Schedule Policy/Career changes the balance

The second Trump administration has made this tension concrete through Schedule Policy/Career.

On January 20, 2025, Executive Order 14171 revived the core idea of the first-term Schedule F initiative under a new name.

The category applies to career positions considered confidential, policy-determining, policymaking, or policy-advocating.

OPM finalized implementing regulations in February 2026.

On June 3, 2026, Executive Order 14410 identified positions to be transferred into Schedule Policy/Career, and OPM issued implementation guidance days later.

The most important fact is what the category is and what it is not.

It is not a category of political appointments.

OPM expressly describes Schedule Policy/Career as career, nonpolitical, and merit-based.

The hiring system remains formally merit-based

That distinction should not be minimized.

Schedule Policy/Career employees are not Schedule C appointees placed into government to serve one administration and normally depart with it.

They remain career employees.

The administration's formal theory is that policy-influencing career work should remain professional but more accountable to elected leadership.

That is a coherent institutional design even if one disputes where the line is drawn.

The democratic dispute is therefore not about whether every covered job has been converted into patronage.

It is about what happens to removal protection after the conversion.

Removal protection is the major change

The new category materially reduces the adverse-action and appeal protections that ordinarily apply to much of the competitive civil service.

OPM's final rule describes Schedule Policy/Career positions as effectively at-will for removal purposes, while preserving prohibitions on certain unlawful personnel practices through agency policies and other law.

This changes bargaining power inside the administrative state.

A policy-influencing career employee who knows that removal is easier may be more willing to execute lawful presidential priorities quickly.

The same employee may also be less willing to deliver unwelcome professional advice if leadership can treat the advice as obstruction.

The institutional question is not whether easier removal is always democratic or always dangerous.

It is what kinds of behavior removal is actually used to punish.

The accountability argument deserves its strongest form

The administration's defense should not be caricatured as a desire for sycophants.

Senior career employees can exercise substantial practical authority.

They decide how quickly work moves. They interpret instructions. They manage subordinates. They shape options presented to political leaders. They know procedures that new appointees do not.

A president can therefore win an election and encounter an administrative system capable of slowing, narrowing, or frustrating policy even without openly refusing it.

If a career manager intentionally obstructs a lawful directive because the manager prefers the previous administration's policy, stronger removal authority can serve democratic accountability.

Elections should change the direction of executive government where the law permits change.

The politicization objection also deserves its strongest form

The same authority can be used differently.

A career lawyer who says no because the law forbids the action can be described as obstructive. A scientist whose evidence undermines the administration's message can be described as disloyal. A statistician who refuses to alter a number can be accused of resisting policy. A regulator who applies a statute against a politically connected firm can be accused of insubordination.

The problem is not hypothetical as a structural possibility.

Any administration has incentives to prefer advice that makes its program easier.

Removal protection exists partly to raise the cost of converting professional disagreement into a personnel offense.

The real test of Schedule Policy/Career will therefore be found not only in the rule's text but in patterns of designation, removal, grievance, whistleblowing, and replacement.

The administration formally rejects a loyalty oath

OPM's own implementation materials draw an important boundary.

Schedule Policy/Career employees are not required to pledge personal loyalty to the president or to agree personally with administration policy.

They are expected to faithfully implement lawful administration policy to the best of their ability.

That distinction should become an evaluative standard.

If the category operates as written, responsiveness is about execution.

If it becomes a system in which professional disagreement, legal objection, or accurate inconvenient evidence is treated as disloyalty, the actual system will have moved beyond its formal justification.

Internal protection is not the same as independent protection

OPM requires agencies to create policies addressing prohibited personnel practices for Schedule Policy/Career employees.

That matters.

But institutional location matters too.

A protection enforced primarily through the employing agency is not identical to a protection enforced through an independent civil-service process with external appeal.

If the alleged retaliation comes from the leadership of the same agency, internal review can be less credible even when the written standard is sound.

The democratic question is therefore not whether a grievance mechanism exists.

It is whether the mechanism can constrain the people who control the job.

Whistleblowing is the hard case

Every theory of loyal administration eventually reaches the whistleblower.

Suppose an employee discovers that data have been altered, a contract was steered improperly, a program is unsafe, an order is unlawful, or an official lied to Congress.

Reporting the problem can disrupt policy, embarrass leadership, and delay implementation.

Those are precisely the effects that can also accompany bureaucratic obstruction.

The difference lies in evidence and legality.

A state that cannot distinguish principled disclosure from partisan resistance will either become ungovernable or suppress the internal warnings that keep government lawful.

Whistleblower protection is therefore one of the clearest tests of whether responsiveness has become obedience.

Expertise must be allowed to be inconvenient

Administrative expertise is valuable partly because it can resist political wishfulness.

The economist can say the estimate is wrong. The lawyer can say Congress did not authorize the program. The scientist can say the evidence does not support the claim. The engineer can say the system will fail under the proposed timeline.

None of these employees has the right to choose policy after giving the advice.

But a president who can obtain only agreeable advice is not receiving expertise.

He is receiving confirmation.

A permanent state preserves democratic capacity when expertise remains candid before political judgment becomes final.

The president is not merely another participant

It is equally mistaken to describe presidential direction of agencies as political interference by definition.

Article II places executive power in the president, subject to the Constitution and laws.

Cabinet secretaries and agency heads are selected through political institutions because elections are supposed to affect government.

The president is therefore not one stakeholder among many asking a bureaucracy for attention.

The president is part of the constitutional chain of executive authority.

The problem is not direction.

The problem is direction that exceeds statute, evades procedure, disregards appropriations, violates rights, or converts administration into personal service.

The state moves through rules

A political promise does not become administrative reality until it enters a legal form.

Sometimes that form is an enforcement priority. Sometimes it is a grant condition, procurement term, adjudication, waiver, guidance document, or internal memorandum.

Often it is a rule.

Rulemaking matters because it turns political choices into durable instructions that apply beyond one conversation between a president and an agency head.

Durability creates power.

It also creates procedures through which power can be challenged.

The Administrative Procedure Act is friction by design

The Administrative Procedure Act makes administration slower than command.

That is part of its purpose.

In notice-and-comment rulemaking, agencies ordinarily publish a proposal, receive comments, consider relevant objections, explain the final decision, and build a record.

This friction can frustrate elected officials who believe the election settled the issue.

But elections do not repeal statutes or eliminate procedural obligations.

The administrative record gives regulated parties, citizens, Congress, and courts something to inspect.

A rule that must be explained is easier to correct than an instruction that exists only inside the executive chain.

Procedure does not guarantee wisdom

Administrative procedure should not be romanticized.

An agency can follow every formal step and adopt a bad policy.

A sophisticated interest group can dominate a comment docket while ordinary citizens remain absent. Technical records can become inaccessible. Procedures can delay urgent action. Litigation over process can be used strategically to stall a lawful program.

The democratic value of procedure is narrower.

It forces visibility, reason-giving, and review.

It makes administration answerable without pretending that procedure itself determines the correct result.

The APA makes agencies answer to courts

Section 706 of the APA instructs reviewing courts to decide relevant questions of law and to set aside agency action under defined legal standards, including action that is arbitrary, capricious, unconstitutional, beyond statutory authority, or procedurally defective.

That structure makes the permanent state corrigible from outside the executive branch.

An agency may be expert.

It is not the final judge of its own legal power.

This matters especially when administrative action has become technically dense enough that ordinary political oversight is weak.

Loper Bright changed who gets the last word on statutes

For forty years, Chevron deference gave federal agencies a powerful role in resolving statutory ambiguity within the domain of their administration.

In *Loper Bright Enterprises v. Raimondo*, the Supreme Court overruled Chevron in 2024.

Courts must now exercise their own independent judgment on the meaning of statutes rather than defer merely because an agency interpretation is reasonable.

Agency expertise can still matter.

A persuasive interpretation can still persuade.

What disappeared is the rule that ambiguity itself can transfer controlling interpretive authority to the agency.

The separation-of-powers defense of Loper Bright

The strongest defense is constitutional structure.

Congress writes the law. Agencies execute it. Courts deciding cases say what the law means.

If statutory ambiguity automatically allows the executive to choose among reasonable meanings, then the agency can acquire a quasi-legislative power Congress never expressly granted.

Independent judicial judgment therefore constrains the administrative state and reduces the ability of executive policy to expand through ambiguity.

In this view, Loper Bright restores a more ordinary judicial role.

The capacity objection to Loper Bright

The objection concerns expertise and stability.

Judges are generalists.

Agencies often administer technical statutes involving telecommunications, environmental science, finance, labor, pharmaceuticals, energy, transportation, and other complex systems.

Different courts can also reach different interpretations before appellate review resolves the conflict.

The end of Chevron can therefore transfer authority from expert national agencies to generalist judges working through fragmented litigation.

The democratic tradeoff is real.

Judicial independence can constrain executive overreach while also making national administration more legally unstable.

Judicial doctrine became an executive program

The second Trump administration has not treated Loper Bright as a passive court decision.

A February 2025 executive order directed agencies to review existing regulations for lawfulness and consistency with administration policy.

An April 2025 presidential memorandum specifically instructed agencies to prioritize repeal review in light of Loper Bright and other Supreme Court decisions limiting agency authority.

This is a useful example of institutional interaction.

A court redistributes legal authority.

An elected executive then uses the new doctrine to reorganize the administrative agenda.

Judicial constraint becomes an instrument of executive policy without ceasing to constrain the executive in future cases.

Deregulation still needs a state

An administration committed to less regulation does not eliminate administration.

It needs lawyers to identify which rules can be repealed. Analysts must measure effects. Agencies may need new rules to replace old ones. Procedures still apply. Courts can still review the rescission.

A weak administrative state can therefore frustrate deregulation just as easily as regulation.

To govern for less government, the president still needs governing capacity.

The regulatory freeze showed immediate presidential control

On January 20, 2025, the White House ordered a freeze pending review of certain regulatory actions that had not yet become final or effective.

Transition freezes have precedents across administrations.

Their importance lies in timing.

A new president cannot instantly rewrite the regulatory code.

He can stop part of the pipeline while appointed leadership reviews what the prior administration was about to complete.

The freeze is therefore a first-day mechanism for making electoral transition operational inside a permanent state.

The ten-for-one order

Executive Order 14192, issued January 31, 2025, imposed a government-wide deregulatory framework requiring agencies, subject to law and stated exceptions, to identify at least ten existing regulations for elimination when promulgating a new one and to operate within regulatory-cost budgets overseen by the Office of Management and Budget.

The numerical ratio attracts attention.

The institutional feature matters more.

OMB becomes a central coordinating point through which the White House can shape agency regulatory agendas across the executive branch.

Presidential control is therefore exercised not only by calling agency heads.

It is built into management systems.

Centralization can make elections coherent

The case for centralized review is democratic.

A president runs on a program, wins, and needs hundreds of administrative units to move in a broadly consistent direction.

Without cross-government control, one agency can continue the prior administration's priorities while another follows the new president and a third acts according to its own internal culture.

OMB review, hiring controls, regulatory budgets, and presidential memoranda can reduce this fragmentation.

An executive branch should be capable of acting like a branch.

Centralization can flatten statutory differences

Congress did not create every agency to perform the same function.

One agency may be instructed to maximize safety, another to administer benefits, another to protect competition, another to maintain scientific capacity.

Government-wide management rules can create pressure to force these missions into one presidential metric.

That becomes a democratic problem when administrative coherence starts overriding statutory differentiation.

The president directs execution.

Congress still defines much of what is to be executed.

Personnel architecture is policy architecture

The second Trump administration's workforce program should therefore be understood as policy, not merely management.

Executive Order 14210 directed agencies to prepare large-scale reductions in force and organizational changes.

Shrinking an office changes what that office can investigate, regulate, process, or remember.

Eliminating positions can make a policy impossible without formally repealing the statute that authorized it.

Conversely, concentrating staff in immigration enforcement, procurement, energy, or other favored missions can increase capacity without new legislation.

Who remains inside the state influences what the state can do.

Trump v. AFGE did not settle every restructuring dispute

The federal workforce restructuring produced immediate litigation.

In *Trump v. American Federation of Government Employees*, the Supreme Court on July 8, 2025 stayed a district-court injunction that had blocked implementation of the government-wide executive order and OMB-OPM memorandum.

The Court stated that the government was likely to succeed on its argument that the executive order and memorandum themselves were lawful.

It also expressly said it was not deciding the legality of particular agency reduction-in-force or reorganization plans.

That distinction is essential.

The framework could proceed.

Specific actions could still violate statutes, appropriations, procedural rules, or other legal constraints.

A stay is not a universal permission slip

Emergency Supreme Court orders are frequently overread.

A stay changes what happens while litigation continues.

It can indicate the Court's view of likelihood of success.

It does not necessarily resolve every merits question embedded in the dispute.

Here, the Court allowed the broader restructuring program to operate while leaving agency-specific legality open.

The correction system remained layered: presidential direction, district-court review, Supreme Court intervention, and future challenges to particular acts.

Congress entered the personnel conflict

The administrative state is not built by the executive alone.

Congress creates departments, defines missions, funds programs, writes civil-service protections, and can restrict how appropriations are used.

Late in 2025, continuing appropriations legislation temporarily restricted the use of federal funds for certain reductions in force and required rescission of specified RIF notices through January 30, 2026.

That episode complicates any simple story of presidential control.

The president manages the executive branch, but Congress can alter the legal and financial conditions under which management occurs.

Appropriations are administrative architecture.

The permanent state belongs to more than one branch

The executive runs agencies day to day.

Congress creates and funds much of the machinery.

Courts review legality.

Career employees carry knowledge across changes in all three relationships.

The administrative state is therefore permanent partly because its foundations are distributed.

No president can erase every statute on inauguration day. No Congress can administer every program itself. No court can run the executive branch.

The system persists through interdependence.

Independent agencies complicate the picture

Some agencies are deliberately designed to stand farther from immediate presidential control.

Multi-member commissions, staggered terms, and statutory removal protections have historically created different chains of accountability.

Recent Supreme Court decisions and litigation have placed pressure on parts of that architecture.

Those disputes belong more fully in the next chapter, which will examine appointments, acting officials, removal, and personnel control.

For present purposes, the important point is that the permanent state contains multiple models of executive relationship.

There is no single bureaucracy-presidency line.

The Senior Executive Service is a bridge

The Senior Executive Service was created to provide a managerial layer between political leadership and the broader career workforce.

OPM reported 9,761 SES positions as of June 2026, with 6,426 filled, subject to limits on the share that can be noncareer.

The design reflects the central problem of this chapter.

Presidents need senior managers who can translate political priorities into administration.

Government also needs career executives who understand programs across administrations.

The bridge works only if neither side treats the other as illegitimate.

Political appointees and career officials solve different problems

Political appointees answer a democratic question: who should choose the direction of executive policy?

Career officials answer a capacity question: who knows how to make government function continuously?

A president with only appointees would have direction without memory.

A bureaucracy with only career authority would have memory without electoral command.

Modern government needs both.

The institutional task is to keep the boundary intelligible.

The state is more than rulemaking

Administrative law can make the federal government look like a machine that only writes regulations.

Most government is more ordinary.

It pays benefits. It buys goods. It awards grants. It manages land. It inspects facilities. It runs laboratories. It adjudicates claims. It prosecutes cases. It operates databases. It responds to disasters. It issues passports. It maintains statistics.

Many of these acts occur through guidance, contracts, case decisions, field instructions, and software rather than notice-and-comment rules.

The permanent state lives in these routines.

Data systems are state capacity

Modern administration is impossible without information architecture.

A benefit exists legally and still fails if the payment system cannot process claims. A regulatory duty exists and still fails if records cannot be retrieved. A workforce exists and still fails if security credentials, payroll, procurement, or case-management systems collapse.

Leadership changes and workforce reductions can therefore affect capacity through databases and technical infrastructure long before a statute changes.

The law grants authority.

Systems make authority executable.

Institutional memory is useful and dangerous

Career employees remember why a rule was written, which contractors failed, which emergency workaround worked, which statutory deadline arrives every year, and which apparently simple reform already produced an unintended consequence.

That memory can save an administration from repeating old mistakes.

It can also harden into a reason nothing new can ever be tried.

The phrase we tried that before can be expert warning or bureaucratic veto.

The democratic solution is not to erase memory.

It is to require memory to inform elected choice rather than replace it.

The strongest case against bureaucratic insulation

Civil-service protections can protect weak performance as well as principled dissent.

Complex removal systems can make correction slow.

Professional cultures can become resistant to outsiders. Procedures can produce delay for its own sake. Career managers can learn how to outlast political leadership.

A permanent state that cannot be redirected by lawful elected authority becomes a democratic problem even if every employee is professionally competent.

Government is not a museum of prior administrations.

The strongest case against politicization

The opposite system is worse in a different way.

If inspections, prosecutions, scientific findings, statistics, grants, contracts, benefits, or regulatory treatment depend on whether officials please the president, the state stops operating as a general institution.

Citizens become clients of a faction.

The problem is not merely political turnover.

It is the replacement of impersonal rules with personal dependence.

A democratic executive should be able to change policy without making citizenship contingent on loyalty.

Responsiveness and neutrality can coexist

The usual debate presents two models: an autonomous bureaucracy that protects expertise and a loyal bureaucracy that obeys elections.

Both are incomplete.

A professional civil service can respond vigorously to lawful policy while remaining neutral in the administration of law, evidence, and public service.

A regulator can enforce a new lawful standard without favoring political allies. A statistician can produce data that embarrass the president while still implementing the administration's program. A benefits office can follow new rules without asking how recipients voted.

Responsiveness concerns policy direction.

Neutrality concerns the terms of administration.

The reciprocity test

The easiest way to test one's theory of bureaucracy is to reverse the party in power.

Career resistance to a lawful Trump policy should be judged by the same standard as career resistance to a lawful Democratic policy.

Removal authority that seems necessary under one president should remain acceptable under the next.

Whistleblowers who expose a favored administration deserve the same protection as those who expose an opposing one.

Judicial review is not democratic only when courts block regulation. It is also a constraint when courts block deregulation or uphold executive authority.

A civil-service principle that survives only while one's coalition controls the White House is not an institutional principle.

The act-evidence: can elections change policy without personalizing the state?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter contains both halves of the problem.

Can a newly elected president change lawful executive policy while career institutions preserve accurate information, statutory limits, procedural regularity, and continuity of essential service?

A good system should answer yes twice.

Yes, the president can redirect lawful policy.

Yes, the state can continue to tell the president when the law, evidence, appropriation, or operational reality sets a limit.

The failure threshold appears when one answer displaces the other.

If the state cannot change direction, elections lose force.

If the state cannot preserve impersonal constraint, elections become a route to personal administration.

Governing through the permanent state

The permanent state is not an alternative to democratic government.

It is the apparatus through which democratic government becomes real after the campaign.

Its permanence is necessary because expertise, systems, records, statutory missions, and institutional memory cannot be recreated every four years.

Its permanence is dangerous if it becomes insulation from lawful electoral direction.

The answer is not to choose bureaucracy over presidency or presidency over bureaucracy.

It is to preserve the specific things that should survive political turnover: merit, evidence, legality, professional candor, service continuity, public records, and the capacity to implement the lawful program of whoever wins.

A democratic state is not neutral about policy after an election.

It is neutral about whether the law applies to friend and opponent, whether the data are true, and whether the institution belongs personally to the officeholder.

The next chapter moves one level closer to the president. If the permanent state supplies continuity, appointments and removals determine who controls the bridge between that continuity and elected power.

Sources and notes

- Office of Personnel Management — Federal Workforce Data: Workforce Size & Composition. <https://data.opm.gov/explore-data/analytics/workforce-size-and-composition>
- Office of Personnel Management — Federal Workforce Data: Workforce Changes. <https://data.opm.gov/explore-data/analytics/workforce-changes>
- Government Accountability Office — Federal Agency Workforce Changes, June 17, 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108583.pdf>
- Government Accountability Office — Recent Federal Workforce Changes at OPM, July 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108916.pdf>
- Office of Personnel Management — Schedule Policy/Career. <https://www.opm.gov/policy-data-oversight/hiring-information/hiring-authorities/schedule-policycareer/>
- Office of Personnel Management — Schedule Policy/Career Final Rule materials, Feb. 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/news/news-releases/opm-finalizes-schedule-policycareer-rule-to-strengthen-accountability/>
- Office of Personnel Management — Memorandum implementing Executive Order 14410, June 8, 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/chcoc/latest-memos/opm-memo-re-executive-order-implementing-schedule-policycareer-in-the-excepted-service.pdf>
- Supreme Court — Loper Bright Enterprises v. Raimondo, 603 U.S. 369 (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-451_7m58.pdf
- U.S. Code — 5 U.S.C. § 706. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?edition=prelim&num=0&req=granuleid%3AUSC-prelim-title5-section706>
- White House — Regulatory Freeze Pending Review, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/regulatory-freeze-pending-review/>

- White House — Unleashing Prosperity Through Deregulation, Jan. 31, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/unleashing-prosperity-through-deregulation/>
- White House — Directing the Repeal of Unlawful Regulations, Apr. 9, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/04/directing-the-repeal-of-unlawful-regulations/>
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. American Federation of Government Employees*, July 8, 2025. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a1174_h3ci.pdf
- Office of Personnel Management — PLUM Reporting / Government-Wide Limitations, 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/about-us/open-government/plum-reporting/government-wide-limitations/>

CHAPTER 14

APPOINTMENTS, ACTING OFFICIALS, AND THE POLITICS OF PERSONNEL

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The office is empty, but the government is not

At noon on inauguration day, a President can possess constitutional authority and still have hundreds of important offices without confirmed occupants.

The agency does not stop. Deadlines continue. Contracts still need signatures. Investigations remain open. Benefits have to be administered. Diplomats need instructions. Regulations are still in force. Someone must exercise authority before the Senate has finished considering the new President's nominees.

That ordinary continuity problem is the entrance to the politics of personnel.

Personnel rules decide who may act, how long temporary authority can last, which jobs require the Senate's consent, which can be filled politically without it, and how easily an official can be removed after appointment.

The presidency becomes administrative power through people. The democratic question is how to make those people responsive enough that elections matter without making every office an extension of one person.

The Appointments Clause divides control from the beginning

Article II does not give the President unilateral appointment power over every important federal office.

For ambassadors, Supreme Court Justices, and other Officers of the United States, the President nominates and the Senate provides advice and consent. Congress may place the appointment of inferior officers in the President alone, courts of law, or heads of departments.

The structure is not decorative. It divides the power to select senior officers between two elected institutions with different constituencies and electoral calendars.

The President chooses a person. The Senate decides whether that person may occupy the office permanently when confirmation is required.

The system does not guarantee moderation, competence, or bipartisanship. It creates shared ownership of the appointment.

Nomination is not confirmation

A presidential announcement is not an appointment.

The nomination must move through Senate procedures that can include questionnaires, financial disclosures, committee investigation, hearings, reporting to the Executive Calendar, floor debate, cloture, and a confirmation vote.

After confirmation, executive procedures still complete the appointment or commission as required.

This sequence matters because responsibility is distributed. The President is responsible for the choice. Senators are responsible for consenting to it or rejecting it. The official then exercises authority inside a legal office whose existence and powers usually come from Congress.

Personnel legitimacy is therefore a chain, not a single presidential act.

The Senate confirms only part of presidential government

The public tends to see Cabinet secretaries, ambassadors, judges, and prominent agency heads because those appointments attract hearings and floor votes.

They are only part of the political personnel system.

The executive branch also contains presidential appointments that do not require Senate confirmation, noncareer Senior Executive Service positions, Schedule C employees, the newer Schedule G category, career executives, and many other statutory or excepted-service positions.

A President can therefore build a politically aligned leadership structure without obtaining a Senate vote for every person who influences policy.

Advice and consent is a strong control over selected offices, not the universal staffing rule for presidential administration.

Knowing who governs is itself a democratic requirement

The PLUM Act was designed to make senior federal personnel more visible.

OPM's PLUM reporting system identifies policy and supporting positions, appointment types, vacancies, and, in principle, officials serving in acting capacities or performing the duties of vacant offices.

This sounds administrative. It is constitutional infrastructure.

A citizen cannot evaluate presidential control, Senate confirmation, vacancy law, or conflicts of interest if the citizen cannot determine who actually exercises the office.

Personnel accountability therefore begins with a map of authority.

The map is still imperfect

GAO found in 2026 that PLUM reporting contained inconsistencies and incomplete information, especially around acting service.

In the data GAO examined, dozens of appointees were labeled as acting on the public website while the downloadable dataset identified far fewer positions that way.

The problem is not clerical trivia.

If the public record does not reliably distinguish a confirmed officer from an acting official or a person merely performing delegated duties, the legal basis of executive authority becomes harder to audit.

Transparency must identify both the person and the source of the person's authority.

Advice and consent has already been transformed

The Senate's appointment check is constitutionally stable and procedurally elastic.

In 2013, Senate Democrats lowered the cloture threshold for most executive and lower-court nominations to a simple majority. In 2017, Senate Republicans extended the same logic to Supreme Court nominations.

Those changes sharply reduced the minority party's ability to block nominations through the old sixty-vote cloture threshold.

By the 2020s, a President backed by a cohesive Senate majority could usually obtain confirmation without bipartisan support.

The next change concerned not the number of votes needed but the amount of Senate time required.

The Senate began confirming executive nominees in groups

In September 2025, the Senate established new precedents for considering and confirming certain executive nominations en bloc.

The first major use came on September 18, when a group of forty-eight executive nominees was confirmed together.

Later resolutions extended the practice to additional packages.

The Senate still voted. Committees still performed much of the underlying review. The President still had to nominate the officials.

What changed was the cost of forcing separate floor attention for every nominee.

The advice-and-consent power remained. Its granularity changed.

The efficiency argument is real

A modern administration contains hundreds of positions that require Senate confirmation.

If every noncontroversial nominee consumes the same floor time as a Cabinet secretary or a contested regulator, delay becomes an independent form of power.

A minority that lacks the votes to reject a nominee can still make staffing expensive in time.

Grouping nominees allows the Senate to reserve scarce floor attention for positions that actually generate conflict.

From this perspective, en bloc confirmation does not abolish advice and consent. It prevents procedure from becoming a substitute for a losing vote.

The visibility objection is also real

Packaging weakens individualized scrutiny at the moment of final Senate action.

A senator may strongly object to one nominee and still face a vote on a group of dozens. Journalists and citizens are less likely to notice one controversial name inside a large package than in a separate confirmation vote.

The democratic cost is therefore not absence of consent. It is dilution of personal accountability.

The exclusions from the new procedures matter for this reason. Article III judges and some of the highest executive positions retained more individualized treatment.

The Senate itself recognizes a hierarchy of offices requiring different degrees of public attention.

Vacancies are inevitable

No appointment system can depend on continuous confirmed occupancy.

Officials resign, die, are removed, recuse, become ill, or leave before a successor is confirmed.

The Federal Vacancies Reform Act of 1998 provides a general framework for temporary service in many positions requiring presidential appointment and Senate confirmation. Some offices also operate under special succession statutes.

Acting service is therefore not a constitutional anomaly.

It is how the state keeps functioning while the permanent appointment process catches up.

The Vacancies Act offers several lawful paths

Under the general FVRA framework, the first assistant can often serve automatically when the office becomes vacant.

The President can also direct another official who already holds a Senate-confirmed position to serve temporarily.

In many circumstances, the President may select a sufficiently senior employee of the same agency who satisfies statutory requirements involving tenure and pay.

The statute gives the President flexibility, but not an unlimited personnel pool.

The basic democratic bargain is continuity inside categories Congress has defined.

Acting service is not a recess appointment

An acting official does not ordinarily receive a new constitutional appointment to the vacant office.

The person temporarily performs its functions and duties under statutory authority.

A recess appointee, by contrast, receives a temporary appointment under the Recess Appointments Clause and occupies the office until the constitutional commission expires.

The distinction matters because the source of authority, legal duration, and relationship to Senate consent are different.

Both mechanisms permit temporary service without prior Senate confirmation for that particular office. They do so through different constitutional and statutory architectures.

Temporary power needs a clock

The democratic legitimacy of acting service depends heavily on time.

The FVRA provides limited periods of service and extends authority under specified circumstances when nominations are pending, withdrawn, rejected, or returned.

The purpose is obvious. Government needs continuity, but temporary authority should not become a permanent substitute for confirmation.

A President who uses an acting official for a transition problem is using the statute as designed.

A President who deliberately avoids sending a permanent nominee because the acting official is easier to control raises a different institutional question even before any court finds a violation.

The Vacancies Act can bite

The FVRA does more than recommend prompt nominations.

For certain exclusive functions and duties of a vacant office, action taken by a person serving unlawfully can be treated as without force or effect and, in specified circumstances, not subject to later ratification.

That sanction turns a personnel rule into a constraint on governmental acts.

Its practical reach can be narrow because the statute's strongest consequences attach to functions that are legally exclusive to the vacant officer.

The legal question is therefore not simply whether an acting title was improper. It is what authority the person actually exercised.

Delegation makes the system harder to see

Many agency duties are delegable.

When the authority to serve as acting officer expires, another official may sometimes continue to perform tasks that are not legally exclusive to the vacant office.

This prevents an agency from becoming paralyzed because one appointment is delayed.

It also creates a possible route around the practical force of vacancy time limits.

The democratic analysis has to follow delegated power rather than rely on job titles.

A person who is no longer Acting Director may still exercise much of the Director's practical authority through delegation if the law permits it.

The acting official is a bipartisan instrument

Recent presidents of both parties have relied on acting leadership.

The mechanism solves a universal problem and should not be treated as illegitimate merely because one administration uses it aggressively.

The relevant evidence concerns frequency, duration, importance of the office, availability of permanent nominees, statutory compliance, and whether temporary service is being used to avoid shared appointment.

Precedent is not symmetry, but structure is not partisan simply because one President maximizes it.

The Recess Appointments Clause still exists, but the Senate learned to close the door

The Constitution gives presidents power to fill vacancies during a Senate recess through commissions that expire at the end of the next session.

The mechanism was more important when the Senate spent long periods away from Washington.

In *NLRB v. Noel Canning*, the Supreme Court recognized the Senate's pro forma sessions as genuine sessions when the chamber says it is in session and retains the capacity to conduct business.

Modern scheduling can therefore prevent the recess needed for many recess appointments.

The formal constitutional power remains. Its practical availability has narrowed through institutional adaptation.

Acting service became the more practical bypass valve

The decline of recess appointments did not eliminate temporary presidential control of vacant offices.

The FVRA and agency succession statutes often allow acting leadership immediately without waiting for a recess.

The contemporary struggle therefore shifted from the Recess Appointments Clause toward statutory vacancy rules, office-specific succession, delegation, and duration.

This is a recurring pattern in American government. When one pathway closes, institutional competition moves to another.

Schedule C supplies confidential political personnel

Not every policy job belongs in the Senate-confirmed layer.

Schedule C positions have long provided noncareer excepted-service jobs of a confidential or policy-determining character.

These employees normally serve an administration rather than a permanent career.

The rationale is straightforward. Presidents and political appointees need advisers, schedulers, communications staff, policy aides, and confidential personnel who share the administration's direction.

A government in which every political aide had tenure across administrations would be less, not more, democratically responsive.

Schedule G adds another political staffing channel

Executive Order 14317 created Schedule G in July 2025 for certain noncareer policymaking or policy-advocating positions that normally change with presidential transitions.

The category is important partly because of what it should not be confused with.

Schedule G is noncareer political staffing.

Schedule Policy/Career, examined in the previous chapter, is formally career and merit-based even though it carries reduced removal protection.

Using one label for both would erase the distinction between political appointment and career accountability.

The democratic defense of Schedule G is speed and coherence

A new administration needs more than a handful of Cabinet officials to change executive policy.

Policy work is distributed across offices, legal teams, program staffs, and agency leadership layers.

A category of noncareer policy personnel allows elected leadership to place people who share its program in roles that do not constitutionally or statutorily require Senate confirmation.

This can make the executive branch more coherent and reduce dependence on inherited policy teams.

The democratic concern is migration of authority

The question is how much consequential power can be placed in positions outside advice and consent.

If policy authority that historically sat in confirmed offices migrates downward into unconfirmed political jobs, formal Senate control can remain while practical control weakens.

That does not make Schedule G unlawful by definition.

It makes job design, delegation, and supervision part of the constitutional story.

Personnel categories matter because authority can be reorganized around them.

Appointment is only half of control

An official can enter office through shared appointment and then become relatively independent of the President if removal is restricted.

Another official can receive the same Senate confirmation and remain removable at will.

These are different accountability structures.

Appointment determines who gets in. Removal determines who can force the official out.

The politics of personnel therefore cannot be understood by reading the Appointments Clause alone.

The Court has been strengthening presidential removal power

In *Seila Law*, the Supreme Court invalidated removal protection for the single director of the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau.

In *Collins v. Yellen*, it invalidated a similar restriction involving the Federal Housing Finance Agency.

Those cases placed pressure on the older model of independent commissions that had survived under Humphrey's Executor.

By 2026, that pressure became a direct holding involving the Federal Trade Commission.

Trump v. Slaughter

On June 29, 2026, the Supreme Court decided *Trump v. Slaughter*.

The Court held that the FTC's statutory for-cause removal restriction violated Article II.

The decision materially strengthens presidential control over FTC commissioners after they have been appointed and confirmed.

The Senate still participates in their appointment. Statutory terms and composition rules still exist. But the tenure protection that once limited presidential removal no longer performs the same function.

The architecture becomes shared entry and stronger presidential exit.

The accountability defense of Slaughter

The strongest defense is constitutional responsibility.

If an officer exercises executive power, the President is expected to answer politically for the execution of federal law.

That accountability is weakened if Congress can place important executive officers beyond presidential removal while still attributing agency action to the administration.

From this perspective, Senate confirmation is the check at entry. Presidential removal is the mechanism that keeps executive power accountable afterward.

A President should not be held responsible for an executive officer the President cannot control.

The independence objection to Slaughter

Congress has often designed multimember commissions with fixed terms and bipartisan membership to reduce direct control by one presidential coalition.

These institutions were intended to preserve continuity, expertise, and a measure of cross-party administration.

If opposing commissioners may be removed at will, fixed terms and bipartisan composition can remain formally intact while losing much of their practical insulation.

The objection is not that commissioners should be sovereign.

It is that Congress's chosen institutional form can be converted into ordinary presidential administration without Congress changing the statute.

Trump v. Cook is the necessary counterexample

The same day, the Court treated the Federal Reserve differently.

In *Trump v. Cook*, the Court declined to let the government immediately remove Federal Reserve Governor Lisa Cook while litigation continued.

The case confirms that removal law remains office-specific and that the Federal Reserve occupies a distinctive historical and statutory position.

The procedural posture matters. Cook should not be inflated into a universal merits rule for all independent agencies.

But it prevents an equally inaccurate conclusion: Slaughter did not erase every form of protected tenure in the federal government.

Office design still matters

Appointment and removal rules cannot be generalized safely without identifying the office.

A Cabinet secretary, FTC commissioner, Federal Reserve governor, inspector general, U.S. attorney, administrative judge, and career executive operate through different statutory and constitutional structures.

Terms, succession rules, bipartisan requirements, cause standards, and delegation powers can all differ.

Personnel law is granular because federal offices are granular.

A fixed term is not the same as protected tenure

A statutory term can organize appointment timing and staggering even when an official is removable before the term expires.

If removal is at will, the date printed in the statute no longer guarantees continuity against presidential displeasure.

This distinction matters for commissions designed to span presidencies.

Term structure can preserve some institutional rhythm while removal doctrine changes the degree of independence inside that rhythm.

Bipartisan composition can become formal rather than practical

A commission can require representation from more than one party and still become more presidentially controlled if removal is unrestricted.

A President could face legal limits on whom to appoint while possessing broader power over whether existing commissioners remain.

The formal design survives. Its practical equilibrium changes.

This is why personnel architecture must be evaluated as a system rather than as isolated statutory clauses.

Confirmation does not create neutrality

A Senate-confirmed officer can remain intensely partisan, ideologically committed, or personally aligned with the President.

Advice and consent does not transform a political nominee into a neutral technocrat.

Its democratic value is different.

It forces another elected institution to accept responsibility for the appointment and gives the public a visible record of scrutiny.

Shared appointment is a procedural check, not a personality transformation.

The strength of the Senate check depends on politics

When the President's party holds a disciplined Senate majority, confirmation can become fast and mostly intraparty.

When the Senate is divided or the governing party is internally fragmented, the same constitutional mechanism can force negotiation, delay, or withdrawal.

The text of the Appointments Clause does not change.

Its practical force does.

Institutional structure sets the opportunity for constraint; political alignment determines how intensely that opportunity is used.

Staffing speed is itself democratic capacity

Vacancies are not costless checks on presidential power.

An administration that cannot install leadership can fail to execute statutes, negotiate abroad, supervise programs, or make regulatory decisions.

Long confirmation delays can empower acting officials and career deputies precisely because permanent nominees remain absent.

The Senate can therefore strengthen its formal leverage while inadvertently strengthening temporary executive workarounds.

Constraint and bypass can produce each other.

Delay and acting service can become mutually reinforcing

The President can say the Senate forced reliance on acting leadership.

The Senate can say the President prefers acting officials because they avoid confirmation.

Both claims may be partly true in the same vacancy.

The only serious method is chronological: when did the office become vacant, who served, under what statute, when was a nominee submitted, what did the Senate do, and what authority did the temporary official exercise?

Motive should follow the sequence rather than replace it.

Personnel is policy

Who occupies an office changes what government notices and what it tries to do.

A secretary can change enforcement emphasis. A general counsel can change legal theories. A commissioner can change regulatory priorities. A prosecutor can change charging policy. A personnel director can change who enters the state.

None of these acts necessarily requires Congress to amend a statute.

Personnel is therefore not housekeeping after policy is made.

It is one of the mechanisms through which policy is made operational.

Personnel is institutional design

A confirmed officer with a fixed term, an acting official, a Schedule G political appointee, and a career executive may all work on the same policy and still occupy fundamentally different constitutional relationships.

Each has a different source of authority, tenure, visibility, supervision, and removal pathway.

Those differences determine who can correct whom.

The law of personnel is therefore the law of accountability translated into jobs.

The strongest case for broad presidential control

Presidents are elected to execute programs.

A modern executive branch cannot respond to elections if senior officials can entrench the prior administration's policies, if confirmation takes so long that leadership never arrives, or if Congress insulates executive officers from meaningful presidential supervision.

Political appointments, acting service, streamlined confirmation, and broader removal power can all be defended as ways to make electoral choice operational.

The President should not merely win the White House. The President must be able to govern through it.

The strongest case for shared control

The same tools can be combined in ways that hollow out institutional checks.

If acting officials replace nominees for long periods, if large confirmation packages reduce meaningful scrutiny, if unconfirmed policy positions absorb consequential authority, and if removal doctrine eliminates statutory independence, the President can gain practical control without a corresponding increase in public accountability.

The democratic concern is not presidential control as such.

It is presidential control that makes the legal distinctions among offices increasingly fictitious.

The Senate has its own capacity to abuse the check

Advice and consent can expose conflicts, test qualifications, and force presidents to choose nominees capable of obtaining majority support.

It can also become leverage unrelated to the merits of the individual nominee.

Blanket holds, procedural delay, and refusal to process ordinary offices can weaken government without producing a better appointee.

A confirmation system that cannot staff the institutions Congress itself created can become self-defeating.

The Senate's power is a check. It is not automatically wise because it is a check.

The reciprocity test

The best personnel rule is the one that remains acceptable after partisan reversal.

Acting service should not become unconstitutional merely because the President using it is disliked. Removal protection should not become democratic only when it shelters an official favored by the observer. En bloc confirmation should be evaluated by the same standard when either party controls the Senate.

Presidents of both parties need politically aligned personnel. Senators of both parties possess legitimate advice-and-consent power.

Institutional principles have to survive the next election.

The act-evidence: can flexibility remain bounded?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is whether presidential personnel flexibility remains inside boundaries that other institutions can still enforce.

Can the President install enough political leadership to implement an electoral program? Can the Senate still reject permanent nominees where confirmation is required? Can an acting official's authority be traced to a statute and a clock? Can courts enforce removal limits that remain constitutional? Can Congress design an office whose distinctive structure still has practical meaning?

A healthy system should permit fast political control in some places and shared or protected authority in others.

The failure threshold is reached when the categories survive only on paper.

Appointments, acting officials, and the politics of personnel

Presidential power is exercised through people before it is exercised through institutions.

The United States does not answer the personnel question with one rule. It uses nomination, Senate confirmation, noncareer appointments, acting service, statutory succession, fixed terms, removal rules, and career administration to create different kinds of authority.

That complexity is frustrating. It is also protective.

Government has to keep functioning when offices are empty. Elections have to produce new leadership. The Senate has to retain a meaningful role where the Constitution and statutes give it one. Some institutions are designed to preserve continuity beyond one presidency.

The democratic standard is not maximal presidential control or maximal insulation.

It is legible, bounded control: every officeholder should have a visible source of authority, every temporary arrangement should remain genuinely temporary, and every statutory distinction should still matter in practice.

The next chapter turns from personnel to time. Emergency powers ask what happens when the President argues that ordinary procedures are too slow for the danger at hand.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Senate — Donald J. Trump Cabinet Nominations.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nominations/Trump_47_cabinet.htm
- U.S. Senate — Civilian Executive Nominations Confirmed.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nom_confc.htm
- U.S. Senate — Cloture Motions, 119th Congress.
<https://www.senate.gov/legislative/cloture/119.htm>
- Congress.gov — S.Res.377, 119th Congress.
<https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/senate-resolution/377/text>
- Congress.gov — S.Res.532, 119th Congress.
<https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/senate-resolution/532/text>
- White House — Designation of Acting Cabinet and Cabinet-Level Positions, Jan. 20, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/designation-of-acting-leaders/>
- Office of Personnel Management — PLUM Reporting.
<https://www.opm.gov/about-us/open-government/plum-reporting/>
- Government Accountability Office — PLUM Reporting, GAO-26-108164.
<https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108164.pdf>
- White House — Executive Order 14317, Creating Schedule G, July 17, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/07/creating-schedule-g-in-the-excepted-service/>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Slaughter, June 29, 2026.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-332_qn12.pdf
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Cook, June 29, 2026.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25a312_5468.pdf
- U.S. Code — Federal Vacancies Reform Act, 5 U.S.C. §§ 3345-3349d.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@titles/part3/subpartB/chapter33/subchapter3&edition=prelim>
- Supreme Court — NLRB v. Noel Canning, 573 U.S. 513 (2014).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/13pdf/12-1281_bodg.pdf

CHAPTER 15

EMERGENCY AS A METHOD OF GOVERNMENT

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The word that changes the clock

A President declares an emergency. The Constitution does not disappear. Congress does not vanish. Courts do not close. The Treasury does not become a private presidential account.

What changes is the clock and the statutory map.

Congress has written laws that make powers available when specified emergency conditions exist. A declaration can activate authorities that would otherwise remain dormant, accelerate procedures, permit reallocations within legal limits, expand access to military or economic tools, or change the conditions under which an agency may act.

That makes emergency government less mysterious than its rhetoric and more consequential than its critics sometimes admit.

The democratic question is not whether presidents should ever possess emergency power. A government incapable of acting quickly in a genuine crisis can fail as completely as a government that acts without limits.

The harder question is whether emergency power remains exceptional, traceable, reviewable, and terminable — or becomes an ordinary method for escaping the friction of ordinary government.

Emergency is not a second Constitution

American emergency law does not create one hidden constitutional regime that replaces the normal one whenever a President uses the word crisis.

The system is plural. Different statutes authorize different powers in different circumstances. Some concern foreign assets. Some concern military reserves. Some concern industrial production. Some concern public health, disasters, communications, transportation, or federal property.

The phrase emergency power therefore has to be broken into smaller questions.

Which condition was declared? Which statute was invoked? What act did the statute authorize? How long can the authority last? What reporting is required? Can Congress terminate it? Can a court review the action? What happens when the triggering condition changes?

Without those questions, emergency analysis becomes political theater. One side says dictatorship. The other says necessity. The law lives in the chain between them.

An executive order is not an emergency

Presidents issue executive orders constantly without declaring national emergencies.

An executive order is a form of presidential direction. Its legal force depends on constitutional or statutory authority available to the President.

A national emergency is different. It is a finding or declaration that can make particular statutory authorities available.

The two can appear in the same document. They are not synonyms.

A President can order an agency to review a regulation without invoking emergency law. A President can declare an emergency and then rely on a separate statute to freeze assets, mobilize reserves, or redirect specified resources.

This distinction is foundational because the declaration is usually not the substantive power itself.

The declaration opens the door; another statute defines the room

The National Emergencies Act structures the declaration and maintenance of national emergencies.

It generally does not tell the President what to do after declaring one.

The substantive authority usually comes from another law.

That means an emergency declaration cannot enlarge statutory text simply because the President regards the problem as grave.

If Congress says a power may be used to regulate specified foreign transactions, the President must still remain inside that grant. If Congress authorizes military construction under specified emergency conditions, the President must satisfy the conditions of that statute. If Congress permits industrial investment under the Defense Production Act, the findings and purposes of that Act still matter.

Emergency is a gateway. It is not a blank check.

The National Emergencies Act was supposed to make emergencies legible

The National Emergencies Act of 1976 was itself a reform.

Congress confronted a landscape in which emergency declarations and extraordinary authorities had accumulated across decades with inadequate visibility and termination mechanisms.

The Act requires publication and transmission of declarations, identifies procedures for exercising emergency powers, and creates rules for continuation and termination.

Under the statutory framework, a national emergency terminates on its anniversary unless the President publishes and transmits a continuation notice within the required period.

The President can also terminate an emergency by proclamation. Congress can terminate through enacted legislation.

On paper, the system turns emergency into a renewable legal status rather than a permanent presidential fact.

Renewal is not the same as review

Annual continuation sounds temporary.

In practice, some national emergencies persist across many years and several administrations.

The President must affirmatively maintain them, but the political cost of filing a continuation notice can be far lower than the cost of reconsidering the entire legal and policy architecture built around the emergency.

A chronic foreign threat, sanctions regime, cyber risk, or security problem may remain genuinely serious for a long time. Duration does not prove abuse.

But duration changes the democratic question.

A power justified by thirty days of uncertainty may look different after ten or thirty years. The longer an emergency persists, the more important it becomes to ask whether Congress has revisited the delegation, whether the factual predicate has changed, and whether continuation has become administrative habit rather than political judgment.

Congress can end an emergency, but the President can resist

The original National Emergencies Act relied on a legislative-veto structure that allowed Congress to terminate emergencies more easily.

After *INS v. Chadha* invalidated legislative vetoes generally, termination had to conform to bicameralism and presentment.

Today, Congress can pass a joint resolution to terminate an emergency, but that resolution must become law.

If the President wants the emergency to continue, the President can veto the attempted termination. Congress may then need the supermajorities required to override.

This creates an important asymmetry.

Where a statute permits unilateral presidential declaration, activation can be easier than termination over presidential objection.

The emergency can therefore persist not because Congress affirmatively approves it each year but because Congress cannot assemble enough votes to end it against the President.

The case for predelegated emergency power

There are strong reasons for Congress to legislate emergency authorities before the emergency arrives.

Foreign assets may need to be frozen in hours. Military reserves may need to be mobilized before Congress can draft a new statute. Industrial production may need priority orders. A dangerous communicable disease may require immediate federal

coordination. A disaster may destroy the very infrastructure through which ordinary procedures operate.

If every crisis required Congress to invent authority from zero, delay itself could become a form of state failure.

Predelegation is therefore democratic preparation.

Congress identifies classes of danger in advance and gives the executive tools to act when those conditions arise.

The legitimacy of the system depends on whether the delegation remains specific enough to constrain future presidents the legislators cannot yet imagine.

The danger is cumulative, not magical

The American emergency system does not contain one clause that turns a president into a dictator.

The structural danger is accumulation.

Congress has enacted many emergency statutes over many decades. Each can be defensible in isolation. Together, they create a large inventory of dormant authorities that can become available when a President makes the relevant findings.

The more broadly the triggering conditions are written, the more policy can migrate into emergency channels.

The risk therefore comes less from constitutional suspension than from normalization: border policy, trade policy, energy policy, industrial policy, sanctions, military deployment, and other domains can all acquire emergency pathways.

A democracy can retain all its formal institutions while the exceptional route becomes progressively ordinary.

Analyze the act, not the adjective

The disciplined method is simple.

Condition declared. Statutory authority invoked. Act taken. Duration. Congressional response. Judicial response. Practical effect.

This method prevents the President's rhetoric from doing legal work it cannot do.

It also prevents critics from treating every action associated with an emergency as though it came from one limitless emergency power.

The same declaration can support several authorities. The same statute can support different actions. Some actions can be lawful while others exceed the statute.

Emergency government is corrigible only if each link remains visible.

The southern border emergency

President Trump declared a national emergency at the southern border on January 20, 2025.

The proclamation described migration, cartels, trafficking, narcotics, and threats to sovereignty and public safety in unusually severe terms. It invoked the National

Emergencies Act and made specified military authorities available, including reserve and military-construction provisions according to their terms.

The administration then pursued a broader border program through multiple statutes and agencies.

This is exactly why the word emergency is insufficient as an explanation.

Military support, construction, immigration enforcement, federal land use, detention, transportation, and later economic measures did not all arise from one legal power. Each required its own authority.

The border emergency is therefore best understood as an organizing frame that opened and coordinated several statutory pathways.

Presidential language is not statutory interpretation

The January 2025 proclamation described the border in terms of invasion and attack on sovereignty.

That language matters because it reveals the executive branch's theory of the condition.

It does not automatically make every federal statute containing words such as invasion, emergency, obstruction, or attack applicable.

Congress chooses statutory triggers. Courts interpret them. Facts must fit the relevant legal language.

A President cannot make a statute broader by choosing a more dramatic noun.

The same principle protects future presidents as well as constrains the present one: political urgency cannot substitute for legal provenance.

Federalizing the Guard is a distinct act

The 2025 deployment of California National Guard forces in Los Angeles illustrates how quickly domestic military questions become confused.

President Trump invoked 10 U.S.C. § 12406 to call Guard units into federal service during disturbances associated with federal immigration enforcement.

In its June 2025 stay opinion, the Ninth Circuit emphasized that the President had invoked § 12406 — and only that statute — for the federalization before the court.

That matters because federalizing the Guard answers one question: who commands the force?

It does not, by itself, answer every question about what the force may do once federalized.

Command status, mission, and law-enforcement authority are separate legal issues.

Federal troops and ordinary policing are not the same thing

The Posse Comitatus framework generally restricts use of federal military forces for ordinary civilian law enforcement unless the Constitution or Congress provides an exception.

A federalized National Guard force can protect federal personnel or property and perform other authorized missions without necessarily receiving open-ended authority to enforce ordinary criminal law.

That distinction is essential in domestic emergency analysis.

A deployment can be lawful as protective support and unlawful if forces exceed the mission Congress authorized.

The legal question therefore follows the conduct: who controlled the force, what orders were given, what tasks were performed, and which statute authorized those tasks?

The Insurrection Act is a different and stronger pathway

The Insurrection Act provides separate statutory authority for domestic use of armed forces under specified conditions involving insurrection, obstruction of federal law, or failures to protect constitutional rights.

Its consequence can be much more direct because it can authorize military involvement in enforcement that would otherwise be constrained.

That is precisely why analysts should not imply that the Act has been invoked when it has not.

The January 2025 border proclamation itself required later reporting that included consideration of whether the Insurrection Act should be invoked. The distinction between considering and invoking is legally decisive.

Emergency rhetoric becomes dangerous when it collapses separate escalation steps into one imagined presidential power.

Domestic military power has a democratic defense

A federal system cannot make national law dependent entirely on state cooperation.

American history contains moments when federal military authority protected constitutional government against state or local resistance.

Desegregation is the unavoidable example. Federal power was used to enforce court orders and protect Black students when state officials resisted constitutional rights.

A theory that prohibits all domestic military enforcement in principle would erase a tool that has sometimes defended democracy against local majorities and state defiance.

The democratic question is therefore not whether domestic military power can ever be legitimate.

It is whether the triggering conditions, mission, necessity, geography, and duration remain bounded enough that the exception does not become ordinary policing.

Domestic military power also changes the citizen-state relationship

Armed forces are built for missions different from ordinary civilian policing.

The presence of military personnel in streets, around protests, or in law-enforcement operations changes the practical meaning of public order. It can deter violence. It can also chill lawful assembly, increase escalation risk, and normalize coercive tools that civilian institutions are supposed to use more narrowly.

That is why mission definition matters as much as deployment authority.

A democracy should know not only that troops are present but what they are authorized to do, who commands them, what rules govern force, and how the mission ends.

Newsom v. Trump shows that deference is not disappearance of review

California challenged the 2025 Guard federalization.

The Ninth Circuit stayed a district-court temporary restraining order that would have returned control of the Guard to the state. The panel treated the President's determination under § 12406 with substantial deference and concluded that the government had made the showing necessary for a stay.

That ruling did not transform every deployment question into a political question beyond courts.

It also did not decide every possible mission the federalized forces might perform.

The litigation demonstrates a recurring feature of emergency law: judicial review can be highly deferential and still impose a requirement that presidential action connect to a statutory trigger.

Economic emergency power is the normalization test

The International Emergency Economic Powers Act is one of the most consequential emergency statutes in modern government.

IEEPA allows the President, after declaring a qualifying national emergency involving an unusual and extraordinary foreign-source threat, to regulate or prohibit specified economic transactions and interests in property.

Presidents of both parties have used it extensively for sanctions, asset blocking, terrorism, cyber threats, proliferation, and foreign-policy pressure.

That history matters.

IEEPA was not created for Donald Trump, and broad executive economic emergency power did not begin in 2025.

The 2025 controversy concerned something more specific: whether the statute also authorized tariffs.

The 2025 tariffs turned emergency law into general trade policy

In February 2025, the administration used IEEPA and national-emergency declarations to impose additional tariffs connected to fentanyl, migration, and cross-border conditions involving Canada, Mexico, and China.

On April 2, Executive Order 14257 declared another emergency tied to large and persistent goods trade deficits and imposed broad reciprocal tariffs.

The scale of the policy made the legal question unavoidable.

Tariffs affect domestic importers, consumers, manufacturers, supply chains, foreign governments, and the wider economy. They are not a narrow asset freeze applied to a designated foreign actor.

The administration had transformed an emergency economic statute into a major instrument of ordinary trade policy.

The legal dispute turned on four words

IEEPA authorizes the President, under statutory conditions, to regulate transactions involving foreign interests and to regulate importation or exportation in specified ways.

The administration argued that the power to regulate importation was broad enough to include tariffs.

Challengers answered that Congress knows how to delegate tariff power and does so expressly in trade statutes that specify rates, conditions, procedures, or limits.

The constitutional rhetoric around the case was sweeping.

The decisive legal question was narrower: did Congress actually authorize tariffs in IEEPA?

Emergency power often turns on exactly this kind of textual question.

The Supreme Court closed that door in 2026

On February 20, 2026, the Supreme Court resolved the consolidated IEEPA tariff dispute.

In the Learning Resources litigation, the Court vacated and remanded with instructions to dismiss for lack of jurisdiction; in the companion V.O.S. Selections case, it affirmed the judgment rejecting the tariffs. The merits opinions established that IEEPA does not authorize the President to impose tariffs.

That procedural precision matters because case names can obscure which judgment supplied the proper vehicle.

The broader institutional point is clear.

The Court did not abolish emergency economic power. It did not deny that the cited conditions could be serious. It held that the statute did not contain the tariff power the administration claimed.

The correction was source-specific

The Supreme Court's ruling did not establish a general rule that presidents may never impose tariffs.

Congress has enacted other tariff statutes that delegate authority under specified conditions.

The Court instead rejected IEEPA as the legal source for this particular form of economic power.

That is a model of corrigibility because it leaves the emergency architecture intact while closing one unauthorized pathway.

A future President of either party is bound by the same statutory interpretation unless Congress changes the law.

The limit is reciprocal because it attaches to the office, not the officeholder.

Emergency seriousness does not expand the statute

The tariff case demonstrates a deeper point.

A court does not always need to decide whether the President exaggerated the crisis.

It can assume the problem is grave and still ask whether Congress delegated the claimed remedy.

This is often the more stable form of judicial review.

Judges are poorly positioned to substitute their own foreign-policy or economic urgency assessment for the executive branch in every dispute. They are institutionally better positioned to interpret statutory text, enforce procedure, and protect rights.

Emergency government can therefore be constrained without requiring courts to become national crisis managers.

The trade-deficit emergency exposed the temporal problem

The April 2025 emergency was especially revealing because trade deficits are not sudden in the way a hurricane, invasion, or market closure can be sudden.

The administration characterized persistent structural conditions as an unusual and extraordinary threat and used that characterization to unlock emergency economic authority.

That does not prove the condition was trivial.

It raises a different question: when does emergency describe urgency, and when does it become a statutory classification for a long-term policy problem?

The distinction matters because long-term problems invite long-term emergency government.

Chronic emergencies can be real emergencies

Terrorism does not end on a predictable date. Cyber threats can be continuous. Foreign sanctions targets can persist. Border pressure can rise and fall without disappearing. Energy infrastructure can remain vulnerable for years.

A democratic theory that says a genuine emergency must always be brief would misdescribe modern security and economic life.

But chronic danger changes the burden of institutional justification.

If a problem has become a durable condition of government, Congress has more opportunity to legislate specifically. Agencies have more time to build ordinary procedures. Public debate can become less improvisational.

The longer the emergency lasts, the weaker the argument that ordinary lawmaking is simply too slow.

Duration is an independent democratic variable

The same power can have different democratic implications depending on how long it operates.

A thirty-day emergency transfer may bridge a crisis. The same transfer authority renewed for decades can become a stable substitute for appropriations choices.

A short military deployment can protect a federal function. A permanent domestic military presence would alter the civil order.

A temporary asset freeze can interrupt a threat. A sanctions regime lasting generations can become a standing foreign-policy institution.

Duration should therefore be tracked independently from legality at the moment of activation.

Lawful origin does not answer the question of democratic normalization.

The national energy emergency

President Trump also declared a national energy emergency on January 20, 2025.

The order described inadequate production, transportation, refining, generation, infrastructure, and critical-mineral capacity as an unusual and extraordinary threat to the economy, national security, and foreign policy.

It directed agencies to identify and use lawful emergency authorities and to consider tools including the Defense Production Act.

This declaration illustrates a contemporary expansion in emergency framing.

Energy reliability and industrial capacity are serious security questions. They are also long-term policy domains ordinarily governed through permitting, investment, regulation, markets, appropriations, and legislation.

The emergency label did not replace those systems. It became a way of accelerating and coordinating parts of them.

Layered authority is how emergency government actually works

In 2026, the administration issued presidential determinations under section 303 of the Defense Production Act for energy-related industrial capacity, including grid infrastructure and supply chains.

The legal architecture was layered.

The national energy emergency supplied context and findings. The Defense Production Act supplied particular investment authority. Agencies then had to implement projects through their own statutory, budgetary, contracting, and administrative systems.

There was no single emergency lever.

This layered structure is harder to describe than the phrase emergency powers. It is also much more accurate.

The Defense Production Act is broader than war

The Defense Production Act is often remembered through wartime or pandemic imagery, but its modern scope includes industrial-base authorities relevant to critical minerals, energy systems, medical supplies, and supply chains.

Congress deliberately defined national defense broadly enough to include preparedness and critical infrastructure concerns.

That breadth can make the statute useful before catastrophe occurs.

It also raises the familiar delegation question: how close must a favored industrial investment remain to the national-defense purposes Congress enacted?

Again, the answer should come from the statute and findings, not from the emotional force of the emergency label.

Emergency can mean accelerated procedure

Not every emergency power authorizes a dramatic new substantive act.

Some authorities change procedure. They can allow expedited approvals, prioritize agency review, waive or modify specified requirements, or activate special coordination mechanisms where Congress has authorized such treatment.

Acceleration can be the entire point.

If delay itself threatens lives, infrastructure, defense readiness, or public order, ordinary procedural time can be a cost.

But procedural friction also serves democratic functions: notice, environmental review, competition, consultation, public participation, and reason-giving.

A serious emergency analysis must identify exactly which friction was removed and why Congress allowed its removal.

The purse does not disappear

A President cannot normally create federal money by declaring an emergency.

Congress controls appropriations.

An emergency statute may authorize use, transfer, reprogramming, or redirection of funds under particular conditions. Military construction statutes, disaster laws, or other authorities may open specific accounts or transfer paths.

Those are statutory pathways through Congress's appropriations architecture, not exceptions to the existence of the purse power.

The difference becomes politically important when emergency action redirects funds after Congress has debated and funded the same subject differently.

The first Trump border-wall conflict remains the warning case

During President Trump's first term, the administration used emergency and other statutory authorities to redirect funds toward border-barrier construction after Congress appropriated less for the requested purpose than the President sought.

The dispute became constitutionally sensitive because emergency authority intersected with a recent and explicit congressional funding choice.

The deeper problem was not simply whether the border condition qualified as an emergency.

It was whether statutes Congress had already enacted authorized the executive to use other funds after the appropriations process produced an outcome the President disliked.

That conflict remains a useful model for understanding why emergency power becomes most controversial when it appears to reverse ordinary legislative bargaining.

Congress built much of the machinery it later condemns

Presidents deserve scrutiny for aggressive uses of emergency authority.

Congress also wrote the statutes.

Legislators often prefer broad delegations when they want rapid action and criticize the same breadth when another President uses it for a different policy.

That is not merely hypocrisy. Governing under uncertainty is difficult, and delegation trades precision for adaptability.

But a democratic account that blames only executive ambition misses half the institutional structure.

Congress can narrow a delegation, add a sunset, impose reporting, require affirmative renewal, restrict funding, or repeal the authority. Failure to do so can become a form of passive consent to presidential accumulation.

Termination is structurally harder than activation

The veto problem deserves special emphasis.

If a President can declare an emergency unilaterally under a statute and Congress can terminate it only through enacted legislation, the President participates in the mechanism designed to constrain the President.

That does not make termination impossible.

It makes institutional inertia favor continuation.

A Congress that wants to end an emergency may need two-thirds majorities after a veto even though no congressional supermajority was required to begin the emergency.

This asymmetry is one of the strongest arguments for reforming the National Emergencies Act toward affirmative congressional renewal after a defined period.

Courts do not review every emergency in the same way

Some statutes give presidents broad discretion over factual findings tied to foreign affairs or national security.

Others contain conditions that courts can evaluate more directly.

Still others produce cases where judges can avoid deciding whether the emergency exists at all and instead decide whether the challenged act falls within the delegated authority.

The tariff litigation is the cleanest current example of the third form.

The Guard litigation illustrates another: substantial deference can coexist with statutory review.

The phrase judicial review therefore does not identify one uniform level of scrutiny.

Narrow review can still be decisive

Courts can constrain emergency government without claiming superior knowledge of the crisis.

They can ask whether a statute authorizes tariffs. They can ask whether an agency followed required procedure. They can enforce constitutional rights. They can determine whether a spending transfer fits the account and statute Congress created. They can ask whether military action exceeds the mission legally authorized.

This kind of review is democratically important because it turns the argument away from who sounds more alarmed and toward legal provenance.

The President may be right that the danger is serious and wrong about the available tool.

The major-questions doctrine should not become a slogan either

Broad emergency actions invite arguments about major questions, nondelegation, constitutional avoidance, and separation of powers.

Those doctrines matter when courts actually use them.

They should not be inserted automatically into every controversy.

The methodological rule of this book remains the same: follow the holding.

In the 2026 tariff dispute, the Court's opinions differed in reasoning, but the governing result was source-specific — IEEPA did not supply tariff authority.

Judicial correction is strongest when its actual rule is described more narrowly than the surrounding political rhetoric.

Emergency power is bipartisan

Presidents of both parties have declared national emergencies, renewed inherited emergencies, used IEEPA sanctions, invoked disaster powers, relied on public-health statutes, and used other forms of accelerated authority.

That continuity matters because emergency government is a structural presidential resource, not a partisan invention.

The appropriate asymmetry question is narrower.

Which administration used which authority, how broadly, for how long, and how far did it push the statute beyond prior practice?

The second Trump administration is a valuable stress test precisely because emergency framing has appeared across several policy domains at once.

The mechanism would remain available to a future Democratic President unless law changes.

An emergency can be lawful and still be democratically troubling

Legal validity does not exhaust institutional judgment.

Congress may have clearly delegated a broad power. The President may satisfy the trigger. Courts may uphold the action.

The democracy can still ask whether Congress should have delegated so much, whether renewal should require affirmative legislative approval, whether the procedure excludes too much participation, or whether a chronic policy problem should return to ordinary legislation.

This is one of the central distinctions of the book.

Illegality, abuse of a norm, poor institutional design, and authoritarianism are not synonyms.

A lawful emergency regime can still create incentives that weaken ordinary democratic correction.

An emergency can also be unlawful without proving dictatorship

The reverse distinction matters just as much.

A President can exceed one statute and lose in court without the constitutional order having collapsed.

Learning Resources and the companion tariff case are valuable partly because they demonstrate correction occurring inside the system.

The President adopted a broad theory of statutory power. Private parties and states challenged it. Lower courts ruled. The Supreme Court interpreted the statute and closed the claimed pathway.

The result constrained the presidency prospectively.

That is not evidence that emergency power is harmless. It is evidence that legal overreach and democratic collapse are different categories.

Correction must survive the crisis

Emergency institutions are tested under conditions that make correction politically hardest.

Citizens fear delay. Legislators do not want responsibility for catastrophe. Courts hesitate to second-guess security judgments. Agencies are told to move quickly. Opposition can be described as sabotage.

Those pressures are precisely why provenance and review matter.

A correction mechanism that works only after the danger feels over is not enough.

The state needs procedures capable of operating while officials still insist that speed is essential.

The strongest defense of emergency government

The strongest defense is not that presidents know best.

It is that democracy has to survive events that outrun ordinary procedure.

Congress cannot foresee every attack, foreign financial threat, supply-chain break, disaster, cyber event, epidemic, or sudden security failure. A state that refuses to delegate any capacity for immediate response forces every crisis into ad hoc improvisation.

Preauthorized emergency tools can be more lawful than improvisation because Congress has already defined the available instruments.

Used carefully, emergency law is constitutional preparedness.

The strongest objection to emergency government

The strongest objection is not that every emergency is fake.

It is that the category can expand faster than the institutions designed to terminate it.

If persistent migration, trade deficits, energy capacity, sanctions targets, cyber threats, and other long-running problems all qualify as emergencies, presidents can increasingly choose emergency pathways for policies that Congress could debate through ordinary law.

The system then changes without a formal constitutional amendment.

Congress remains present, but the cost of collective legislative action rises relative to unilateral activation.

Temporary acceleration can become a standing method of presidential government.

The reciprocity test

The institutional test is easiest to apply by imagining the power in the hands of the next President.

If a conservative accepts an emergency delegation only when used for border enforcement or energy, the principle is incomplete. If a progressive accepts the same delegation only for climate, health, or sanctions policy, the principle is equally incomplete.

An emergency statute survives democratic scrutiny when the triggering standard, scope, review, and termination rules remain acceptable after partisan reversal.

The office outlives the emergency and the officeholder.

The act-evidence: can extraordinary power return to ordinary government?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is termination and correction.

Can Congress, courts, or a later President narrow or end an emergency authority without a constitutional rupture? Can a court uphold the existence of an emergency while rejecting an unauthorized act? Can Congress reclaim delegated authority? Can an agency return to ordinary procedure when the accelerated condition ends? Can the public identify which power remains active and why?

A democratic emergency system should be able to accelerate and decelerate.

The failure is not merely that government moves fast.

The failure is that the exceptional route has no credible path back.

Emergency as a method of government

Emergency power is one of the clearest places to see the central paradox of modern American democracy.

Citizens want government capable of acting before danger becomes catastrophe. They also want power constrained before urgency becomes an excuse.

The American system answers with delegation rather than suspension: Congress writes dormant authorities; presidents activate them; agencies implement them; Congress funds and can revise them; courts interpret their limits.

That architecture is neither inherently authoritarian nor inherently safe.

Its democratic quality depends on whether extraordinary authority remains legally sourced, factually revisitable, procedurally visible, temporally bounded, and institutionally reversible.

A President should be able to say that the nation cannot wait.

The constitutional system must still be able to answer: wait for what authority?

The next chapter turns from emergency acceleration to another power that sits unusually close to presidential personality: federal law enforcement and the danger that prosecution itself can become a political instrument.

Sources and notes

- National Emergencies Act, 50 U.S.C. §§ 1601-1651. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter34&edition=prelim>
- 50 U.S.C. § 1622 — termination and continuation of national emergencies. <https://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/50/1622>
- International Emergency Economic Powers Act, 50 U.S.C. §§ 1701-1708. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter35&edition=prelim>
- White House — Declaring a National Emergency at the Southern Border, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/declaring-a-national-emergency-at-the-southern-border-of-the-united-states/>
- White House — Declaring a National Energy Emergency, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/declaring-a-national-energy-emergency/>

- White House — Executive Order 14257, reciprocal tariff emergency, Apr. 2, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/04/regulating-imports-with-a-reciprocal-tariff-to-rectify-trade-practices-that-contribute-to-large-and-persistent-annual-united-states-goods-trade-deficits/>
- Supreme Court — *Learning Resources, Inc. v. Trump / Trump v. V.O.S. Selections*, Feb. 20, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-1287_4gcj.pdf
- Ninth Circuit — *Newsom v. Trump*, stay opinion, June 19, 2025. <https://cdn.ca9.uscourts.gov/datastore/opinions/2025/06/19/25-3727.pdf>
- 10 U.S.C. § 12406 — National Guard federal service. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?req=granuleid:USC-prelim-title10-section12406>
- Insurrection Act, 10 U.S.C. §§ 251-255. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title10/subtitleA/part1/chapter13&edition=prelim>
- Defense Production Act of 1950, 50 U.S.C. §§ 4501 et seq. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter55&edition=prelim>
- White House — DPA §303 determination on grid infrastructure and supply-chain capacity, Apr. 20, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/04/presidential-determination-pursuant-to-section-303-of-the-defense-production-act-of-1950-as-amended-on-grid-infrastructure-equipment-and-supply-chain-capacity/>
- *INS v. Chadha*, 462 U.S. 919 (1983). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/462/919/>
- Congressional Research Service — National Emergency Powers and related statutory frameworks (background reference). <https://crsreports.congress.gov/>

CHAPTER 16

THE PRESIDENT AND THE MACHINERY OF JUSTICE

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The President stands above the Department, but not above the record

The Department of Justice belongs to the executive branch. The Attorney General is nominated by the President. U.S. Attorneys exercise executive power. The FBI investigates under executive authority. Presidential elections therefore change the leadership, priorities, legal positions, and enforcement agenda of federal law enforcement.

That fact is easy to state and difficult to govern.

The same executive machinery may investigate a President's political opponents, the President's allies, officials from a prior administration, campaign operatives, donors, protesters, elected officials, and sometimes the President himself.

A system that insulated every politically connected person from investigation would create elite immunity. A system in which the President could convert federal investigators and prosecutors into personal instruments would destroy equal law in another direction.

The democratic problem is not how to remove politics from the executive branch. It is how to keep individual criminal decisions answerable to evidence and law when political power is never far away.

DOJ independence is not constitutional separation

American political language often speaks of an independent Justice Department.

That phrase can mislead if it is taken literally. The Constitution did not create DOJ as a fourth branch. The Attorney General serves inside the executive branch. Federal prosecutors do not possess a separate democratic mandate.

Modern independence is narrower. It is a professional and procedural norm designed to keep case-specific criminal and civil law-enforcement decisions from inappropriate partisan or personal pressure.

Presidents can legitimately change enforcement priorities. They can choose Attorneys General who interpret statutes differently, emphasize different crimes, reorganize resources, and reverse discretionary policies within law.

The difficult line appears when general policy becomes a demand about a person.

The current Justice Manual still draws that line

As of August 2026, the Justice Manual still publishes the 2021 Garland memorandum governing communications between the White House and DOJ about pending or contemplated law-enforcement matters.

The rule is explicit about its purpose: preserve the President's Take Care responsibility while protecting Departmental decisions from partisan or other inappropriate influence.

Initial communications about individual pending or contemplated matters are channeled through a small group of senior officials. U.S. Attorneys, investigative-agency heads, and their subordinates retain primary responsibility for initiating and supervising investigations and cases.

This is important counterevidence to any claim that Trump II formally erased every DOJ-White House barrier.

A written rule, however, is only one kind of evidence.

Policy on paper and practice in government are different things

A communication policy can remain published while actual influence travels through public speeches, personnel decisions, informal channels, supervisory review, reassignment, case reopening, or changes in charging policy.

The reverse is also true. A President may publicly denounce an opponent and demand investigation without proving that prosecutors carried out an improper order.

Democratic analysis therefore has to reconstruct the chain.

Who initiated the inquiry? What evidence existed? Which official approved the next step? Did a grand jury act? Did a court sustain the charge? Did leadership reverse a career recommendation? Was a case dismissed because evidence failed, policy changed, immunity applied, or clemency intervened?

The machinery of justice is legible only when those stages remain separate.

Prosecutorial discretion is unavoidable

The federal government cannot prosecute every provable violation of federal criminal law.

Prosecutors choose where to spend investigative resources, whether to charge, what charges to bring, whether to negotiate a plea, whether to dismiss, and what sentencing position to take.

Discretion is not a corruption of prosecution. It is prosecution.

The Justice Manual's Principles of Federal Prosecution attempt to discipline that discretion through public criteria: probable cause, admissible evidence likely to obtain and sustain a conviction, substantial federal interests, alternatives to prosecution, and individualized judgment.

Those principles are not a mechanical algorithm. They are a standard against which selective treatment can be examined.

Political identity is an impermissible selection criterion

The current Justice Manual states that a person's political association, activities, or beliefs may not influence an investigative or charging decision.

It also forbids prosecutors and agents from timing investigative steps or charging decisions for the purpose of affecting an election or advantaging or disadvantaging a candidate or party.

This is one of the clearest democratic standards available in the entire book.

A political figure can be investigated. Political consequences can be foreseeable. A prosecution can alter an election and still be legitimate.

The prohibited step is different: political identity cannot become the reason the government selects the person for unequal legal treatment.

A politically sensitive prosecution can be legitimate

American democracy would be weaker if the law created a practical sanctuary around politically important people.

A former President can commit an ordinary crime. So can a candidate, donor, activist, attorney, Cabinet official, FBI agent, prosecutor, mayor, or member of Congress.

The fact that prosecution will be described as political does not make it political in the analytical sense.

The correct questions are ordinary and demanding: what law, what evidence, what comparable cases, what charging standard, what procedure, what defense, what judicial review?

The more politically explosive the case, the more important ordinary legal categories become.

Selective prosecution requires more than suspicion

The constitutional doctrine of selective prosecution is deliberately difficult to establish.

United States v. Armstrong requires evidence of discriminatory effect and discriminatory purpose, including a showing that similarly situated people were treated differently.

That legal standard does not settle every democratic concern. Internal prosecutorial unfairness may exist without satisfying a constitutional claim.

But the structure is useful. Disparity alone is not enough. Political anger is not enough. A defendant's partisan identity is not enough.

Evidence of differential treatment has to be connected to an impermissible reason.

Weaponization is an allegation that must be unpacked

The word weaponization compresses several different claims into one accusation.

It can mean selective prosecution. Vindictive charging. Improper surveillance. White House intervention. Retaliation against investigators. Politically timed investigative steps. Unequal plea policy. Unequal clemency. Or simply an enforcement decision the speaker considers unjust.

The term is rhetorically powerful because it avoids choosing among those mechanisms.

The analysis should do the opposite.

Every allegation of weaponization should be translated into a claim that can be tested against a record.

The new administration made retrospective review official policy

On January 20, 2025, President Trump signed the executive order Ending the Weaponization of the Federal Government.

The order accused the prior administration of using federal law-enforcement and intelligence authorities for political purposes and instructed the Attorney General and other officials to review federal enforcement activity from the preceding four years.

That order proves an institutional fact: retrospective review of prior enforcement became official presidential policy.

It does not independently prove the truth of every accusation contained in the order.

The difference between an executive finding, an internal investigation, and a judicial finding must remain visible.

The Weaponization Working Group moved the review inside DOJ

Attorney General Pamela Bondi created a Weaponization Working Group in February 2025 to examine prior prosecutions, investigations, and enforcement activities.

The initiative included matters associated with Special Counsel Jack Smith, the Mar-a-Lago search, January 6 cases, and other politically salient subjects.

There is nothing inherently illegitimate about an incoming Justice Department auditing the conduct of its predecessor.

Administrations routinely reverse legal positions and enforcement priorities.

The democratic danger appears when an audit of prior error becomes a system for punishing officials or targets identified with the prior coalition without standards that would survive partisan reversal.

The FACE Act report is a completed test case

On April 14, 2026, DOJ published a Weaponization Working Group report on Biden-era enforcement of the Freedom of Access to Clinic Entrances Act.

The Department said it had reviewed more than 700,000 internal records and concluded that the prior administration had used the FACE Act selectively and improperly against anti-abortion activists.

The report identified corrective actions and announced a more restrictive future policy for abortion-related FACE Act prosecutions.

The document is substantial evidence of what the current DOJ investigated and concluded. It includes underlying exhibits and a stated methodology.

It is still an internal executive-branch investigation, not an independent judicial adjudication establishing every conclusion.

Retrospective correction is not inherently retaliation

An administration can inherit an enforcement policy it considers legally mistaken, discriminatory, too harsh, too lenient, or inconsistent with public priorities.

Changing that policy is part of democratic alternation.

Reviewing past cases can also be legitimate when credible evidence suggests misconduct.

The line is not between review and nonreview.

The line is whether review follows evidentiary and procedural standards that would remain acceptable if the parties were reversed.

The cycle-of-reprisal problem

A dangerous equilibrium becomes possible if every administration characterizes sensitive cases brought by its predecessor as corrupt weaponization and then investigates the prosecutors, investigators, and targets associated with those cases.

Correction can then become retaliation, which becomes the justification for the next correction.

No constitutional amendment is required for this cycle.

It can emerge through ordinary executive powers: appointments, reassignment, internal investigation, charging discretion, public accusations, declassification, dismissal, and pardon.

The democratic safeguard is not amnesia. It is a threshold for reopening cases that rests on evidence rather than faction.

Investigation, charge, indictment, conviction, dismissal

Political debate often treats these words as interchangeable. They are not.

The FBI can investigate without charges being filed. A prosecutor can seek an indictment, but an indictment is an accusation, not a finding of guilt. A defendant can plead guilty. A jury can convict. A judge can dismiss. An appellate court can reverse. A President can pardon.

Every stage carries a different evidentiary and institutional status.

A chapter about politicized justice becomes unreliable the moment it describes an accusation as a conviction or a pardon as an acquittal.

Precision is not caution for its own sake. It is how legal process remains visible.

The Rosen-Donoghue refusal is a model of internal constraint

In late 2020, Acting Attorney General Jeffrey Rosen and Deputy Attorney General Richard Donoghue refused to have DOJ endorse election-fraud claims that Department investigations did not support.

Their objection was narrower than a claim of bureaucratic sovereignty. They did not deny presidential authority to set lawful policy. They refused to make a factual assertion the Department's record did not support.

That is the relevant test for prosecutorial independence: can an official inside a politically controlled executive chain say that the evidence does not support the requested claim or that the law does not support the requested action, and preserve the record explaining why?

Chapter 19 will place that refusal inside the larger 2020 transfer crisis. Here it matters only as an example of role-based factual constraint inside the machinery of justice.

Personnel changes the price of saying no

Presidents possess substantial authority over senior DOJ leadership.

Chapter 14 showed how appointments, acting service, noncareer personnel, and removal rules shape executive control.

In the Justice Department, those personnel tools interact directly with politically sensitive cases.

A prosecutor who believes an order is unsupported may still be formally free to object while knowing that reassignment, dismissal, investigation, or public attack could follow.

Independence therefore depends partly on whether professional disagreement carries a survivable institutional cost.

Public presidential demands create pressure even without secret instructions

A President can name an adversary publicly, demand investigation, accuse officials of criminality, or call for prosecution.

Such speech is not itself a charging decision.

Nor does it prove that prosecutors obeyed improperly.

But public demands matter because they are part of the observable environment in which politically appointed leadership and career officials make decisions.

The strongest evidence comes when rhetoric, personnel action, case intervention, and legal outcome can be connected rather than merely juxtaposed.

Special counsels create distance inside the executive

DOJ's special-counsel regulations are an institutional attempt to manage conflicts of interest and public trust.

The Attorney General can appoint a lawyer to conduct a sensitive investigation with a degree of day-to-day independence from ordinary Department leadership.

The Special Counsel is not a constitutionally separate prosecutor.

The Attorney General retains defined supervisory authority and can require explanation of significant steps.

The mechanism creates distance through procedure and reporting, not complete independence.

Jack Smith's final report is a prosecutorial record, not a verdict

Special Counsel Jack Smith's January 2025 Volume One report explains the election-interference investigation, evidence developed by the office, charging theory, defenses considered, and the office's reasons for believing prosecution served federal interests.

The report belongs in the factual record.

But the federal election case did not reach a criminal trial.

That means the report cannot be converted into a judicial finding that the charged conduct was proved beyond a reasonable doubt.

A prosecutor can believe strongly in a case and still remain only one party to a process that never reached verdict.

The case ended because presidential status changed

After Trump won the 2024 election, Smith moved to dismiss the federal election case in light of DOJ's longstanding Office of Legal Counsel position that a sitting President may not be criminally prosecuted.

The dismissal changed the institutional route to accountability without producing a trial on the factual merits.

This is a recurring theme in presidential justice.

Legal status can determine whether a case may proceed even when the underlying factual dispute remains unresolved.

Criminal immunity is a different institution

Trump v. United States, decided in 2024, addressed criminal immunity for former Presidents.

The Supreme Court held that a former President has absolute immunity for conduct within the President's conclusive and preclusive constitutional authority, at least presumptive immunity for official acts, and no presidential immunity for unofficial acts.

That doctrine is not prosecutorial discretion. It is not clemency. It is not a factual determination that conduct did or did not occur.

It is a constitutional rule about what criminal prosecution may reach.

Immunity is about classification

The central question after Trump v. United States is often whether particular conduct was official or unofficial and whether prosecution of official conduct would impermissibly intrude on executive authority.

The Court did not hold that everything a President does is immune.

Nor did it preserve the pre-2024 assumption that ordinary criminal law can always be applied to official presidential acts in the same way it applies to private conduct.

The doctrine creates a boundary that lower courts must apply act by act.

The strongest defense of immunity

Presidents make decisions that generate enemies.

If a successor administration could criminally prosecute lawful uses of presidential authority simply by selecting a broad criminal statute and a hostile theory, future Presidents could govern under threat of personal prosecution.

Immunity can therefore protect the independence of the presidency itself.

The structural defense is not that Presidents deserve personal privilege. It is that executive decision-making should not become hostage to criminal retaliation by successors.

The strongest objection to immunity

Broad immunity can also remove criminal-law consequences from conduct that would plainly expose an ordinary citizen to prosecution.

If official classification becomes too expansive, accountability can shrink precisely where presidential power is greatest.

The democratic tension is therefore real: protect the office from retaliatory prosecution without creating a zone in which official power becomes practically unanswerable to criminal law.

The doctrine cannot be evaluated by slogan. Its consequences emerge through the acts it excludes from prosecution.

Clemency is a different constitutional power again

Article II gives the President authority to grant reprieves and pardons for federal offenses, except in cases of impeachment.

The power is extraordinarily broad.

It does not require a criminal trial to have occurred. A pardon can be granted before charge, during prosecution, or after conviction.

It does not cover state crimes and does not nullify impeachment.

Clemency is not a conclusion about guilt. It is a presidential decision about federal punishment and legal consequences.

The Pardon Attorney provides procedure without constitutional monopoly

DOJ's Office of the Pardon Attorney receives applications, investigates petitions, develops recommendations, and provides professional advice through Department channels.

That process can create consistency, institutional memory, and comparative judgment.

The President is not constitutionally required to use it.

This creates the same tension seen elsewhere in the executive branch: professional procedure can structure judgment without displacing final presidential authority.

January 20, 2025 changed the legal status of the January 6 cases

On his first day back in office, President Trump commuted to time served the sentences of fourteen named January 6 defendants and granted full, complete, and unconditional pardons to all other individuals convicted of offenses related to events at or near the Capitol that day.

The proclamation also directed the Attorney General to seek dismissal with prejudice of pending covered indictments.

The legal effect was immediate and broad.

The political meaning remains contested.

A pardon does not erase the judicial record

The January 6 pardons did not transform guilty pleas, jury verdicts, sentencing records, video evidence, or factual findings into judicial declarations that the prosecutions were mistaken.

The President described the prosecutions as a grave national injustice. That is the President's stated justification.

A pardon can be granted precisely because a President believes a prosecution was unjust.

But the legal act of pardon and the historical judgment about the underlying case are separate things.

Mass clemency is not inherently illegitimate

American history contains group and categorical clemency.

President Biden used categorical pardons for certain federal marijuana-possession offenses. Earlier Presidents used clemency after rebellion, war, draft resistance, and other politically charged episodes.

The fact that a pardon applies to many people does not by itself establish abuse.

The relevant questions concern who benefits, what conduct is covered, what purpose is asserted, what public interest is served, and how closely the beneficiaries are linked to the President's political fortunes.

Clemency can alter future incentives

The pardon power is designed as a corrective valve, but expectations matter.

If political allies come to believe that federal punishment incurred while advancing a President's interests will later be erased, the expected cost of unlawful conduct can fall.

This is an institutional incentive claim, not a claim about the subjective motive of every January 6 defendant.

No inference should be made that participants acted because they expected pardons unless evidence shows it.

The democratic concern is prospective: what behavior does a pattern of predictable clemency encourage?

The November 2025 elector proclamation extended the logic

On November 7, 2025, President Trump issued Proclamation 10989 granting broad federal pardons for conduct relating to alternate or proposed presidential elector slates and related efforts concerning the 2020 presidential election.

The proclamation included named and categorical beneficiaries and expressly excluded President Trump himself.

Again, the pardon power could remove federal criminal exposure within its constitutional scope.

It could not erase state prosecutions or turn disputed historical claims into judicial findings.

The proclamation makes clemency part of the institutional aftermath of the 2020 election controversy, not merely a post-conviction mercy mechanism.

State criminal law remains outside presidential clemency

The President's pardon power reaches offenses against the United States.

It does not pardon violations of state criminal law.

This federalism boundary matters when the same general course of conduct gives rise to federal and state investigations or charges.

A federal pardon can end one track while leaving another intact.

Presidential clemency is broad, but it is not national criminal amnesty across sovereign systems.

Ordinary clemency continues beside political clemency

The Trump II clemency system is not composed only of high-profile political pardons.

DOJ records also show an ordinary administrative stream of pardons, commutations, petitions, and denials across many categories of federal offenses.

This matters because examples of famous political beneficiaries cannot by themselves establish how the entire clemency system operates.

A serious favoritism claim requires comparative evidence.

The correct favoritism question is comparative

For any clemency claim, the relevant record should include the offense, sentence, procedural stage, route through the Pardon Attorney if known, documented political

or financial relationship, public advocacy, official explanation, restitution effects, and comparable applicants.

A President is allowed to make exceptional mercy decisions.

The democratic concern is whether exceptions track political usefulness more reliably than justice.

Prosecution and pardon are structurally asymmetric

A prosecutor must investigate, establish probable cause, present an indictment where required, litigate admissibility and law, and prove guilt beyond a reasonable doubt unless the defendant pleads.

A President can later remove or reduce federal punishment through a unilateral act.

That asymmetry is intentional.

The Constitution created clemency as a capacity to correct, forgive, reconcile, or mitigate outcomes the ordinary machinery produced.

The same asymmetry makes presidential clemency capable of neutralizing years of institutional process without proving that any judge, jury, or prosecutor was legally wrong.

A pardon is not an acquittal

Political language often describes pardoned defendants as exonerated.

That can be normatively or rhetorically asserted, but it should not be confused with procedural status.

Acquittal is a judicial result. Reversal is an appellate result. Dismissal is a termination of charges. Commutation reduces punishment. Pardon grants clemency.

The distinctions are not pedantry. They preserve the institutional sequence.

The machinery is most vulnerable when both ends align

The largest democratic risk appears when prosecution and clemency point in the same partisan direction.

If adversaries receive exceptional investigative attention while allies receive exceptional declination, dismissal, or pardon, the two powers can reinforce each other.

Neither action alone proves selective justice.

A pattern requires case comparison.

But the institutional architecture makes the combination possible: the executive influences prosecution policy and also possesses the constitutional power to erase federal punishment.

The strongest defense of presidential control

DOJ cannot be allowed to become an autonomous prosecutorial government.

Presidents are elected, and law-enforcement policy involves legitimate judgments about public safety, federal interests, sentencing, resource allocation, civil rights, corruption, immigration, national security, and many other priorities.

An administration must be able to change those priorities.

Senior DOJ officials also need authority to correct misconduct by subordinate prosecutors and agents.

Independence without accountability can become prosecutorial government without democratic control.

The strongest objection to personal control

Criminal investigation is one of the most coercive powers a government possesses.

It can search homes, seize property, compel witnesses, obtain warrants, expose private information, impose enormous legal costs, and deprive people of liberty.

If those powers are used according to personal loyalty or partisan hostility, elections cease to be fair contests among citizens subject to the same law.

The President's constitutional place inside the executive therefore strengthens the case for procedural barriers around individual cases rather than weakening it.

The reciprocity test

The easiest way to identify a genuine principle is to reverse the President and defendant.

Would the same evidentiary threshold be acceptable if the accused were from the other party? Would the same dismissal be acceptable for a political opponent? Would the same pardon be defended if it protected people who had acted to keep a rival President in power? Would the same internal review seem legitimate if conducted by the next administration against today's prosecutors?

Justice becomes democratic when the standard survives the identity swap.

The act-evidence: do like standards survive political identity?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is simple to state and difficult to satisfy.

Do comparable evidentiary, charging, procedural, and review standards survive when the investigated, prosecuted, dismissed, or pardoned person is politically allied with the President?

This does not require identical outcomes. Cases differ.

It requires reasons for the difference that can be stated in legal and evidentiary terms rather than in factional identity.

The President and the machinery of justice

The machinery of federal justice is neither independent of the presidency nor legitimately personal to the President.

That tension is permanent.

Elections should change law-enforcement policy. They should not decide whether evidence is true. Presidents should appoint Attorneys General. They should not be able to convert unsupported accusations into prosecutorial facts by desire alone. Prosecutors should exercise professional judgment. They should not become an unaccountable political caste. Clemency should remain broad enough to correct injustice. It should not become an understood insurance policy for political service.

The democratic achievement is not a Justice Department without politics.

It is a Justice Department in which political control operates through policies and accountable leadership while individual coercive decisions remain traceable to evidence, law, procedure, and review.

With this chapter, Part IV closes. The book now turns from executive machinery to Donald Trump as a stress test: not the source of every weakness in the system, but a political actor unusually willing to use the pathways the system already contains.

Sources and notes

- U.S. Department of Justice — Justice Manual § 1-8.600, Communications with the White House. <https://www.justice.gov/jm/jm-1-8000-congressional-relations>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Justice Manual § 9-27, Principles of Federal Prosecution. <https://www.justice.gov/jm/jm-9-27000-principles-federal-prosecution>
- White House — Executive Order, Ending the Weaponization of the Federal Government, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/ending-the-weaponization-of-the-federal-government/>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Weaponization Working Group FACE Act report and press release, Apr. 14, 2026. <https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/justice-department-reveals-biden-administrations-weaponization-federal-law-against-pro-life>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Special Counsel Jack Smith archive and Final Report, Volume One, Jan. 2025. <https://www.justice.gov/archives/sco-smith>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. United States, 603 U.S. 593 (2024). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/23-939_c2pg.pdf
- White House — January 6 Pardons and Commutations Proclamation, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/granting-pardons-and-commutation-of-sentences-for-certain-offenses-relating-to-the-events-at-or-near-the-united-states-capitol-on-january-6-2021/>
- GovInfo / Federal Register — Proclamation 10989, Granting Pardons for Certain Offenses Related to the 2020 Presidential Election, Nov. 7, 2025. <https://www.govinfo.gov/app/details/DCPD-202501105>
- U.S. Department of Justice — Office of the Pardon Attorney. <https://www.justice.gov/pardon>
- U.S. Constitution — Article II, Section 2, pardon power. <https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/article-2/>
- 28 C.F.R. Part 600 — Special Counsel regulations. <https://www.ecfr.gov/current/title-28/chapter-VI/part-600>
- United States v. Armstrong, 517 U.S. 456 (1996). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/boundvolumes/517bv.pdf>

PART V

TRUMP AS A STRESS TEST

CHAPTER 17

2016: WINNING THROUGH THE SYSTEM AGAINST THE SYSTEM

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The anti-establishment candidate was carried by institutions

On the morning after the 2016 election, Donald Trump had accomplished something that much of the political class had spent eighteen months saying was unlikely, unserious, or impossible.

He had not stormed an institution. He had passed through a sequence of them.

Republican voters had placed his name above governors, senators, former governors, and candidates with deeper party networks. State contests had converted those votes into delegates. The Republican National Convention had converted the delegates into a nomination. Fifty state elections and the District of Columbia had converted ballots into electoral slates. The Electoral College had converted those state results into the presidency.

The candidate who defined himself against establishments, experts, media gatekeepers, party professionals, and political conventions reached the White House through rules those institutions had built long before he arrived.

That is the paradox of 2016. Trump did not first test American democracy by wielding presidential power. He tested it by discovering what its existing forms would permit a sufficiently unusual candidate to do.

The stress test began before executive power

It is tempting to read 2016 backward from everything that followed.

The first impeachment, January 6, presidential immunity, Schedule F, Project 2025, Schedule Policy/Career, emergency declarations, fights over the Justice Department, and the more systematic second administration can make the original campaign look like the opening chapter of a plan already fully formed.

That would flatten the history.

The Trump who entered the 2016 race had never held public office. His campaign had a political method and a set of substantive commitments, but it did not yet possess the administrative map developed after years of governing, litigation, personnel conflict, conservative transition planning, and institutional learning.

The first question is therefore narrower. What did the system reveal about itself before Trump had the power to alter it?

Trump entered a party system already under strain

Polarization did not begin at Trump Tower in June 2015.

Congressional polarization had been increasing for decades. Ideological overlap between the parties had narrowed. Primary electorates and safe seats had already changed the incentives facing elected officials. Conservative media, Tea Party activism, immigration conflict, distrust of Republican leaders, and anger at compromise all predated Trump's candidacy.

This matters because leader-centered explanations are seductive. They give a complex transformation a date and a face.

But Trump did not manufacture every demand that later attached itself to him. He entered a Republican electorate in which significant constituencies already distrusted party elites, wanted a harder line on immigration, were skeptical of free-trade orthodoxy, resented cultural institutions, and doubted that conventional Republican leaders were willing or able to fight effectively.

He supplied a vehicle. The demand did not begin with the vehicle.

The nomination system had already moved power away from party professionals

The modern presidential primary system is far more open to voters than the party-dominated nomination systems of an earlier era.

Party professionals still matter. They recruit candidates, endorse, raise money, build field networks, supply staff, signal competence, influence debates, and help determine which candidacies look viable during the invisible primary.

But their power is informal and contingent.

Once voters begin allocating delegates through primaries and caucuses, elite preference must either align with the electorate or find a lawful mechanism inside party rules to defeat it.

In 2016, Republican gatekeepers discovered that influence was not sovereignty.

The invisible primary failed to produce a veto

Before voting begins, presidential candidates compete for endorsements, donors, experienced staff, media legitimacy, and signs of party acceptance.

That process is sometimes called the invisible primary because it can narrow the field before ordinary voters ever cast ballots.

Trump entered with advantages that did not look like the normal ones. He had extraordinary name recognition, personal wealth, television experience, an existing brand, and a willingness to generate attention without waiting for party permission.

What he lacked in conventional political endorsement he could partly replace with visibility.

The invisible primary therefore did not disappear. It failed to exclude him.

A crowded field changed the arithmetic

The Republican field was unusually large.

Governors and senators who might have represented separate ideological or regional alternatives remained in the contest at the same time. Anti-Trump voters were not initially one bloc choosing one opponent. They were divided among several plausible candidates.

That fragmentation mattered because presidential nominations are sequential. A candidate does not need majority support from the entire party electorate on day one. Repeated pluralities can create delegates, momentum, attention, fundraising, and the expectation of inevitability.

This should not be turned into a monocausal explanation. Trump still had to win votes. Rivals still had opportunities to consolidate. Candidate performance, voter demand, media attention, and state rules all mattered.

But the institutional point is clear: fragmented opposition can allow a plurality to become a path to control before a majority coalition fully forms.

Plurality can become momentum

Presidential primaries are not a national referendum conducted once.

They are a calendar of state contests with different thresholds, delegate rules, timing, and strategic value.

A candidate who wins repeatedly becomes more than the sum of those vote shares. Each victory changes the next contest because voters, donors, journalists, activists, and rivals update their beliefs about who can win.

The primary system therefore aggregates not only preferences but expectations.

Trump's early and repeated successes transformed the question from whether he could survive into whether anyone could stop him.

The Republican Party was not one actor

It is common to say that the Republican Party chose Trump.

That sentence becomes accurate only after deciding what the word party means.

Republican primary voters chose him. Many Republican officeholders did not initially want him. Major donors were divided. Conservative intellectuals and commentators split. Campaign professionals worked for rival candidates. Party rules nevertheless converted the primary electorate's choices into delegates and then into the nomination.

The 2016 contest therefore exposed an important democratic distinction: the party electorate can control a party even when many of the people professionally identified with that party would choose differently.

The democratic defense: voters overruled the gatekeepers

There is a strong democratic defense of what happened.

Political parties can become insulated institutions. Donors, consultants, officeholders, and professional networks can mistake their own preferences for the electorate's. They can screen out candidates who threaten established bargains even when a large constituency wants those bargains challenged.

An open primary system gives voters a way to correct that.

On this view, Trump's nomination was evidence of permeability. A major party remained open enough for an insurgent to defeat candidates with deeper political résumés and stronger establishment relationships.

If democracy means anything, elite disbelief cannot by itself be a valid reason to invalidate popular selection.

The democratic objection: parties also perform peer review

There is also a serious objection.

Parties do more than frustrate voters. They recruit, vet, coordinate, and test people who may soon command enormous public power.

Experience in office is not proof of wisdom, but it exposes candidates to information, coalition bargaining, legal constraints, legislative defeat, bureaucratic complexity, and the practical consequences of governing.

When party gatekeeping becomes too weak, a candidate can acquire a major-party nomination without passing through much of that professional peer review.

The problem is not that experts should possess a veto over voters. It is that democratic openness and governing competence are different goods, and a nomination system has to mediate between them.

Celebrity was political capital before a vote was cast

Trump was an outsider to elective office but not an unknown citizen.

He entered politics with decades of public visibility, a luxury brand, tabloid familiarity, business celebrity, and years as the central figure of a national television program.

That mattered because obscurity is one of the first barriers every outsider confronts.

Most candidates need money and institutional support merely to become recognizable. Trump began with a public persona already formed in the minds of millions of Americans.

Celebrity did not tell voters how to vote. It lowered the cost of getting their attention.

Attention became campaign infrastructure

Traditional campaigns buy advertising, schedule events, build organizations, and seek endorsements in order to create visibility.

Trump discovered that controversy itself could generate enormous quantities of visibility.

He was willing to call television programs, give repeated interviews, attack rivals by name, break rhetorical conventions, and produce statements that journalists considered impossible to ignore.

The result was not simply “free media” in the casual sense. It was an alternative campaign resource: the ability to turn newsworthiness into recurring public presence.

Attention became a form of political capacity.

The press amplified before it condemned

Harvard's Shorenstein Center found that Trump received unusually high levels of coverage during 2015 relative to his initial position in the polls.

In the eight outlets examined by the study, his coverage rose before his polling dominance was fully established. The researchers estimated roughly \$55 million in ad-equivalent value from positive and neutral coverage in those outlets alone during 2015.

The exact dollar figure is method-dependent and should not be mistaken for cash transferred to a campaign.

The more important finding is directional: major news institutions treated Trump as unusually newsworthy before ordinary measures of political strength would have required them to do so.

Journalistic selection supplied visibility that party gatekeepers could not withdraw.

Hostile coverage can still be useful coverage

The phrase "the media helped Trump" is too crude.

During the invisible primary, Shorenstein found much of Trump's coverage favorable or neutral because horserace narratives emphasized his rise. Later, and especially in the general election, coverage became overwhelmingly negative.

These facts are compatible.

A news organization can judge a candidate harshly while simultaneously making that candidate the center of political attention. A television segment can criticize a statement and replay it repeatedly. A newspaper can condemn a candidate and still devote front-page space to him day after day.

Evaluation and amplification are different powers.

Horserace journalism turned momentum into news

Campaign reporting naturally asks who is winning.

That question is not trivial. Voters need to know which candidates remain viable, delegates depend on results, and campaigns are contests.

But when coverage is organized heavily around momentum, a candidate who is gaining becomes a positive news story before the journalist has decided whether the candidate would govern well.

The candidate rises, the rise becomes news, the news increases visibility, and the increased visibility can reinforce perceived viability.

It would be too strong to claim a closed causal loop in which media created electoral support by itself. The documented mechanism is more modest: reporting incentives can magnify political momentum.

The press did not invent the constituency

The strongest critique of media amplification can itself become a form of elite condescension if it implies that voters merely consumed whatever journalists placed before them.

Trump's support persisted after coverage became deeply negative. He won primaries after rivals attacked him, after editorial boards opposed him, and after controversies that conventional campaign logic predicted would destroy his candidacy.

Attention gave voters an opportunity to evaluate him. It did not predetermine their judgment.

The press helped make the candidate visible. The electorate still supplied the votes.

Policy existed beneath the spectacle

The 2016 campaign was theatrical, but it was not policy-free.

Trump offered a recognizable program: stricter immigration enforcement, a border wall, trade protectionism, tax cuts, deregulation, repeal of the Affordable Care Act, conservative judicial appointments, skepticism toward parts of the post-Cold War foreign-policy consensus, and an "America First" orientation.

Voters could support the performance, the policy, the party label, opposition to Clinton, the promised judicial appointments, or several at once.

Treating the campaign as pure spectacle would obscure the substantive commitments that later became governing priorities.

The Supreme Court vacancy gave institutional stakes to an unconventional candidacy

Justice Antonin Scalia's death in February 2016 turned the Supreme Court into an immediate electoral issue.

Trump released lists of prospective nominees drawn from the conservative legal movement.

That decision supplied a concrete assurance to voters who might have doubted his ideological reliability or governing experience.

A voter could distrust Trump's style and still rationally conclude that the presidency would determine the future composition of the Court.

The outsider campaign therefore learned to borrow credibility from an established institutional network.

Anti-establishment politics worked because it captured an establishment node

Trump did not build a third party capable of overcoming the American two-party system.

He captured one of the two institutions already capable of winning the presidency.

That distinction is fundamental.

An anti-system movement that remains outside the major parties faces ballot rules, strategic voting, donor scarcity, and the Electoral College. An insurgency that wins a major-party nomination inherits a national ballot line, partisan loyalty, organizational infrastructure, congressional allies, and a plausible route to 270 electoral votes.

The most effective way to challenge the American party system in 2016 was to take control of one of its parties.

Personalization changed what party loyalty meant

Once Trump became the Republican nominee, voters and politicians faced a choice that no longer mapped neatly onto prior Republican hierarchies.

Support for the party increasingly required a judgment about the individual who had taken control of its presidential nomination.

Trump's rallies, personal brand, direct communication, and confrontational identity made the candidate himself a political institution for many supporters.

This did not erase Republican ideology. Tax policy, judges, abortion, guns, regulation, immigration, and party control all remained important.

But the relationship between candidate and party became more personalized than ordinary ideological alignment alone can explain.

Winning changed the bargaining power inside the party

Before Election Day, Republican politicians could imagine that Trump was an aberration the general election might resolve.

After Election Day, he possessed the presidency and a demonstrated electoral coalition.

That altered every internal calculation.

A Republican official criticizing Trump was no longer opposing an insurgent candidate who might disappear. The official was challenging the party's victorious President and risking conflict with voters who had just proved their ability to decide Republican nominations and general elections.

Victory converts political style into leverage.

The general election was not a national popular vote

The United States did not choose its President in 2016 by adding every ballot into one national total and awarding the office to the candidate with the most votes.

It conducted state elections that selected presidential electors.

That legal distinction produced the most important numerical paradox of the election.

Hillary Clinton received 65,853,514 popular votes nationwide, 48.18 percent of the total. Donald Trump received 62,984,828, or 46.09 percent. Other candidates together received 7,830,934 votes.

Clinton therefore led the national popular vote by 2,868,686 votes. Trump nevertheless won the presidency.

The Electoral College result was constitutionally ordinary

The National Archives records the official electoral vote as 304 for Trump and 227 for Clinton, with several electors voting for other candidates.

That result did not arise from a counting malfunction.

It arose from the constitutional architecture and state allocation rules under which both campaigns had operated.

The accurate formulation is neither “Trump won the popular vote” nor “Trump stole an election he lost.”

He lawfully won the presidency through the Electoral College while losing the national popular-vote plurality.

Winner-take-all converted narrow victories into whole blocs

Most states awarded all of their electors to the statewide winner.

That means margin and electoral reward are only loosely connected. Winning a state by one percentage point can produce the same electoral votes as winning it by twenty. Losing by one point normally produces none.

Large Clinton margins in heavily Democratic states increased her national vote total without creating additional electoral votes beyond those states’ fixed allocations.

Narrow Trump margins in several pivotal states produced complete electoral blocs.

The system rewarded geographic placement, not merely aggregate quantity.

Three states show the mechanism in miniature

Michigan, Pennsylvania, and Wisconsin are the clearest mechanical examples.

According to the Federal Election Commission’s official compilation, Trump won Michigan by 10,704 votes, Pennsylvania by 44,292, and Wisconsin by 22,748.

Together, the margins in those three states totaled 77,744 votes.

That number should not be turned into the false statement that 77,744 people nationally “decided” the election in a simple counterfactual sense. Campaign strategy, turnout, and voter behavior would change under different rules.

It does show how a small number of votes, efficiently located in decisive winner-take-all states, can have far greater institutional consequences than a much larger national popular-vote margin.

The popular vote remains democratically meaningful

Because the Electoral College is legally decisive, some defenders of the system dismiss the national popular vote as irrelevant.

That goes too far.

The national tally is evidence about nationwide voter preference. It tells us that more individual voters selected Clinton than Trump.

What it does not tell us is who would have won a campaign conducted under a direct national popular-vote rule. Candidates would have allocated visits, advertising, field operations, and turnout efforts differently if every additional vote everywhere had identical strategic value.

The popular-vote margin is therefore democratically meaningful without being a retroactive alternative election result.

The strongest defense of the 2016 Electoral College result

The rules were known in advance.

Both campaigns organized around states because that is how the presidency was awarded. They invested disproportionately in battlegrounds, selected travel schedules accordingly, and understood that large margins in safe states could be strategically inefficient.

Judging the winner by a different rule after ballots are counted would violate the basic logic of fair competition.

The correct democratic criticism must therefore be directed at the rule itself, not at the candidate for winning under it.

The strongest objection to the 2016 Electoral College result

A system that can give the entire executive power of the presidency to the candidate receiving fewer votes nationwide creates a real tension with political equality among individual citizens.

The Electoral College combines population and territorial representation rather than treating the country as one equal electorate.

Winner-take-all rules magnify the divergence by discarding state-level losing votes from the electoral allocation.

The result can be constitutionally valid and democratically contestable at the same time.

That distinction is essential to the argument of this book.

The election did not produce a blank-check mandate

Winning the presidency confers constitutional authority. It does not prove that a national majority endorsed every proposal in the winning platform.

Trump's coalition was sufficient to win the relevant state contests and therefore the Electoral College. It was not a nationwide popular-vote majority.

That matters when presidents describe an election as a mandate for every subsequent policy.

Every election authorizes officeholding more clearly than it authorizes a single interpretation of public will.

The coalition should be mapped without being psychoanalyzed

The 2016 electorate differed sharply by race, education, geography, religion, gender, and party identity.

Pew's validated-voter analysis confirms that Trump's coalition was overwhelmingly White relative to Clinton's and that he performed especially strongly among White voters without a four-year college degree. Clinton dominated among Black voters and won majorities in several other demographic groups.

These facts describe a coalition.

They do not, by themselves, tell us why each individual voted.

Demography is not motive.

There was no single Trump voter

Some voters prioritized immigration. Some trade. Some the Supreme Court. Some abortion. Some guns. Some taxes. Some opposition to Clinton. Some partisan identity. Some cultural grievance. Some anger at elites. Some simply preferred Republican government.

Any serious explanation must allow multiple motives to coexist in the same coalition and even in the same person.

The temptation to reduce Trump's support to economic anxiety, racial resentment, sexism, authoritarianism, or working-class revolt produces cleaner arguments than the electorate warrants.

A mass coalition is usually less philosophically coherent than the theory built to explain it.

Foreign interference belongs in the story, but not as a magic key

The 2016 campaign did not occur inside a purely domestic information environment.

The U.S. Intelligence Community concluded that Russia conducted an influence campaign directed at the election. The bipartisan Senate Intelligence Committee later documented hacking, information operations, contacts, vulnerabilities, and Russian efforts in extensive detail.

This is established evidence and should not be erased because the subject became partisan.

It also does not support the stronger claim that official investigators proved Russia determined the election outcome.

The existence of interference and the magnitude of its electoral effect are different questions.

Influence is not vote alteration

Foreign actors can influence an election without changing one certified ballot.

They can hack political organizations, release stolen material, impersonate Americans, purchase advertisements, amplify divisive content, or attempt to shape the agenda citizens encounter.

Those acts can be serious attacks on democratic self-government.

But they are analytically different from manipulating voting machines or changing certified vote totals.

The official record on 2016 documents influence operations. It does not establish that Russia altered the counted votes that produced Trump's victory.

A lawful election can occur inside a manipulated information environment

This creates an uncomfortable but necessary conclusion.

An election can satisfy the legal procedures for casting, counting, certifying, and allocating votes while the information environment surrounding voter choice is being manipulated by foreign actors, domestic actors, media incentives, misinformation, or strategic disclosure.

The remedy cannot simply be to declare the constitutional result void whenever influence is discovered after the fact.

A democracy needs both election finality and institutions capable of investigating manipulation, sanctioning unlawful conduct, improving defenses, and informing voters.

This is one reason the capacity to correct after an election matters as much as the fantasy of a perfectly uncontaminated campaign.

Surprise is not evidence of malfunction

The result shocked much of the political and media establishment.

Many forecasts gave Clinton a higher probability of victory. State polling, especially in parts of the Upper Midwest, did not fully capture the final coalition or turnout pattern.

That forecasting failure shaped public perception of the result because an outcome judged unlikely can feel abnormal even when the voting system functioned normally.

Probability is not certification.

A forecast can be wrong without an election being wrong.

Concession completed the institutional victory

On November 9, Hillary Clinton conceded the election. The outgoing Obama administration then began the transfer of executive power, and Trump took office on January 20, 2017.

The transfer did not end political conflict. Russian interference was investigated, the Electoral College remained contested, protests continued, and some Democrats described Trump as illegitimate in political or democratic terms. Democratic House members also attempted objections during the January 2017 electoral count.

Those facts matter because legitimacy rhetoric and congressional objections are not one-party inventions.

But the institutional act is equally important. Clinton conceded, Obama transferred power, and no comparable multi-pronged effort directed by the outgoing presidency sought to prevent Trump from assuming office.

The distinction is not between criticism and silence. It is between opposition within the system and an effort to prevent the system from closing.

2016 was a demanding test because the Electoral College winner had lost the national popular vote. The democratic norm did not require acceptance of the Electoral

College as ideal. It required allowing its lawful result to take effect while preserving the right to seek reform.

That distinction between contestation and prevention will become central in Chapter 19.

The system filtered Trump in some ways and amplified him in others

The phrase gatekeeping failure suggests that institutions simply disappeared.

They did not.

Primary rules filtered votes into delegates. Debate rules determined who appeared on stages. News institutions decided which events deserved attention. State election laws structured ballots. Winner-take-all rules translated statewide pluralities into electors. The Electoral College converted state results into executive power.

Trump did not bypass all mediation.

He exploited a particular configuration of mediation.

The system was open enough for insurgency

There is something democratically valuable in the fact that a candidate opposed by many insiders could nevertheless win.

A closed party system can protect competence while also protecting stale consensus, donor power, professional self-interest, and ideological conformity.

2016 demonstrated that American parties remained permeable enough for voters to impose an outsider on a major institution.

That capacity is part of democratic correction.

A system that can never be captured from below eventually ceases to feel representative.

The system was weak enough to confuse attention with fitness

The opposite lesson is also available.

Open primaries, fragmented opposition, horserace journalism, celebrity, and winner-take-all aggregation can reward qualities that are not the same as governing competence.

A candidate can be exceptionally good at commanding attention and defeating rivals without having demonstrated an ability to manage the administrative state, negotiate with Congress, respect institutional boundaries, or build a stable executive team.

Democracy needs pathways for insurgency. It also needs institutions capable of asking what happens after the insurgent wins.

2016 was strong at the first function and uncertain at the second.

Winning retrospectively validated the method

Political systems learn from success.

Before the election, many Republican professionals considered Trump's insults, improvisation, media conflict, and norm-breaking style electoral liabilities.

After victory, the same behaviors could be interpreted as evidence of authenticity, combativeness, or strategic genius.

The causal question remained unsettled: which behaviors won the election, which nearly lost it, and which were incidental?

But political imitation does not wait for controlled experiments. Victory turns methods into models.

The candidate became the proof of concept

Trump's success showed future candidates that party sponsorship could be replaced in part by personal audience, that hostile attention could be politically useful, and that ideological heterodoxy on trade or foreign policy need not prevent a Republican nomination if a candidate could dominate the coalition.

It also showed party officials that voters might punish attempts to restore older gatekeeping norms.

The 2016 campaign therefore changed the internal market for political behavior before any statute or executive order changed.

It demonstrated what was electorally possible.

Against the system did not mean outside the law

The title of this chapter requires discipline.

Trump ran against establishments. He attacked conventional media. He denounced party leaders. He challenged political norms and cast himself as an enemy of a corrupt governing class.

But his path to the presidency in 2016 was not an extra-constitutional seizure.

He filed for office, competed in primaries, won delegates, accepted a convention nomination, appeared on state ballots, won sufficient electoral votes, and took office after certification.

The conflict with the system was political before it became governmental.

The distinction between anti-establishment and anti-democratic matters

Democracy must permit candidates to argue that institutions are corrupt, incompetent, biased, or obsolete.

If criticizing the system were itself disqualifying, entrenched institutions could immunize themselves from democratic challenge.

The boundary appears when a candidate moves from attacking institutions rhetorically to refusing the rules that determine whether the candidate has won or lost.

In 2016, Trump's ascent occurred through the ordinary rules.

The later question — what happens when those rules produce defeat — belongs to 2020.

The first institution Trump defeated was the expectation of exclusion

Political gatekeeping often operates through expectations rather than formal prohibitions.

A candidate is not supposed to survive this statement. Donors will abandon him. Voters will become embarrassed. Endorsements will consolidate elsewhere. The press will expose him. Convention delegates will resist. The general electorate will reject him.

One by one, those expectations failed to remove Trump from the pathway to power.

That failure did not prove every institution was weak. It proved that many of their filtering mechanisms depended on norms, predictions, and informal authority rather than legal vetoes.

Trump's most important discovery in 2016 was that informal authority can collapse while formal procedure continues to function perfectly well.

The act-evidence: can insurgency remain corrigible?

The democratic test is not whether an outsider can win. A democracy that allows no outsider to win would already be unhealthy.

The test is whether an outsider can use ordinary democratic institutions to defeat entrenched gatekeepers without destroying the rules that make later correction and alternation possible.

In 2016, the first half of that test was answered decisively. Republican voters could overrule elite preference. News institutions could not suppress a candidate by disapproval. A constitutionally valid electoral coalition could defeat the candidate preferred by more voters nationwide.

The second half remained open.

Would the victorious outsider accept institutional friction once he possessed the presidency? Would the same respect for electoral rules survive when those rules no longer favored him?

2016: winning through the system against the system

Trump's first victory was neither a simple triumph of popular sovereignty nor a simple failure of democratic gatekeeping.

It was both permeability and warning.

The system allowed voters to disrupt a professional consensus. It also revealed how media attention, fragmented primaries, personalized political identity, and state-based electoral aggregation could carry a candidate whom many institutional actors considered unfit or unacceptable.

The constitutional machinery functioned. The political mediation around it changed.

That is why 2016 belongs at the beginning of the Trump stress test rather than at the end of a story about democratic collapse.

Trump first demonstrated that the system could be won from within by a candidate campaigning against its custodians. Only after that victory could he discover what governing institutions would do when the same style met law, bureaucracy, Congress, courts, and the practical necessity of administration.

The next chapter begins with that discovery.

Sources and notes

- Federal Election Commission — Federal Elections 2016. <https://www.fec.gov/resources/cms-content/documents/federalections2016.pdf>
- National Archives — 2016 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2016>
- Michigan Department of State / certified results materials — 2016 presidential result. <https://www.michigan.gov/sos/elections/election-results-and-data>
- American Presidency Project — Hillary Clinton, Remarks in New York City Conceding the 2016 Presidential Election, Nov. 9, 2016. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/documents/remarks-new-york-city-conceding-the-2016-presidential-election>
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — Pre-Primary News Coverage of the 2016 Presidential Race. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/pre-primary-news-coverage-2016-trump-clinton-sanders/>
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — News Coverage of the 2016 Presidential Primaries. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/news-coverage-2016-presidential-primaries/>
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — News Coverage of the 2016 General Election. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/news-coverage-2016-general-election/>
- Pew Research Center — An Examination of the 2016 Electorate, Based on Validated Voters. <https://www.pewresearch.org/politics/2018/08/09/an-examination-of-the-2016-electorate-based-on-validated-voters/>
- Office of the Director of National Intelligence — Assessing Russian Activities and Intentions in Recent U.S. Elections, Jan. 6, 2017. https://www.dni.gov/files/documents/ICA_2017_01.pdf
- U.S. Senate Select Committee on Intelligence — Russian Active Measures Campaigns and Interference in the 2016 U.S. Election, Volume 5. https://www.intelligence.senate.gov/sites/default/files/documents/report_volumes.pdf

CHAPTER 18

TRUMP I: DISCOVERING THE FRICTION

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The order was signed. The system did not simply obey.

On January 27, 2017, one week after taking office, President Donald Trump signed an executive order restricting entry into the United States for nationals of several countries and suspending refugee admissions.

The order was presidential action in its most familiar form: a signature, a directive, an immediate claim of authority.

Then the state began answering back.

Customs officers had to determine how the order applied to people already in transit. Lawyers raced to airports. Federal judges issued emergency relief. Agencies had to reconcile the White House directive with visas, lawful permanent residents, refugee commitments, statutory language, and their own operating systems.

The first lesson of Trump I arrived almost immediately.

A President can issue an order quickly. He cannot make the rest of government disappear while the order takes effect.

Friction is part of presidential government

The American presidency is powerful partly because it sits at the center of an enormous executive apparatus.

It is constrained for the same reason.

Every significant presidential objective has to pass through institutions that possess their own statutes, procedures, professional habits, legal advisers, budgets, records, and chains of command.

Some of those constraints are hard. A statute prohibits an action. A court issues a binding judgment. Congress refuses to appropriate money. An election changes who controls a branch.

Other constraints are soft. A lawyer insists on an ethics rule. A Cabinet secretary refuses to resign from a recusal. A White House Counsel threatens to quit. A career official says the evidence does not support the claim.

Trump's first term mattered because it exposed the difference.

The travel ban became a lesson in redesign

The first travel order did not survive intact.

Lower courts quickly blocked important parts of its implementation. The administration issued a revised order. Litigation continued. A later presidential

proclamation altered the policy again and rested on a more developed administrative and statutory record.

In June 2018, the Supreme Court upheld that later proclamation in *Trump v. Hawaii*.

This sequence is important because it resists two simple stories.

One story says courts stopped the President. They did not stop the policy permanently.

The other says the President prevailed and the earlier resistance was meaningless. It was not.

Judicial friction changed the legal form of the policy before the Supreme Court sustained it.

A court can constrain method without choosing policy

Trump v. Hawaii did not establish that every immigration restriction a President might desire is lawful.

It upheld a particular proclamation under the statutory authority and record before the Court.

The administration learned something from the litigation: a presidential objective becomes more durable when it is connected to the right legal source, supported by findings, and processed through a record that judges can review.

That is one of the most important forms of democratic friction.

The court does not have to govern instead of the President.

It can force the executive to govern in a form that law recognizes.

Not every obstacle is equally durable

A policy blocked because Congress has forbidden it is different from a policy blocked because an agency failed to write a sufficient explanation.

A President can sometimes correct the explanation.

He may be able to invoke a different statute, change the scope, wait for a different vacancy, nominate a different official, or alter the administrative process.

Other barriers are harder to redesign around.

A final judicial interpretation of the Constitution, a statutory prohibition, or an election result can leave far less room.

The first Trump administration therefore encountered not one wall of resistance but layers of resistance with different replacement costs.

Jeff Sessions and the friction of office

Jeff Sessions entered the administration as one of Trump's earliest and most important political allies.

He became Attorney General because Trump nominated him and the Senate confirmed him.

Yet in March 2017, after consultation with Department of Justice ethics officials, Sessions recused himself from investigations involving the presidential campaigns.

The President reacted with sustained anger.

Sessions did not reverse the recusal.

This is a useful case because the conflict was not between an elected President and an autonomous bureaucracy claiming a right to set national policy.

It was between presidential preference and an official's understanding of what his office required in a specific matter.

Role loyalty is not personal loyalty

An Attorney General is not constitutionally independent of the President.

The President is entitled to choose an Attorney General who shares the administration's law-enforcement priorities.

But the office also carries professional obligations that do not disappear when the President dislikes their consequence.

Sessions's recusal therefore shows a narrower kind of resistance.

He remained loyal to the administration's policy agenda while refusing to undo an ethics decision simply because the President wanted a different result.

That distinction—between loyalty to lawful office and loyalty to the officeholder—would become one of the recurring problems of the Trump presidency.

Comey showed that the President could remove friction

The first term also demonstrated the opposite lesson.

President Trump fired FBI Director James Comey in May 2017.

The removal was an exercise of presidential authority over an executive officer.

The surrounding motives became intensely disputed, but the structural point is simpler.

A person who creates friction can sometimes be removed.

Internal resistance is therefore weaker than a statutory or constitutional barrier when its effectiveness depends on one removable official.

Removal did not end the process

Comey's dismissal did not terminate the Russia investigation.

Because Sessions had recused himself, Deputy Attorney General Rod Rosenstein exercised supervisory authority over the matter.

On May 17, 2017, Rosenstein appointed Robert Mueller as Special Counsel.

One official disappeared and another institutional pathway opened.

This is what redundancy looks like in practice.

The President possessed removal power, but the removal of one person did not automatically erase the underlying investigative authority.

The Special Counsel was still inside the executive branch

Mueller did not become a constitutional officer independent of the executive.

He worked under Department of Justice regulations and remained subject to defined supervisory authority.

That is important because democratic analysis can become confused when it treats every insulated function as a separate branch.

The Special Counsel structure was designed to create distance, procedural regularity, and public credibility while leaving ultimate institutional location inside DOJ.

The friction came from a structured chain of authority, not from the creation of a parallel government.

Don McGahn and the contingency of refusal

The Mueller Report describes a more fragile kind of restraint involving White House Counsel Don McGahn.

According to Volume II, Trump directed McGahn to have Mueller removed, and McGahn resisted the instruction as he understood it, preparing to resign rather than carry it out.

The episode has often been narrated as a personal morality story.

That is not the most useful way to understand it.

The institutional question is why one official's refusal mattered.

The McGahn problem

McGahn had a formal legal role, access to the President, professional obligations, personal reputation, and the ability to create a record of what he believed he had been asked to do.

Those conditions made refusal costly for the President as well as for the lawyer.

But none of them guaranteed that another White House Counsel would respond the same way.

This is the difference between a rule and a person.

If the constraint disappears when the official is replaced, then the system is depending on a human veto point whose durability is uncertain.

Friction can be real even when it is personal

Calling a constraint contingent does not mean it was unimportant.

Democratic institutions always operate through people.

Judges must issue judgments. Prosecutors must apply standards. Senators must vote. Counsel must give advice.

The danger is not that human judgment exists.

The danger is when an institution has no durable procedure behind the judgment, so that replacing the person effectively replaces the rule.

The Mueller investigation persisted

Mueller's investigation continued through repeated presidential attacks, leadership disputes, litigation, congressional scrutiny, and public controversy.

In 2019, the Special Counsel submitted his report to the Attorney General.

Volume I documented Russian interference in the 2016 election and contacts involving members of the Trump campaign, while stating that the investigation did not establish that campaign members conspired or coordinated with the Russian government in its election-interference activities under the report's charged framework.

Volume II analyzed obstruction-related episodes without making a conventional charging judgment against the sitting President.

The report was neither a criminal conviction nor the institutional equivalent of 'total exoneration.'

A completed investigation is itself evidence of institutional persistence

The relevant fact for this chapter is narrower than the political argument over the report's conclusions.

A federal investigative process continued despite sustained hostility from the President whose conduct and campaign were among its subjects.

That demonstrates persistence.

It does not demonstrate perfect independence.

The process remained inside an executive branch whose leadership, personnel, and policy could change.

Unified government did not eliminate Congress

Republicans controlled both houses of Congress during the first two years of Trump's presidency.

That alignment reduced the likelihood that congressional oversight would become a sustained institutional attack on the President.

It did not make Congress disappear.

Legislation still required votes from members with their own constituencies, procedural leverage, policy preferences, and institutional incentives.

The presidency and Congress belonged to the same party. They did not become the same institution.

The Affordable Care Act repeal exposed intra-party friction

In 2017, Republicans controlled the presidency, House, and Senate and had spent years promising to repeal and replace the Affordable Care Act.

The effort still failed in the Senate.

The institutional lesson is larger than any one dramatic vote.

Party control creates an opportunity to govern. It does not eliminate coalition heterogeneity.

A senator still has to cast a vote that will be recorded and defended to a constituency.

A structural institution can depend on contingent actors

The Senate was the structural constraint.

The decisions of individual senators were contingent.

That distinction matters because the Constitution does not guarantee that co-partisan legislators will oppose a President.

It merely gives them the authority to do so.

The real democratic question is whether they will use that authority when it costs them inside their own coalition.

The 2018 midterm changed the friction without changing the Constitution

In November 2018, voters gave Democrats control of the House.

The House's constitutional powers did not change that night.

Its political use of those powers did.

Committee agendas shifted. Subpoena power became more aggressive. Investigations expanded. Impeachment became politically possible.

This is a reminder that elections are themselves part of the system of checks and balances.

The Constitution provides powers. Elections decide who is willing to use them.

Correction through elections is slow by design

Electoral correction has an obvious strength.

Voters can change institutional control without needing permission from the President.

It also has an obvious weakness.

Midterms do not occur when a crisis first appears. They occur on a calendar.

An elected government therefore enjoys a period in which political checks may be weaker even when legal checks remain available.

Democratic resilience depends partly on whether the system can survive long enough for electoral correction to arrive.

The first impeachment tested congressional force

The House impeached President Trump on December 18, 2019.

The two articles charged abuse of power and obstruction of Congress in connection with the Ukraine controversy and the impeachment inquiry.

The Senate acquitted him on February 5, 2020.

The sequence is often compressed into the statement that impeachment failed.

That formulation hides the institutional reality.

The House successfully exercised the impeachment power. The Senate refused to convict and remove.

Impeachment can punish without removing

Impeachment placed the President under a formal constitutional accusation and required the Senate to conduct a trial.

Removal, however, required a two-thirds vote.

That threshold made co-partisan defection decisive.

Senator Mitt Romney voted to convict on the first article, but the President remained far from the number of Republican defections necessary for removal.

The episode therefore demonstrates both a strong formal check and a weak terminal effect under intense party alignment.

Party can soften separation of powers

The first impeachment is a clean example of a problem developed earlier in this book.

American institutions separate powers, but parties connect the people who exercise them.

When a President's party controls one chamber, legislators may experience institutional duty and coalition loyalty as competing obligations.

The Constitution cannot force members of Congress to prefer the institution.

It can only give them the authority to act if they choose to.

Administrative failure is a different kind of friction

The family-separation crisis of 2018 revealed another form of constraint: government can fail to execute its own policy coherently.

Under the zero-tolerance prosecution policy, large numbers of children were separated from parents or guardians.

Subsequent HHS Inspector General work documented serious communication, tracking, and management problems.

The federal government was not prepared for the scale and complexity of reunification.

This slowed and complicated the policy.

But administrative incapacity is not a democratic safeguard.

A democracy should not depend on incompetence

There is a temptation to describe every failure of an aggressive policy as institutional resistance.

That is a mistake.

A lost record, broken database, unclear chain of command, or inability to identify separated family members may frustrate presidential policy, but it also harms the people government is supposed to administer.

Healthy friction makes authority explain itself and remain correctable.

Dysfunction simply reduces the state's ability to act well.

Litigation can transform dysfunction into correction

Federal litigation over family separation eventually imposed legal obligations concerning identification and reunification.

At that point the friction changed character.

What began partly as administrative incapacity became judicially supervised correction.

This movement from failure to enforceable duty is one of the book's recurring patterns.

Institutions often become corrective only when one pathway activates another.

Acting officials increased executive flexibility

Trump I also discovered a personnel mechanism that could reduce friction.

Acting officials can fill vacancies quickly without waiting for Senate confirmation for that particular office.

The mechanism is lawful and used across administrations.

Under Trump, however, acting service became especially visible because leadership changed frequently and because temporary appointments could give the White House more immediate flexibility.

The benefit was speed.

The cost was a weaker confirmation link.

DHS showed the legal edge of acting service

After Homeland Security Secretary Kirstjen Nielsen resigned in 2019, succession inside DHS became legally disputed.

In August 2020, the Government Accountability Office concluded that the appointments of Kevin McAleenan and Chad Wolf as Acting Secretary had not followed the applicable order of succession as GAO interpreted it.

The episode is important because it demonstrates that temporary personnel power is not self-validating.

Acting status still has to come from a statute or valid succession order.

The title is not the authority

Calling someone Acting Secretary does not make the appointment lawful.

The authority has to be traceable to the Vacancies Act, an office-specific statute, or another valid succession mechanism.

Trump I therefore discovered both sides of acting service.

It can reduce the time cost of Senate confirmation.

It can also generate a new legal vulnerability if the succession chain is wrong.

Turnover created speed and instability at once

Trump's first-term White House experienced extraordinary senior-level turnover by modern standards.

Brookings's 'A Team' tracker, using its own defined methodology, reported turnover reaching 92 percent by the end of the term among the senior positions it tracked.

The number should not be treated as a government-wide measure.

The institutional point is more important than the percentage.

Frequent replacement can make it easier for a President to remove disagreement.

It can also destroy institutional memory and force successors to relearn the job.

Turnover can be friction or anti-friction

A new official may be more loyal to presidential priorities.

The same official may know less about the agency, the statute, the staff, the budget, and the litigation environment.

Replacement therefore solves one problem while creating another.

The first Trump administration often increased alignment by paying a cost in accumulated administrative knowledge.

That tradeoff would matter enormously for the second term.

Inexperience was a real constraint

Trump entered office without previous elected office or executive-government experience.

His first administration also included establishment Republicans, generals, business figures, ideological conservatives, career officials, and personal loyalists who did not always share the same view of presidential authority.

This heterogeneity created friction.

It also created learning.

Inexperience is not a constitutional safeguard because it can disappear.

Knowing the map is a form of power

Government is full of questions that campaigns rarely ask.

Which statute authorizes the action? Which office controls the account? Who signs the rule? Which personnel category protects the employee? Which court reviews the agency? Which findings have to exist in the record? Which nomination can remain acting, and for how long?

Trump I repeatedly learned that the difference between political intention and government action is institutional knowledge.

By the end of the term, some of the administration's most consequential moves were attempts to redesign that knowledge into structure.

The border emergency showed statutory adaptation

Congress did not give Trump the full amount of border-wall funding he requested.

On February 15, 2019, he declared a national emergency at the southern border and invoked statutory authorities that could make additional resources available or redirect their use.

Congress passed a joint resolution to terminate the emergency.

Trump vetoed it.

Congress failed to override the veto.

This was friction, but it was also a lesson in how to use friction itself.

Congress could oppose without prevailing

The National Emergencies Act gave Congress a mechanism to terminate the emergency.

After *INS v. Chadha*, however, termination required a joint resolution subject to presidential veto.

That meant the President could trigger the emergency alone while Congress needed a supermajority to end it over his objection.

The first term therefore revealed an asymmetry embedded in statute rather than invented by the President.

The administration learned that old delegations could provide pathways around a legislative refusal.

The President was learning the difference between losing a policy and losing an objective

A failed bill does not always end an objective.

A blocked executive order can be revised.

A recused Attorney General can be bypassed through another chain of authority.

A vacancy can be filled temporarily.

An emergency statute can unlock powers Congress had delegated years earlier.

Each of these moves is legal only if the relevant authority exists.

But together they teach a governing lesson: a President who understands the institutional map can search for another route.

Executive orders were not magic

Trump used executive orders frequently and dramatically.

But counting orders is a poor measure of presidential domination.

Some orders were upheld, some blocked, some revised, some revoked by successors, and some depended on statutes Congress had already written.

The decisive question is always the same.

What authority made the order effective, and what institution could revise or terminate it?

Schedule F was the clearest late-term lesson

On October 21, 2020, Trump issued Executive Order 13957.

The order created Schedule F for certain career positions described as confidential, policy-determining, policy-making, or policy-advocating.

Covered positions would have weaker ordinary adverse-action protections.

The order arrived only weeks before the election.

It did not have time to become a fully implemented government-wide personnel system before Trump left office.

Schedule F changed the nature of the argument

For much of the first term, complaints about the 'deep state' or bureaucratic obstruction were rhetorical and personnel-specific.

Schedule F was different.

It translated a political diagnosis into administrative design.

If policy-influencing career employees were part of the friction, the answer was to change the personnel category governing them.

That is the moment the first term began to turn experience into architecture.

Biden's reversal proved how provisional the architecture still was

President Joe Biden revoked Schedule F shortly after taking office in January 2021.

That reversal shows both the reach and the fragility of executive administrative design.

A President can sometimes reorganize the executive branch quickly.

A successor can sometimes reverse the same design just as quickly.

Durability therefore requires more than presidential intent.

Friction can frustrate democracy too

Any serious account of Trump I has to grant the strongest case against bureaucratic and procedural resistance.

Presidents are elected to change policy.

If career officials, judges, or procedures can indefinitely preserve the previous administration's choices, electoral control becomes hollow.

An administration has a legitimate interest in making lawful policy implementable.

Not every presidential complaint about bureaucracy is evidence of a desire for personal rule.

The real boundary is between correction and substitution

A career official who says the law does not permit an action is doing something different from a career official who simply refuses a lawful policy because the official dislikes it.

A judge who sets aside a procedurally defective rule is doing something different from a judge choosing the preferred policy.

A senator who votes against the President is doing something different from an unelected subordinate claiming a personal veto.

Democratic friction is legitimate when it keeps each actor inside the role the system assigns.

The first term revealed a hierarchy of constraints

By 2020, it was possible to sort the President's obstacles roughly by durability.

At the hard end stood constitutional rules, statutes, final judicial judgments, election results, and congressional votes the President could not change alone.

In the middle stood administrative procedures, ethics regimes, confirmation requirements, and vacancy rules that could sometimes be reinterpreted or redesigned.

At the soft end stood traditions, internal memoranda, professional conventions, informal deference, and the willingness of particular officials to resist.

The categories were not perfect.

The hierarchy was still politically useful.

The replacement test

One question cuts through much of the mythology surrounding Trump I.

If this official were replaced tomorrow by someone more aligned with the President, would the constraint still exist?

If the answer is yes, the restraint is relatively structural.

If the answer is no, the system is depending on a person, a norm, or a cost of replacement.

That does not make the restraint unreal.

It makes it vulnerable.

Courts were not an anti-Trump party

Trump lost important cases and won important cases.

His administration was repeatedly enjoined, but it also obtained major Supreme Court victories.

Trump appointed three Supreme Court Justices and a large number of lower-court judges with Senate confirmation.

The judiciary that constrained Trump I was simultaneously being reshaped through ordinary constitutional appointment power.

This is a better picture of American checks and balances than the idea of one branch permanently opposing another.

The first term changed the courts that the second term would face

Judicial appointments are among the most durable effects of Trump I.

They outlast the President who made them.

The legal environment of Trump II was therefore not the legal environment of 2017.

This matters because a President can learn from friction while also lawfully altering the institutions that generate it.

Congress enabled as well as constrained

Republican congressional majorities passed major tax legislation, confirmed judges and executive officials, and supported substantial parts of Trump's agenda.

The first term was not a story of an isolated President surrounded by resistance.

It was a story of selective friction inside a system that also cooperated.

That distinction matters because institutional constraint should be measured by specific acts, not by the emotional temperature of political conflict.

The first impeachment taught another lesson about party

Impeachment demonstrated that the House could act aggressively once controlled by the opposition.

It also demonstrated that removal required far more than opposition-party unity.

The President could survive so long as enough co-partisan senators refused conviction.

The constitutional threshold was structural.

The protection it supplied was political.

COVID-19 exposed a different kind of state

The pandemic arrived late in Trump I and revealed a federal system in which presidential power, state authority, public-health agencies, Congress, courts, governors, and private institutions all operated at once.

It is tempting to use the pandemic as a summary of the entire administration.

That would blur the narrower institutional lesson.

Its narrower lesson is that even a national emergency did not convert the United States into a unitary command system.

The first-term friction story ends before January 6

The 2020 election and refusal of defeat belong to the next chapter.

Trump I's friction story ends earlier.

By late 2020, the administration had accumulated four years of experience with judges, lawyers, career officials, vacancies, emergency statutes, congressional majorities, congressional opposition, and internal resistance.

Schedule F provides the clearest closing image.

The first term had moved from encountering friction to redesigning the conditions that produced it.

The strongest defense of learning

Every President learns.

Every administration improves legal drafting, staffing, transition preparation, and organizational control after setbacks.

That is not authoritarian by definition.

Competence is a democratic good when it allows an elected government to implement lawful policy more effectively.

The strongest warning about learning

Learning can also be directed at the institutions that previously generated lawful refusal.

If the lesson of an ethics recusal is to prevent future recusals, if the lesson of professional dissent is to weaken removal protection, or if the lesson of legal review is only to find officials who will approve the preferred answer, competence can become a tool of personal concentration.

The difference depends on what is being optimized.

Implementation of lawful policy is one thing.

Elimination of independent legal or factual judgment is another.

The act-evidence: what survives replacement?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is the replacement test.

Which restraints would still exist if the specific officials who invoked them were replaced?

Courts, statutes, appropriations, elections, and some procedures can survive replacement.

McGahn's refusal, Sessions's recusal, or a senator's individual vote may not.

The health of the system depends partly on whether soft restraint is eventually translated into durable rule—or whether the executive learns to make soft restraint disappear.

Trump I discovered the friction

Trump's first term did not reveal a President defeated by an all-powerful bureaucracy.

It did not reveal a President free to command the state at will.

It revealed a layered system in which power moved through law, procedure, people, and party.

Some obstacles forced redesign. Some merely delayed. Some failed. Some depended on individuals. Some changed after elections. Some became precedents.

The most consequential lesson was therefore not that the presidency was weak.

It was that different frictions had different sources, and different sources had different vulnerabilities.

Trump I discovered where the resistance lived.

The political project that followed began asking which parts of it could be redesigned.

Sources and notes

- White House archive — Executive Order 13769, Jan. 27, 2017. <https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/executive-order-protecting-nation-foreign-terrorist-entry-united-states/>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Hawaii, 585 U.S. 667 (2018). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/17-965_h315.pdf
- Department of Justice — Attorney General Sessions Statement on Recusal, Mar. 2, 2017. <https://www.justice.gov/archives/opa/pr/attorney-general-sessions-statement-recusal>
- Department of Justice — Report on the Investigation into Russian Interference in the 2016 Presidential Election. <https://www.justice.gov/d9/report.pdf>
- Congress.gov — H.Res.755, Articles of Impeachment. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/116th-congress/house-resolution/755/text>
- Congress.gov — H.Res.755, All Actions. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/116th-congress/house-resolution/755/all-actions>
- HHS Office of Inspector General — Separated Children Placed in Office of Refugee Resettlement Care. <https://oig.hhs.gov/reports/all/2019/separated-children-placed-in-office-of-refugee-resettlement-care/>
- HHS Office of Inspector General — Communication and Management Challenges Impeded HHS's Response to the Zero-Tolerance Policy. <https://oig.hhs.gov/newsroom/news-releases-articles/hhs-oig-communication-and-management-challenges-impeded-hhss-response-zero-tolerance-policy/>

- Government Accountability Office — DHS Acting Secretary succession, B-331650, Aug. 14, 2020. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-331650>
- Government Accountability Office — Federal Vacancies for the Trump Administration. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/federal-vacancies-reform-act/federal-vacancies-prior-administration>
- White House archive — Proclamation Declaring a National Emergency Concerning the Southern Border, Feb. 15, 2019. <https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/presidential-proclamation-declaring-national-emergency-concerning-southern-border-united-states/>
- White House archive — Executive Order 13957, Creating Schedule F, Oct. 21, 2020. <https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/executive-order-creating-schedule-f-excepted-service/>
- Brookings Institution — Tracking Turnover in the Trump Administration. <https://www.brookings.edu/articles/tracking-turnover-in-the-trump-administration/>

CHAPTER 19

2020: LOSING WITHOUT ACCEPTING LOSS

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

A democracy needs an ending

An election cannot be legitimate because a television network calls it. It cannot be legitimate because the winner says it is over. It cannot even be legitimate because most citizens are tired of arguing.

An election becomes binding through a sequence of authorized acts: ballots are counted, errors can be challenged, recounts and audits can be conducted, courts can hear claims, states certify results, electors vote, Congress counts those votes, and a new President takes the oath.

That sequence exists for a reason. Democracy needs doubt.

It also needs an ending.

The crisis of 2020 began as ordinary democratic contestation. It became something else when adverse decisions no longer narrowed the dispute and instead produced a search for another institution that might keep the result open.

The right to challenge is part of the system

No serious democracy should demand immediate submission from a losing candidate.

Votes can be miscounted. Ballots can be rejected improperly. Machines can fail. Officials can make mistakes. Rules can be unlawful. Fraud can occur.

Recounts, audits, canvasses, lawsuits, provisional ballots, curing procedures, and certification review are therefore not signs that democracy is failing.

They are how a democracy makes an election trustworthy without asking citizens to accept authority on faith.

The problem is not contestation.

The problem is whether contestation can ever finish.

The 2020 election had no single national administrator

The United States did not conduct the 2020 presidential election through one federal election office.

States and local jurisdictions ran the election under a mixture of state and federal law. They used different ballot rules, different canvassing procedures, different certification calendars, and different pathways for recounts and litigation.

That decentralization is often described as a weakness.

In 2020, it was also a form of redundancy.

No single federal officer could simply announce a new nationwide vote total.

The National Archives records Joseph R. Biden Jr. with 306 electoral votes and Donald J. Trump with 232.

That was not the first number the public saw.

Media organizations projected winners. States continued counting. Lawsuits continued. Recounts and audits continued.

But the final presidential result was not created by projection.

It was produced by the institutions authorized to move the election from ballots to state certifications, from certifications to electors, and from electors to Congress.

Several pivotal states were decided narrowly enough to justify intense attention.

That is not a concession to election denial. It is a basic feature of accountable election administration.

When tens of thousands of votes determine control of the presidency, a democracy should expect recount demands, public records requests, litigation, partisan observers, and aggressive scrutiny.

The democratic test is what happens when those mechanisms return an answer.

Georgia counted again

Georgia became one of the clearest examples.

The state conducted a statewide hand audit of presidential ballots. The Trump campaign later requested a recount under state procedures. The state still certified Biden as the winner.

The important fact is not that the totals never changed.

Recounts often produce small changes.

The important fact is that correction occurred inside the process and did not produce a different winner.

A corrigible system is not one in which the first count is sacred. It is one in which corrections can happen without making the outcome indefinitely provisional.

An election system that finds and corrects a small number of mistakes is functioning differently from a system in which no result can ever become final.

This distinction became difficult to preserve in 2020 because each correction could be recast as proof that larger hidden errors must exist.

But correction has to reduce uncertainty if it is to be democratic.

If every resolved discrepancy becomes the premise for a larger unresolved claim, verification stops being a path to closure.

On November 12, 2020, federal and industry election-infrastructure officials issued a joint statement through the Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency.

They said they had no evidence that any voting system had deleted or lost votes, changed votes, or was in any way compromised.

That was a strong statement.

It was also a specific one.

CISA did not certify the presidential winner. It did not claim that every local official had performed perfectly or that no illegal ballot existed anywhere.

It addressed the security of election infrastructure.

The strongest version of the CISA evidence is not that 'officials said the election was perfect.'

It is that the officials charged with protecting election infrastructure found no evidence of the kind of voting-system compromise that would have changed the result.

That narrower statement is more useful because it can be tested.

Democratic closure does not require a claim of perfection.

It requires enough independent verification to decide whether identified defects plausibly change the legally relevant outcome.

William Barr became another checkpoint

Attorney General William Barr was not a neutral outsider to the administration.

He was Trump's Attorney General.

On December 1, 2020, however, Barr publicly stated that the Department of Justice had not uncovered fraud on a scale that could have produced a different election outcome.

The institutional significance of that statement lies precisely in who made it.

An executive-branch law-enforcement process controlled by the President's own administration did not validate the factual premise required to reverse the result.

Barr's statement should not be inflated.

Election crimes can occur without determining a presidential election.

Administrative irregularities can occur without changing a statewide winner.

That is why the relevant standard in a national transfer-of-power dispute is outcome-changing scale.

A democracy does not need to prove that every ballot in a nation of more than 150 million voters was handled perfectly before power can transfer.

The courts were open

The Trump campaign and its allies used state and federal courts extensively after the election.

That was a lawful and democratic thing to do.

A candidate who believes an election was administered illegally should be able to ask judges for relief.

The existence of litigation is therefore not evidence of an attempt to subvert democracy.

The evidence lies in what claims were made, what remedies were requested, what courts decided, and whether losing in court had any effect on the subsequent strategy.

One of the most careless ways to describe 2020 is to say that every court examined the fraud claims and found them false.

Courts dismissed cases for different reasons.

Some claims failed for lack of standing. Others failed on jurisdiction, timeliness, procedure, or legal theory. Some courts examined evidence more directly.

The honest aggregate claim is narrower.

The litigation did not produce judicial findings or remedies sufficient to overturn the certified presidential result in the relevant states.

On December 11, 2020, the Supreme Court refused Texas permission to pursue a challenge against Pennsylvania, Georgia, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

The Court said Texas had not demonstrated a judicially cognizable interest in the manner in which another state conducted its elections.

The order did not adjudicate every allegation of fraud on the merits.

It did something institutionally important anyway.

It refused to let one state use the Supreme Court to supervise the election administration of other states merely because the national result turned on them.

A lawsuit is an instrument of democratic contestation only if the court has authority to say no.

If every unfavorable decision proves that the judge is corrupt, captured, cowardly, or irrelevant, legal process becomes theater.

The rule of law cannot mean a right to file until one judge produces the desired answer.

Adverse decisions must narrow the set of live disputes.

That is what gives adjudication its capacity to end rather than merely move conflict.

Certification occurred state by state

By December, states had canvassed and certified their presidential results under their own laws.

This process involved secretaries of state, governors, canvassing boards, election directors, and courts operating through different partisan and institutional arrangements.

The presidential outcome therefore did not depend on one partisan national authority.

It accumulated through decentralized legal acts.

Some of the most important officials who preserved those certifications were Republicans.

That matters for a simple reason.

A same-party official who applies a rule that confirms the opposing candidate's victory performs a more demanding institutional act than an opposition official reaching the same result.

The point is not moral heroism.

It is role fidelity under political cost.

Brad Raffensperger and the same-party test

Georgia Secretary of State Brad Raffensperger was a Republican.

On January 2, 2021, he participated in a telephone call with President Trump concerning Georgia's result.

Trump disputed the outcome and advanced multiple claims about the state's vote.

Raffensperger and his staff rejected several of those claims and did not produce a new certified result.

This episode is one of the clearest act-evidence moments in the entire book.

Raffensperger did not become a Democrat by certifying an election Trump lost.

He remained a Republican official applying the state's election process.

That is precisely why the episode matters.

A democratic institution is strongest when its procedures can impose defeat on the coalition whose own members administer them.

Otherwise rules become conditional on partisan benefit.

The search moved to state legislatures

As judicial and administrative routes failed to produce a different result, pressure shifted toward state legislatures.

The Constitution gives state legislatures a central role in the legal framework governing presidential electors, which made these arguments appear institutionally grounded rather than simply extralegal.

But the relevant question was whether legislatures could disregard or replace electors after voters had cast ballots and states had certified outcomes under existing law.

At this point, the dispute was moving away from counting ballots and toward changing which institution would be treated as decisive.

On December 14, 2020, Republican groups in seven states won by Biden signed documents purporting to cast electoral votes for Trump.

The National Archives preserves these materials and identifies them as unofficial certificates that were not accepted as evidence of official state action.

That documentary fact can be stated without importing every later criminal theory.

The papers existed.

They were not the official certified electoral votes of those states.

The alternate-electoral episode should not be flattened into one description of every participant's mental state.

States differed. Legal advice differed. Some documents used contingent language. Some participants later offered different accounts of what they understood themselves to be doing.

The existence and use of unofficial certificates are institutional facts.

Criminal intent is a separate question and must be proved person by person.

The unofficial slates mattered because they created documents that could later be invoked in arguments over what Congress or the Vice President should do on January 6.

The strategy therefore shifted the dispute again.

Ballot counting had not changed the winner.

Litigation had not changed the winner.

Certification had not changed the winner.

The next target was the constitutional mechanism that counted electoral votes.

The Justice Department became another possible pathway

By late December, the Department of Justice had become one more institution in which the President sought a response to the election dispute.

Acting Attorney General Jeffrey Rosen and Deputy Attorney General Richard Donoghue did not support proposals for DOJ to communicate to contested states in a way that would lend federal weight to claims they believed the Department's evidence did not support.

Jeffrey Clark, another senior DOJ official, favored a different approach.

The dispute brought the personnel problem of Chapter 18 directly into the transfer of power.

The core issue was not whether the President could set national law-enforcement priorities.

He could.

The issue was whether the Department should make an institutional factual claim about an election that its own work did not substantiate.

Rosen and Donoghue refused to convert presidential insistence into a Department conclusion.

That is a form of executive-branch constraint grounded in evidence rather than opposition policy.

On January 3, 2021, the White House considered replacing Rosen with Clark.

That possibility exposed the fragility of personnel-based resistance.

If one official will not make the statement the President wants, a President with removal and appointment authority may search for another official who will.

The safeguard then depends on the legal pathway to replacement, the willingness of other officials to resign, the time remaining, and the political cost of the move.

Rosen remained Acting Attorney General.

The proposed Clark letter was not sent.

Accounts of the meeting identify threatened resignations and strong objections from senior Justice Department and White House officials.

It would be too simple to say one person saved the institution.

The more important fact is that replacement proved costly enough that the attempt stopped before the Department changed its institutional position.

The vice presidency became the final internal checkpoint

The constitutional process converged on January 6.

Vice President Mike Pence was to preside over the joint session of Congress counting the electoral votes.

John Eastman and others advanced theories under which Pence could reject, delay, or otherwise decline to count certain certified electoral votes.

Pence rejected the claim that he possessed unilateral authority to choose which votes would count.

In a written statement released on January 6, Pence tied his position to his oath and to his understanding of the Constitution.

He said he did not possess unilateral authority to determine which electoral votes should be counted and which should not.

This is one of the purest examples of role-based refusal in the Trump era.

The immediate political beneficiary of the broader theory was the President with whom Pence had been elected.

Pence's refusal held.

But the episode revealed how much could depend on one officeholder's interpretation of an old and ambiguous statute.

If the Vice President had accepted the broader theory, the country would have entered a legal and constitutional conflict whose immediate resolution was uncertain.

The later Electoral Count Reform Act matters because Congress recognized that this soft point should be made harder.

Congressional objections were not invented in 2021

Members of Congress had objected or attempted to object to electoral votes in earlier elections, including Democratic objections connected to Republican presidential victories.

That history is relevant.

It prevents a false story in which using the congressional count for partisan protest appeared for the first time in 2021.

But precedent is not equivalence.

The scale, presidential sponsorship, interaction with alternate slates, and role of the incumbent all matter.

Congress debated objections to Arizona and Pennsylvania.

The Senate rejected the Arizona objection by 93 to 6 and the Pennsylvania objection by 92 to 7.

Those votes matter because Republican senators were not unanimous behind the effort to delay or reject the electoral votes.

The resistance inside the President's own party remained one of the system's essential closing mechanisms.

Republican members of Congress supported objections.

Other Republicans rejected them.

Republican state officials certified results Trump lost. Republican-appointed judges rejected legal theories. Trump-appointed Justice Department officials rejected claims they considered unsupported. Pence refused unilateral control over the count.

The crisis was deeply partisan.

It was not institutionally uniform.

January 6 physically interrupted the count

The joint session began on January 6, 2021.

The attack on the Capitol forced the proceedings to stop.

Members of Congress and the Vice President were moved to secure locations while the building was cleared.

No later dispute about criminal labels changes this institutional fact.

A constitutional procedure for counting electoral votes was physically interrupted.

People present on January 6 committed different acts.

Some violently assaulted police or breached restricted areas. Some were later convicted of serious conspiracy offenses. Others committed lesser offenses. Many people in Washington that day did not enter the Capitol at all.

A democratic history should not erase those distinctions.

Collective political meaning does not eliminate individual legal responsibility.

The House Select Committee on January 6 assembled an extensive factual record from testimony, documents, communications, and public hearings.

Its final report is indispensable to reconstructing pressure on states, the Justice Department, Pence, and Congress.

But a congressional finding is not a criminal conviction.

The analysis should preserve that institutional status.

The most important event happened after the attack

Congress returned.

The House and Senate reconvened the same evening.

They resumed the constitutional procedure that had been interrupted.

Objections were debated. Votes were taken. The electoral count was completed at approximately 3:44 a.m. on January 7.

This is the clearest act of institutional resilience in the sequence.

Calling the resumption resilient does not diminish the seriousness of the attack.

The opposite is true.

Resilience is visible because the rupture was real.

The democratic achievement was not that nothing happened.

It was that the institution returned to the interrupted rule instead of inventing a new path under pressure.

Trump never gave a traditional concession

Donald Trump did not deliver the kind of concession speech Hillary Clinton gave in 2016 or Kamala Harris would give in 2024.

The absence of that ceremony is not itself a constitutional violation.

No clause requires a losing presidential candidate to say the word concede.

The importance of the missing concession comes from the conduct around it.

Trump continued to say the official result was false while efforts continued to alter or delay its institutional effect.

A concession speech has no power to appoint a President.

It cannot change certified votes.

Its function is social and political.

It tells supporters that legal contestation has ended and that the rival who won under the rules now possesses a right to govern.

This is exactly the kind of unwritten habit Tocqueville would have recognized as politically consequential despite lacking the force of law.

The formal presidential transition process was slowed while the General Services Administration withheld ascertainment until November 23.

That administrative delay should be kept separate from election certification.

The legal process for choosing the President and the practical process for transferring government are connected but not identical.

Democratic alternation requires both.

January 20 supplied the terminal fact

On January 20, 2021, Joe Biden took the presidential oath.

Donald Trump left office.

Whatever claims continued afterward, constitutional authority transferred.

That act is the terminal evidence that the system achieved closure in practice even without rhetorical concession.

No single institution saved the result

It is tempting to find one hero.

That misunderstands the architecture.

State officials counted and certified. Courts adjudicated. Election-security officials reported their findings. DOJ assessed fraud claims. Republican state officials refused to reverse certified outcomes. Congress counted electoral votes. Pence declined unilateral authority. Security forces restored the Capitol.

The system held through redundancy.

A democracy is safer when no single official must be trusted to protect an election.

If one judge, governor, prosecutor, secretary of state, or Vice President can determine the national result alone, the system has created a catastrophic point of capture.

Decentralization made 2020 messy.

It also made coordinated reversal much harder.

The same decentralization had an epistemic weakness.

Because no single institution possessed universally accepted authority, every adverse decision could be described as one more captured node.

A state official could be called corrupt. A judge could be called biased. CISA could be dismissed as part of the bureaucracy. DOJ could be said to have failed. Pence could be accused of cowardice.

Legal redundancy produced closure.

It did not produce universal factual agreement.

By January 20, the legal question of who was President had ended.

The political argument over whether the election had been legitimate had not.

This is where the election crisis connects to the earlier collapse of a common factual world.

A democracy cannot require unanimous belief before transferring power.

It must instead rely on procedures that citizens can inspect, challenge, and ultimately obey even when they remain unconvinced.

If losing voters must first become persuaded that every institution acted correctly, no election can be final in a polarized society.

The democratic standard has to be procedural.

Were claims heard? Were reasons given? Were recounts available? Did certifications occur? Did courts have authority to review? Did Congress perform its constitutional function?

The losing coalition may continue to argue afterward.

It cannot possess a permanent veto over transfer.

The strongest defense of Trump's right to contest

A sitting President retains the right to challenge election administration.

Neither media projections nor political pressure can take that right away.

Campaigns may request recounts, present evidence, sue, demand audits, and ask lawful institutions for remedies.

A norm requiring instant concession would be dangerous because it could convert confidence into obedience.

The democratic case for closure begins only after contestation has had somewhere legitimate to go.

Election officials and journalists are not entitled to make the final constitutional choice by assertion.

The official process takes time.

States certify on schedules established by law. Courts take jurisdiction or refuse it. Electors meet. Congress counts.

Insisting on those steps is not denial.

It is constitutional patience.

The problem was what happened after the steps answered

The post-election strategy did not end with recounts or lawsuits.

As one path failed to produce a different result, another institution became the potential site of reversal.

State officials. Courts. Legislatures. Alternate electors. The Justice Department. The Vice President. Congress.

That movement across the architecture is what distinguishes persistence from closure refusal.

A losing campaign may have good reason to change forums.

A court can lack jurisdiction even when a legal problem remains real. New evidence can emerge. State and federal issues can differ.

So movement itself is not proof of bad faith.

The analytic threshold is whether adverse decisions narrow the claim.

If nothing ever narrows it, the process becomes a search for a favorable authority rather than a search for adjudication.

2016 supplies the comparison

In 2016, Democratic members of Congress objected during the electoral count, and later Democratic rhetoric often questioned the political legitimacy of Trump's victory.

Those precedents matter because electoral objection and legitimacy rhetoric did not begin in January 2021.

The difference is institutional scale and closure. Hillary Clinton conceded; the Obama administration transferred power; the objections did not become a sustained presidential effort to prevent the certified winner from taking office.

The strongest counterexample to a purely partisan account of 2020 comes from Republicans themselves: state officials, Justice Department leaders, the Vice President, senators, and Republican-appointed judges helped close the election.

The point is not that one party always accepts defeat and the other does not. It is that the 2020 effort persisted across more institutions, for longer, under the direction of the losing President himself.

That asymmetry is observable without turning it into a permanent moral identity for either party.

The Electoral Count Reform Act converted experience into law

In 2022, Congress changed the statutory framework governing the presidential electoral count.

The Electoral Count Reform Act clarified that the Vice President's role is ministerial, raised the threshold for congressional objections, strengthened rules surrounding state certificates, and created clearer avenues for expedited judicial review.

This is democratic correction in observable form.

A vulnerability revealed in one transfer produced a change in the rules before the next one.

In January 2021, a large part of the safeguard depended on Pence's constitutional judgment.

After 2022, the statute states more clearly that the presiding officer does not possess unilateral power to determine, accept, reject, or otherwise adjudicate disputes over electors.

That does not eliminate every future controversy.

It reduces dependence on the character or legal theory of the next Vice President.

The fact that Congress changed the law does not prove the old law made the 2020 strategy valid.

Nor does the fact that the system transferred power prove the old framework was adequate.

Reform is evidence of a third possibility.

An institution can survive a stress test and still learn that survival depended too heavily on ambiguity.

2024 provided a partial reciprocity test

In 2024, Donald Trump won the presidency.

Kamala Harris conceded. The electoral count on January 6, 2025 proceeded without a comparable transfer-of-power crisis.

The comparison should remain brief.

One peaceful election does not prove every vulnerability has been repaired.

It does show that the system remained capable of transferring power back to Trump after the crisis of 2020.

January 6 later generated extensive criminal litigation.

Specific convictions can establish specific conduct by specific defendants.

But the democratic sequence existed before those cases concluded.

The election was certified, the count was interrupted, Congress resumed, and power transferred.

Those facts do not depend on a later criminal verdict.

The Supreme Court's 2024 decision in *Trump v. United States* changed the criminal-law framework for some official presidential acts.

It did not change which states certified Biden, what DOJ concluded at the time, what Pence did, what Congress counted, or who took office.

Institutional history should remain separate from later questions of criminal liability.

Trump's 2025 pardons and commutations changed the federal criminal consequences for many January 6 defendants.

They did not transform pardons into acquittals.

They did not erase the interruption of the congressional count.

Clemency belongs to the machinery of justice described earlier in this book.

It should not be allowed to rewrite the architecture of electoral closure.

'Fraud' is often used as if it were one national substance.

It is not.

A specific fraudulent ballot, an illegal registration, a procedural dispute, a machine-security claim, and a statewide outcome-changing conspiracy are different assertions with different evidence.

The strongest claim the record supports is not that no election offense occurred anywhere.

It is that no process produced evidence of fraud sufficient to overturn the certified presidential result.

Political and scholarly arguments over whether 2020 should be called a coup, attempted coup, self-coup, insurrection, constitutional crisis, or election subversion will continue.

This chapter does not need one label to carry its analysis.

Certified states. Failed challenges. Unofficial electoral certificates. DOJ pressure. Vice-presidential pressure. Congressional objections. Physical interruption. Resumed count. Transfer.

The sequence is more precise than the slogan.

The act-evidence: can the system close against the incumbent?

The primary act-evidence for this chapter is whether multiple independent institutions can produce a final transfer of power when the incumbent refuses to accept their conclusion.

In 2020, they did.

That is a genuine demonstration of democratic capacity.

But the demonstration came with a warning.

Several decisive points depended on individuals whose legal or professional judgment could have been different.

Two opposite conclusions about 2020 are both inadequate.

The first says the institutions held, therefore the danger was exaggerated.

The second says the transfer was challenged, therefore American democracy had already failed.

The better conclusion is harder.

The system produced closure under severe pressure because multiple institutions converged and enough officials accepted the limits of their roles.

That is resilience.

The fact that Congress later changed the law is evidence that resilience was not the same thing as invulnerability.

Losing without accepting loss

A democratic loser does not have to believe the winner is wise, honorable, or even politically legitimate.

A democratic loser may investigate, litigate, protest, recount, criticize, and organize for the next election.

What the loser cannot possess is an endless right to keep the last election open.

By January 2021, the American system had repeatedly answered the question of who won.

Trump did not accept that answer.

The institutions nevertheless transferred the power.

The next question for the book is what political actors learned from the places where that transfer almost depended on one official saying no.

Sources and notes

- National Archives — 2020 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2020>
- National Archives — 2020 Presidential Election Unofficial Certificates. <https://www.archives.gov/foia/2020-presidential-election-unofficial-certificates>
- CISA — Joint Statement from Elections Infrastructure Government Coordinating Council and Sector Coordinating Executive Committees, Nov. 12, 2020. <https://www.cisa.gov/news-events/news/joint-statement-elections-infrastructure-government-coordinating-council-election-infrastructure>
- Supreme Court — Texas v. Pennsylvania, Dec. 11, 2020 order. https://www.supremecourt.gov/orders/courtorders/1211202r_p860.pdf
- GovInfo — January 6th Committee Final Report. <https://www.govinfo.gov/collection/january-6th-committee-final-report>
- Mike Pence — Statement on the Electoral College Certification Process, Jan. 6, 2021. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/documents/statement-vice-president-mike-pence-the-electoral-college-certification-process>
- U.S. Senate — Electoral objection roll calls, Jan. 6–7, 2021. https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_lists/roll_call_vote_cfm.cfm?congress=117&session=1&vote=00001
- Public Law 117-328 — Electoral Count Reform and Presidential Transition Improvement Act provisions. <https://www.congress.gov/117/plaws/publ328/PLAW-117publ328.pdf>
- U.S. Senate — Second impeachment trial vote, Feb. 13, 2021. https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/vote1171/vote_117_1_00059.htm

CHAPTER 20

PROJECT 2025 AND THE PROFESSIONALIZATION OF PRESIDENTIAL POWER

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The second inauguration did not begin with discovery

In January 2017, the incoming Trump administration often learned the federal government by colliding with it.

Agencies had procedures the campaign had not mastered. Lawyers identified authorities and limits after decisions were announced. Personnel systems slowed replacement. Courts forced policies back through statutes and records. Senior officials sometimes refused demands the President expected them to carry out.

By January 2025, that kind of surprise had become a political problem to solve before inauguration.

Project 2025 is best understood in that context.

Project 2025 was not a hidden document waiting to be uncovered after the election.

The Heritage Foundation publicly launched the 2025 Presidential Transition Project in 2022. Its policy book was published. Its coalition was advertised. Its personnel effort was advertised. Its training academy was advertised. Heritage repeatedly described the existence of a 180-day playbook.

Calling the project secret makes its real significance harder to see.

It mattered because preparation itself had become an organized form of political power.

A movement prepared to enter the state

Think tanks have written policy papers for generations.

Political parties have maintained personnel networks. Presidential campaigns have built transition teams. Lawyers have prepared executive actions before inaugurations.

Democratic as well as Republican administrations draw on transition teams, think tanks, advocacy organizations, lawyers, former officials, and personnel networks. That common practice is the baseline, not a reason to flatten differences. Project 2025 is distinctive here because of the unusually explicit integration of policy, personnel recruitment, training, and a near-term implementation program around a conservative transition.

Project 2025 combined these familiar activities into a single transition architecture aimed at a future conservative administration.

The integration is what makes it analytically important.

Four pillars, one governing pipeline

Heritage described Project 2025 through four pillars: a policy agenda, personnel recruitment, training, and a 180-day playbook.

Those pillars answer four different questions.

What should the next administration do? Who should do it? Do those people understand the machinery? And how quickly can they begin?

A policy manifesto can answer only the first question.

Mandate for Leadership: The Conservative Promise ran to hundreds of pages and contained recommendations across the federal government.

It naturally became the public symbol of Project 2025 because policy proposals are easy to quote and easy to debate.

But the book alone cannot explain the project's institutional ambition.

A recommendation has no legal force until someone inside government turns it into an executive order, regulation, budget request, enforcement policy, litigation position, personnel action, or legislative proposal.

Project 2025 tried to reduce the distance between having an idea and having the administrative capacity to execute it.

That distance is where much of modern government lives.

A President may know what he wants and still not know which office can lawfully do it, which statute supplies authority, which rule requires notice and comment, which account contains the money, which official can sign, which employee can be removed, or which court will review the action.

Administrative knowledge is not neutral plumbing.

It is organized political capacity.

The personnel database was a governing instrument

Project 2025's personnel effort was designed to identify prospective conservatives who might serve in a future administration.

That effort should not be treated as an afterthought.

Presidential power is exercised through people. Cabinet secretaries, assistant secretaries, general counsels, regulatory administrators, budget officials, personnel officers, schedulers, litigators, and White House staff transform electoral promises into administrative acts.

A movement with a preassembled personnel pool begins governing with a different kind of advantage.

Heritage's Presidential Administration Academy was even more explicit.

The organization described training designed to teach future appointees how the executive branch operates and where its practical levers of power are located.

The phrase matters because it identifies the problem Project 2025 believed prior conservative administrations had faced.

Winning an election is not the same thing as knowing the government.

Learning before office changes Day One

Every incoming administration has to learn.

The question is when.

If recruitment, legal education, administrative training, and agency planning happen after inauguration, the permanent state has an informational advantage during the opening months.

If much of that learning happens before the election, inauguration can become the beginning of execution rather than the beginning of orientation.

That difference is not merely cosmetic.

Early months matter because political capital is concentrated, congressional coalitions may be temporary, vacancies are open, public expectations are high, and prior executive actions can often be reversed quickly.

A prepared administration can use that window more aggressively.

Project 2025 therefore tried to reduce what might be called transition latency: the time between electoral victory and effective administrative command.

Preparation has a democratic defense

The democratic case for reducing that latency is strong.

Citizens do not elect a President merely to watch career institutions continue the previous administration's priorities by inertia.

Elections are supposed to matter.

If permanent expertise becomes a practical veto over political change simply because new officials do not understand the system as well as those already inside it, democratic responsiveness weakens.

The same latency can serve a different purpose.

Delay can create time for legal review, factual correction, bureaucratic warning, congressional reaction, public scrutiny, and internal disagreement.

An administration capable of moving faster can implement lawful policy more effectively.

It can also make errors or overreach effective before corrective institutions have time to respond.

Project 2025 was not Trump's legal platform

The project was organized by Heritage and a coalition of conservative organizations, not by the Trump campaign as its formal governing platform.

Heritage repeatedly described it as preparation for the next conservative President.

That distinction should be preserved.

Otherwise every recommendation in the Mandate is falsely transformed into a personal campaign commitment by Donald Trump.

At the same time, the absence of formal campaign ownership does not prove the project was irrelevant to Trump II.

Political influence rarely travels only through signed agreements.

People move between think tanks and administrations. Legal theories migrate. Drafting language is reused. Former officials codify first-term experience and later return to office.

The correct task is therefore neither guilt by association nor denial by formal separation.

The causal question must be asked proposal by proposal

For each supposed Project 2025 implementation, four explanations are possible.

The second Trump administration may have adopted a recommendation directly. It may have converged on the same policy independently. The idea may have originated during Trump I and merely passed through Project 2025 on the way back into government. Or the resemblance may be superficial.

A serious chapter cannot replace those possibilities with one percentage.

Public efforts to calculate how much of Project 2025 has been implemented can be useful research tools.

But a percentage conceals methodological choices.

Is one recommendation one unit? What counts as partial implementation? Does an executive order count if a court blocks it? Does a budget request count if Congress rejects it? Does a similar policy count if its origin predates the project?

Without those answers, the precision of a percentage is mostly aesthetic.

A stronger method asks a series of narrower questions.

What did Project 2025 propose? Did the proposal exist earlier? What action did Trump II take? What legal vehicle carried the action? How closely do the texts correspond? Is there a personnel bridge? What is the action's current legal status? And how could a successor, Congress, an agency, or a court reverse it?

That method turns resemblance into evidence.

Trump I is the missing middle

The strongest genealogy of Project 2025 runs through the first Trump administration.

Many of the people and ideas associated with the project already had histories inside Republican government.

This matters because it changes the direction of causation.

Project 2025 was often not inventing a future policy from outside. It was codifying lessons learned by people who had already governed.

That makes Project 2025 less like a remote command center and more like a memory institution.

First-term conflicts could be converted into chapters, training sessions, personnel criteria, legal arguments, and transition checklists.

Experience that had once belonged to a handful of officials could be taught to a much larger pool.

Political memory became portable.

Russ Vought is the clearest bridge

Russ Vought illustrates the pattern.

He served as Director of the Office of Management and Budget during Trump I.

He later authored the Project 2025 chapter on the Executive Office of the President and became one of the most visible advocates of stronger presidential control over the administrative state.

Trump then returned him to OMB in the second administration.

Vought's trajectory provides a strong pathway of influence.

It does not prove that every OMB action in Trump II came from Project 2025.

His views existed before the project, and the President, Congress, courts, and other organizations supplied independent sources of policy.

The careful claim is more interesting anyway.

Project 2025 helped preserve and organize institutional knowledge that later returned to power through people who already possessed it.

OMB is small and enormous at the same time

The Office of Management and Budget does not administer most federal programs directly.

Yet it sits at the intersection of budget, regulation, management, legislative proposals, information policy, and presidential coordination.

Control of OMB gives a White House leverage over the government far beyond the number of people working inside the office.

Project 2025's attention to the Executive Office of the President reflected an understanding that horizontal control points can matter more than individual agencies.

Schedule F came before Project 2025

One of the most common causal mistakes concerns Schedule F.

Trump created Schedule F by executive order in October 2020.

That was before Project 2025.

The reform sought to identify certain career positions with confidential, policy-determining, policy-making, or policy-advocating functions and subject them to weaker ordinary removal protections.

The order arrived only weeks before the 2020 election.

It therefore had little time to become a fully implemented government-wide personnel regime before the transfer of power.

President Biden revoked it in January 2021.

Schedule F was not a Project 2025 invention.

It was an unfinished Trump I idea available to be studied, defended, modified, and prepared for another administration.

That is where the project becomes important.

The first term had experienced career employees, legal advisers, agency procedures, and protected positions as sources of friction.

Project 2025's administrative theory treated at least some of that friction as a structural problem.

Rather than waiting for individual conflicts, the movement could redesign the personnel framework before the next conflict occurred.

Schedule Policy/Career made the idea operational

On January 20, 2025, Trump restored the framework under the name Schedule Policy/Career.

OPM later completed rulemaking, and Executive Order 14410 in June 2026 transferred identified positions into the category.

The White House said approximately 8,000 policy-influencing positions were included.

This is one of the strongest cases in the book of an idea moving from late first-term experiment to second-term administrative infrastructure.

The label needs precision.

Schedule Policy/Career positions remain career positions.

The administration states that they continue to be filled through merit-based, nonpartisan processes.

They are not simply converted into political appointments.

The institutional change concerns the protections attached to those positions, especially the ease with which covered employees can be removed or subjected to adverse action.

If thousands of career officials had simply been turned into partisan appointees, the issue would be straightforward patronage.

That is not the reform actually described in the governing documents.

The more difficult question is whether policy-influencing career employees should retain strong procedural insulation from an elected President who believes they are obstructing lawful directives.

That is a genuine argument about the design of democratic administration.

A President is accountable for executive policy.

If officials in positions that shape policy can resist, delay, or redirect lawful presidential decisions while remaining exceptionally difficult to remove, voters may discover that changing Presidents does not change government.

Reducing removal protection can therefore be defended as a way to reconnect executive administration to electoral responsibility.

Career protection also creates space for professional judgment.

An official who knows that an unwelcome legal analysis, scientific finding, budget warning, or factual objection can lead quickly to removal will experience the hierarchy differently.

The danger is not merely that policy becomes more conservative or more liberal.

It is that the cost of saying 'the law does not permit this' or 'the evidence does not support this' can rise.

Schedule G is a different category

Trump II also created Schedule G in July 2025.

Schedule G is not Schedule Policy/Career under another name.

It is a noncareer category for policy-making or policy-advocating positions expected to change with presidential transitions.

That distinction matters because political responsiveness is explicit rather than introduced into career status.

Every modern President needs political appointees.

Elections would be nearly meaningless if the President inherited the previous administration's senior political team and could not replace it.

Schedule G therefore begins with a conventional democratic principle.

A winning administration needs people who are expected to implement its agenda.

The institutional question is not whether political positions should exist.

It is whether functions that once depended on career structures increasingly migrate toward positions defined by presidential policy alignment.

That movement can be observed and measured.

It is more analytically useful than calling everyone involved a loyalist.

Loyalty needs three meanings

Programmatic loyalty means willingness to implement the lawful agenda of the elected President.

Partisan loyalty means favoring the President's party in a function that may require neutrality.

Personal loyalty means treating the President's individual interests as superior to the law, evidence, or institutional role.

A democratic executive requires the first and should be suspicious of the other two where neutral functions are involved.

A database of people who share a conservative governing philosophy is not inherently a patronage system.

Political administrations normally recruit people who believe in their program.

The harder question is what the vetting rewards.

Competence and lawful programmatic alignment strengthen democratic government. Willingness to suppress inconvenient facts or legal limits weakens it.

Training can strengthen legality too

Professionalization does not necessarily make an administration more lawless.

A trained appointee may understand legal authority better than an improvising one.

Better knowledge can reduce careless executive orders, defective rulemaking, unlawful spending, and accidental violations of procedure.

Competence can make restraint as well as action more precise.

The risk appears when an administration becomes highly skilled at execution while weakening the institutions that generate internal correction.

That would produce an asymmetry: more executive governing capacity, less internal corrective capacity to hear that an action is unlawful, unsupported, or administratively destructive.

Project 2025 does not prove that result.

It makes the possibility empirically testable.

Independent agencies reveal the larger theory

Project 2025 mattered most where it organized already-existing theories of presidential control into a transition-ready governing program.

Trump's February 2025 order on independent regulatory agencies made that theory unusually explicit: executive power should be more directly supervised by the elected President, including through greater White House and OMB coordination.

The democratic defense is accountability. Agencies can exercise coercive and economically consequential authority, and voters cannot easily assign responsibility if important executive actors remain substantially insulated from presidential direction.

The democratic objection is functional independence. Adjudication, technical expertise, stable enforcement, and certain specialized institutions may lose value if every disagreement is treated as a presidential-control problem.

Project 2025 did not invent the unitary-executive tradition, the changing Supreme Court doctrine, deregulation, or the first Trump administration's personnel conflicts. Its distinctive contribution was organizational: it linked legal theory, personnel preparation, policy design, and transition logistics before inauguration.

DOGE illustrates the same distinction between convergence and causation. Its second-term structure strongly overlaps with a broader conservative project of reducing and centrally coordinating the administrative state, but similarity of objective is not proof that the specific structure was copied from the Mandate.

The causal claim should therefore remain disciplined: Project 2025 helped lower the cost of implementing a prepared theory of presidential administration. It did not manufacture every legal authority, every policy priority, or every second-term institution.

That distinction is essential because Chapter 21 will test what the administration actually did with the governing capacity that preparation helped create.

Immigration cannot be explained by Project 2025

Trump's restrictive immigration politics were central to his presidential campaigns long before Project 2025 existed.

The project contained extensive recommendations concerning DHS, detention, enforcement, asylum, and border policy.

Trump II later pursued an aggressive immigration agenda.

The overlap is substantial.

The causal monopoly is not.

Project 2025 can be understood as one technical preparation layer for a political objective Trump already owned.

That is a more plausible and more interesting influence mechanism.

The movement did not have to persuade Trump to care about immigration.

It could help prospective officials know how to use the agencies once he returned to power.

Project 2025 opposed federal diversity, equity, and inclusion programs and concepts.

Trump II moved rapidly to dismantle many DEI structures.

But anti-DEI politics had already spread across Republican campaigns, state governments, litigation organizations, and conservative institutions.

The relevant evidence supports convergence more strongly than exclusive Project 2025 causation.

The second administration's official campaign against what it calls weaponization of federal law enforcement has clear antecedents in Trump's first-term conflicts with Comey, Sessions, Rosenstein, Mueller, and later the 2020 election disputes.

Project 2025 contained its own Justice Department proposals.

But the grievance did not originate there.

The project again looks more like a codifying and staffing institution than a source of first principle.

The Department of Education is a useful implementation test

Project 2025 called for eliminating the Department of Education as a Cabinet-level department and returning greater authority to states and families.

Trump II pursued major reductions and restructuring efforts.

But Congress created the Department and many of its programs by statute.

A President can reduce, reorganize, redirect, and request abolition within legal limits.

Full abolition requires more than an executive announcement.

This is why a book about Project 2025 must resist announcement politics.

A President can sign an order asking an agency to move toward a goal.

That does not tell us whether statutory functions disappeared, whether appropriations continued, whether employees were actually removed, whether courts intervened, or whether Congress cooperated.

Implementation is an institutional state, not a press release.

The opposite mistake is to demand total fulfillment before recognizing change.

A department may remain legally intact while losing staff, grants, regulations, or functions.

A personnel category may survive litigation but be narrower than proposed.

A budget request may fail while administrative policy shifts anyway.

The correct unit is the specific institutional effect.

Project 2025 professionalized association itself

Earlier in this book, associations were described as democratic intermediaries between citizens and the state.

Project 2025 reveals another role.

Associations can prepare people to become the state.

Think tanks, advocacy groups, training networks, legal organizations, and personnel pipelines can convert civil-society organization into future executive capacity through elections.

Tocqueville would have recognized the importance of associations.

He would not have encountered a national network capable of training prospective federal appointees in executive orders, regulatory review, personnel law, communications strategy, grants, and agency management before a presidential transition.

Modern associations can therefore do more than petition government.

They can prebuild parts of a future administration.

People move from universities, unions, corporations, nonprofits, law firms, advocacy groups, and think tanks into government under every party.

That movement is not automatically capture.

Democracy requires channels through which ideas and people enter office.

Capture becomes a useful description only when influence is combined with domination, exclusion, or insulation from correction that can actually be demonstrated.

Project 2025 reduced the cost of political alternation

The administrative state preserves continuity partly because it is difficult to replace quickly.

That continuity protects expertise and stable execution.

It also raises the cost of changing direction after elections.

Project 2025's personnel and training infrastructure deliberately lowered that cost for a conservative administration.

A party that can take office with vetted personnel, drafted proposals, legal theories, and trained officials can translate victory into government more quickly.

That is a real capacity for democratic organization.

It may reduce the gap between what voters choose and what the executive can deliver.

Critics of Project 2025 should acknowledge that attraction rather than treating competence itself as suspicious.

Inertia is not a constitutional branch.

But it can function as practical resistance.

An unfamiliar administration must ask questions, consult career staff, wait for drafts, learn procedures, and discover constraints.

Removing that learning period makes government more capable.

It also removes one source of accidental caution.

A healthy democracy should not rely on presidential ignorance to protect itself.

If a policy is unlawful, law should stop it.

If a factual claim is false, professional processes should expose that.

If Congress opposes the expenditure, its appropriations power should matter.

If a court invalidates an action, the judgment should be obeyed.

Competence should make these boundaries clearer, not less necessary.

Corrigible competence

The best democratic standard for Project 2025 is therefore not whether it made the executive more capable.

It plainly tried to.

The standard is whether that capability remains corrigible.

Can an agency lawyer still produce an unwelcome legal conclusion? Can Congress block a statutory change? Can a court invalidate an action? Can a successor reverse the policy? Can facts survive personnel pressure?

Reversibility is not the same as harmlessness

A policy can be reversible and still cause major effects before reversal.

Employees can be fired. Grants can stop. Contracts can terminate. Rules can change behavior. Agencies can lose expertise.

Corrigibility therefore has a temporal dimension.

The question is not only whether correction is legally possible, but whether it can occur before the new structure becomes practically self-reinforcing.

The reform can be evaluated without guessing about motive.

Positions were identified. Rules were changed. Employee protections were altered. Courts can review legal challenges. Congress can legislate. A future President can pursue a different personnel policy subject to law.

The democratic argument can therefore be conducted through observable institutions rather than rhetoric.

The February 2025 order similarly creates a measurable shift.

White House and OMB influence over independent regulatory agencies can be compared before and after the order.

Statutes can constrain the shift. Courts can interpret removal protections. Congress can revise agency structures. A future administration can alter executive policy.

The central question is how much of the new arrangement becomes durable law rather than temporary presidential practice.

Professionalization can outlast one President

Personnel networks, training materials, legal theories, judicial precedents, and administrative knowledge do not disappear at noon on inauguration day four years later.

Even if a successor reverses specific executive orders, the governing ecosystem may retain the lessons.

That is why Project 2025 is more consequential than a normal campaign white paper.

It was designed to accumulate reusable statecraft.

Nothing about this method is inherently reserved for conservatives.

Democratic and progressive organizations can build their own personnel pipelines, legal theories, training systems, and transition infrastructure.

Once one coalition professionalizes administrative entry, rivals have incentives to do the same.

The result may be more competent alternation—and more aggressive alternation.

Every modern administration plans transitions.

Every major party recruits appointees.

Every ideological movement maintains policy organizations.

Those similarities should be acknowledged.

But they do not prove that all transition projects have the same breadth, personnel theory, or view of presidential control.

The distinctive Project 2025 claim is integrated breadth

Project 2025 linked policy recommendations to recruitment, training, and a near-term implementation architecture while openly arguing that conservative government needed to overcome the advantages of the permanent administrative state.

That combination is the part worth studying.

It professionalized not merely conservative policy but the governing capacity to take command of the executive branch.

A campaign can be prepared to win an election.

A transition team can be prepared to fill Cabinet posts.

Project 2025 aimed for something deeper: a movement prepared to occupy thousands of decision points, understand the administrative pathways between them, and begin acting at once.

That is presidential power before the President possesses it.

Focusing exclusively on the Mandate can make Project 2025 sound like a list of controversial policy positions.

The deeper institutional story concerns the conversion of knowledge into governing capacity.

A controversial recommendation that no one knows how to implement may remain rhetoric.

A trained network that understands law, personnel, budget, and process can transform even familiar ideas into immediate government.

The act-evidence: can prepared power still be corrected?

The chapter's primary act-evidence is simple.

Are implemented changes legally contestable and realistically reversible by a future administration or Congress?

That question does not assume centralization is illegitimate.

It asks whether centralization preserves the democratic corrective capacity to change course.

The strongest evidence of democratic reversibility often appears only after power changes hands.

Can a successor restore personnel protections? Can it reorganize political staffing? Can independent agencies recover prior operating practices? Can regulations be rewritten through lawful process?

Project 2025's democratic meaning therefore cannot be settled entirely from inside Trump II.

Some of its most important consequences are about what comes after.

Many Project 2025 goals ultimately require legislation or appropriations.

That dependence is not a technical inconvenience.

It is a democratic boundary.

A prepared President may move faster inside delegated authority, but he cannot convert a transition manual into statute without Congress where Congress is legally required.

Professionalized legal strategy can improve an administration's chances in litigation.

It cannot guarantee victory.

Courts continue to interpret statutes and the Constitution, sometimes expanding executive authority and sometimes limiting it.

The democratic question is whether judicial review remains capable of producing a binding correction before challenged policies become fait accompli.

Chapters 16, 18, and 19 repeatedly found that key safeguards involved officials willing to say the evidence did not support what the President wanted asserted.

A personnel system that increases policy responsiveness but preserves that corrective capacity is different from one that makes factual contradiction professionally dangerous.

Project 2025's deepest significance may therefore be measured not by how many policies it helped implement.

It may be measured by whether the professionalized executive still contains places where reality can answer power.

Project 2025 and the professionalization of presidential power

Project 2025 did not create Donald Trump's political agenda.

It did not secretly dictate every action of his second administration.

It did something more institutionally interesting.

It helped a conservative governing movement convert memory into preparation.

Policies were written. Personnel were recruited. Future appointees were trained. First-term conflicts were translated into theories of staffing, regulation, budgeting, and presidential control.

The result was not unlimited power.

It was lower transition friction at the moment power arrived.

Trump I had discovered where the federal government resisted.

Project 2025 and related institutions tried to make that knowledge reusable.

By the time Trump returned to office, the presidency came with a thicker map of the administrative terrain.

The next chapter asks what happened when that map was used in government.

Sources and notes

- Project 2025 — Mandate for Leadership: The Conservative Promise.
https://static.project2025.org/2025_MandateForLeadership_FULL.pdf

- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 Reaches 100 Coalition Partners, Feb. 20, 2024. <https://www.heritage.org/press/project-2025-reaches-100-coalition-partners-continues-grow-preparation-next-president>
- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 Continues Development of Presidential Administration Academy. <https://www.heritage.org/press/project-2025-continues-development-presidential-administration-academy>
- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 launch and personnel preparation, Apr. 14, 2022. <https://www.heritage.org/press/heritage-announces-2025-presidential-transition-project-hiring-paul-dans-direct-new>
- Trump White House Archive — Executive Order 13957, Creating Schedule F, Oct. 21, 2020. <https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/executive-order-creating-schedule-f-excepted-service/>
- White House — Executive Order 14410, Implementing Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/06/implementing-schedule-policy-career-in-the-excepted-service/>
- White House — Fact Sheet on Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/fact-sheets/2026/06/fact-sheet-president-donald-j-trump-increases-accountability-in-the-federal-workforce/>
- White House — Executive Order 14317, Creating Schedule G, July 17, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/07/creating-schedule-g-in-the-excepted-service/>
- White House — Ensuring Accountability for All Agencies, Feb. 18, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/02/ensuring-accountability-for-all-agencies/>
- White House — Implementing the President's Department of Government Efficiency Workforce Optimization Initiative, Feb. 11, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/02/implementing-the-presidents-department-of-government-efficiency-workforce-optimization-initiative/>

CHAPTER 2I

TRUMP II: GOVERNING WITH A MAP

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The presidency returned with a map

Donald Trump did not return to the White House in January 2025 as the same institutional novice who had arrived eight years earlier.

The federal government was no longer an unfamiliar terrain populated by surprising veto points.

His political network knew where civil-service protections were located, which offices controlled regulations, how OMB could coordinate agencies, which emergency statutes could substitute for failed legislation, which legal theories had survived appellate review, and which personnel conflicts had slowed the first term.

The second administration therefore began from a different institutional position.

The map did not eliminate the terrain. It reduced the time required to find a route through it.

The metaphor should not be confused with conspiracy.

Every competent administration builds maps of government.

Transition teams identify vacancies. Lawyers catalog authorities. Budget officials know which accounts are available. Agency heads learn which rules require notice and comment. White House staff know which decisions can be centralized and which require Congress.

What distinguishes Trump II is the degree to which lessons from Trump I were already organized into personnel, doctrine, litigation strategy, and cross-agency coordination before the first day.

Preparation changes tempo

In 2017, many conflicts began with improvisation.

In 2025, a larger share of the government's early moves appeared as coordinated sequences: presidential action, agency implementation, OMB or OPM guidance, expected litigation, emergency appeal, revised execution.

That difference matters because democratic correction takes time too.

A faster executive can make an action real before slower institutions decide whether it was lawful.

There is a democratic defense of that speed.

Voters elected a President with a clear program. The executive branch exists to execute.

A government that spends months discovering who can sign which document may be procedurally cautious but democratically inert.

Competence is not authoritarianism.

The democratic question begins when competence changes the independence, corrective capacity, or timeliness of the institutions that can correct it.

Three tests for every corrective institution

The first test is independence.

Can the institution reach a conclusion the President dislikes without needing presidential permission?

The second is corrective capacity.

Can that conclusion impose a real cost, change an outcome, stop an action, preserve evidence, or force reconsideration?

The third is timeliness.

Can correction occur before the challenged action becomes practically irreversible?

These three tests provide the structure for judging Trump II.

The civil service became an early test of the map

Chapter 20 traced the path from Schedule F to Schedule Policy/Career and distinguished it from the explicitly noncareer Schedule G category. Trump II turned that prepared personnel theory into governing practice.

The relevant institutional effect is narrower than the slogan of replacing a career bureaucracy with political appointees. Covered Schedule Policy/Career positions remain career and merit-based, but ordinary removal protections are weaker.

That changes the price of internal disagreement. A President gains greater leverage over some policy-influencing officials, while lawyers, scientists, economists, managers, and technical employees face a different incentive structure when delivering unwelcome judgments.

The democratic defense is electoral responsiveness: changing Presidents should be able to change executive policy.

The democratic risk is that factual or legal contradiction becomes easier to classify as disloyalty.

The test is therefore not whether a President can direct the executive branch. It is whether professional officials can still make role-based objections that survive long enough to enter the correction system.

Independent agencies became the next frontier

Trump's February 18, 2025 order, Ensuring Accountability for All Agencies, articulated a theory of executive control unusually plainly.

The order argued that officials who exercise executive power remain subject to presidential supervision and control.

It extended White House and OMB review over parts of the independent regulatory system and elevated presidential and Attorney General interpretations within the executive branch.

This was more than an isolated removal dispute.

It was a governing theory.

Independent agencies exercise powers that can be coercive, expensive, and politically consequential.

They regulate markets, labor relations, consumer protection, communications, competition, and other domains.

If the President is blamed for government but cannot meaningfully supervise important executive actors, political accountability becomes blurred.

Centralization can make it clearer who is responsible.

Some distance from the White House can also protect adjudication, professional expertise, stability, and enforcement consistency.

An independent commission is not useful merely because it can frustrate a President.

Its democratic value depends on whether insulation protects functions that should not change with every electoral cycle.

The correct question is therefore not whether independence is good in the abstract.

It is which functions require what kind of independence.

Trump v. Slaughter shifted the legal boundary

In June 2026, the Supreme Court decided *Trump v. Slaughter*.

The Court held that the Federal Trade Commission's for-cause removal restriction was unconstitutional as applied under the structure before it.

The decision significantly strengthened presidential removal authority over the FTC model and weakened the constitutional foundation on which similar independent-agency protections had long rested.

This was not merely the administration announcing a theory.

It was a change in controlling law.

On the same day, the Court denied the Government's request to lift an injunction protecting Federal Reserve Governor Lisa Cook while litigation over her attempted removal continued.

The Federal Reserve remained institutionally distinct.

The paired decisions matter because they resist a simple story.

Presidential control expanded sharply in one domain without becoming universal across every institution called independent.

Trump II operates in a judicial environment partly shaped by Trump I.

Three Supreme Court Justices appointed during the first term helped form the Court that now decides questions of removal power, agency authority, presidential immunity, and remedial scope.

That does not make the Court an arm of the President.

Judges do not take instructions from the White House.

It means first-term constitutional appointments changed the terrain inherited by the second term.

Trump v. CASA changed the remedial terrain

In June 2025, the Supreme Court decided *Trump v. CASA*.

The case arose from challenges to Trump's executive order narrowing the administration's interpretation of birthright citizenship.

The Court did not decide the underlying constitutional merits of that order.

It addressed the scope of equitable relief and concluded that universal injunctions exceeded the authority available to federal courts where relief extended beyond what was necessary to protect the parties.

A court may still find an executive action unlawful.

But the practical effect of that judgment changes if one district judge cannot automatically block the policy for everyone in the country.

Plaintiffs may need class actions, broader plaintiff groups, additional suits, or other procedural vehicles.

The legal right to challenge survives.

The coordination cost of nationwide correction rises.

Political language often treats a court win as if it settles every dimension of a dispute.

It may not.

A preliminary injunction is not a final merits judgment. A stay is not a final victory. A ruling on remedy is not a ruling on substantive legality.

Trump II's litigation record can be understood only if those stages remain separate.

Litigation became part of governance itself

A recurring second-term pattern is action followed by immediate litigation and emergency appellate review.

The administration often seeks stays rapidly, sometimes reaching the Supreme Court before a full merits record has developed below.

Opponents respond through states, nonprofits, individuals, unions, independent agencies, and other plaintiffs.

The lawsuit is no longer an exceptional aftershock.

It is part of the expected implementation pathway.

A challenged action can change reality while litigation proceeds.

Employees can leave. Grants can stop. Contracts can be canceled. Programs can close. Institutional knowledge can disperse.

A later judicial victory may restore formal authority without restoring the prior institution at the same cost.

Correction must therefore be measured in time as well as law.

Coordination accelerated implementation

Chapter 20 already established why OMB and cross-government personnel planning matter. Trump II demonstrated the operational consequence: horizontal institutions can make an executive program move across agencies faster than agency-by-agency improvisation.

OMB coordinated budgetary, regulatory, management, and presidential priorities, while DOGE became another cross-government mechanism touching staffing, contracts, grants, payments, and administrative reduction.

The precise genealogy of each DOGE mechanism matters less here than the effect on tempo. A coordinated executive can sequence actions, guidance, staffing decisions, and litigation positions before slower corrective institutions complete review.

That speed is not illegitimate by itself. It becomes democratically significant when institutional change becomes practically difficult to reverse before courts, Congress, states, or successors can act.

Workforce reduction is not abolition of statutory duties

A President can direct agencies to reduce nonrequired functions and pursue efficiencies within law.

He cannot erase a statutory program simply by declaring the agency unnecessary.

Congress creates duties, appropriates money, and sometimes specifies structures that remain binding until Congress changes them.

This is where executive reorganization meets legislative law.

GAO remained an active appropriations referee

The Government Accountability Office issued a series of decisions in 2025 applying the Impoundment Control Act to second-term spending actions.

GAO found violations in several matters, including cases involving NIH grants, Head Start funds, and the Institute of Museum and Library Services, while reaching different conclusions in other disputes.

That mixed record is valuable.

It demonstrates institutional analysis rather than automatic opposition.

GAO belongs to the legislative branch and has major authority and expertise in federal appropriations law.

Its legal opinions can identify statutory violations and shape congressional oversight.

They are not Article III judgments enforced through injunctions.

Independence and expertise therefore exist without the same direct coercive power a court possesses.

Spending is where congressional power becomes concrete

Congress can write grand policy principles.

Appropriations determine whether institutions can act.

When the executive withholds, delays, cancels, or redirects funds, the question is not merely administrative efficiency.

It is whether the President is executing the spending law Congress enacted or substituting a different budget.

Presidents possess statutory discretion in many programs.

OMB lawfully apports funds. Agencies make implementation choices. The Impoundment Control Act provides procedures for rescission proposals.

Not every delay or reduction is unlawful impoundment.

The evidence has to be program-specific.

In 2025, the administration also used the statutory rescission process and obtained congressional approval for a rescission package.

That matters because it shows the President did not always attempt unilateral control of spending.

An aggressive executive can still ask Congress to change the law and receive an answer.

When Congress agrees, the increase in presidential capacity is produced through constitutional cooperation.

Pocket-rescission disputes exposed another dimension.

If funds are withheld near the end of a fiscal year, time can expire before Congress completes review.

GAO emphasized that the Impoundment Control Act does not authorize withholding beyond an appropriation's availability merely because a statutory review period has not ended.

The calendar itself becomes part of the separation of powers.

Shrinking institutions can create path dependence

Even when courts or Congress later preserve a statutory function, the path back may be expensive.

Employees may have departed. Contracts may have ended. Offices may have closed. Expertise may have migrated elsewhere.

A future administration may possess legal authority to rebuild while lacking the same institutional material it inherited.

This is why practical reversibility belongs beside legal reversibility.

Immigration remained the clearest continuity

Trump II's immigration program is not best understood as a new Project 2025 invention.

Immigration restriction, stronger border enforcement, removal, detention, and opposition to sanctuary policies had been central to Trump's politics since 2015.

The second-term difference is primarily administrative: faster coordination, more prepared legal strategies, wider use of emergency and military-support authorities, and a willingness to push statutory boundaries quickly.

Birthright citizenship became a constitutional test

Executive Order 14160 asserted a narrower interpretation of birthright citizenship for specified future births.

States, organizations, and individuals challenged the order immediately.

Trump v. CASA changed the remedial framework for those suits without deciding the underlying constitutional question.

This distinction remains essential because the merits were decided later in a different case.

On June 30, 2026, the Supreme Court decided Trump v. Barbara and held that children born in the United States to parents who are unlawfully or temporarily present are citizens at birth under the Fourteenth Amendment. The Court therefore resolved the substantive constitutional issue against the interpretation embodied in Executive Order 14160.

The sequence matters institutionally. CASA narrowed one form of nationwide remedial relief in 2025; Barbara then reached the merits in 2026. A narrower remedy did not make substantive judicial review disappear.

Federalism supplied opposing institutions

States again became major litigants against federal executive policy.

That is not unique to Democratic states under Trump.

Republican states repeatedly sued Democratic administrations too.

The structural question is whether states retain enough independent authority, standing, resources, and courts to create a real second line of constitutional conflict.

States can overreach.

They can lose in court. They can use lawsuits strategically. Their own governments can suppress rights or evade law.

Federalism is corrigible only when state resistance is itself subject to judicial review and elections.

Redundancy is not immunity.

Los Angeles tested federal military authority

In June 2025, Trump invoked 10 U.S.C. §12406 to federalize members of the California National Guard amid protests surrounding federal immigration enforcement.

California challenged the move.

The Ninth Circuit initially stayed a district-court order that would have returned control to the state while the first appeal proceeded.

The posture later changed. In September 2025, the district court held that the use of troops for specified domestic law-enforcement functions violated the Posse Comitatus Act. By December, further injunctive relief required the return of remaining California Guard members to state control; the Government withdrew its stay request, and the Ninth Circuit vacated the remaining administrative stay. In 2026, related appeals continued to generate mootness and dismissal questions rather than a simple final merits endpoint.

The dispute exposed another part of the map: military authority, federalism, and domestic law enforcement.

A President can have authority to federalize or deploy forces while particular missions remain legally restricted.

The Posse Comitatus Act and related doctrines regulate direct military participation in civilian law enforcement.

The legality of deployment therefore cannot be used to prove the legality of every act performed after deployment.

Trump II repeatedly generates these fine-grained boundary questions.

The Justice Department became more programmatic

Trump I's conflicts with federal law enforcement were often personal and reactive: Comey, Sessions, Rosenstein, Mueller.

Trump II converted part of that history into formal policy.

The executive order on weaponization, Attorney General memoranda, and the Weaponization Working Group made retrospective review of prior enforcement an official governmental mission.

That is institutionalization of a political grievance.

An administration is allowed to investigate prior misconduct and change enforcement priorities.

The existence of a review program does not prove that every resulting investigation is retaliatory.

The analysis must return to the same case-level evidence used earlier: predicate, evidence, charging standard, comparator, supervisory intervention, judicial review.

The Justice Manual still publishes principles concerning White House communications, prosecutorial regularity, political association, and election-sensitive decisions.

Those rules do not guarantee actual compliance.

Their continued existence does matter.

Claims that all institutional prosecutorial constraint disappeared have to explain the difference between published policy and observed practice rather than assume one from rhetoric.

The President appoints senior Justice Department leadership.

Career prosecutors and investigators work within that hierarchy.

If political leadership can remove or reassign people who reach unwelcome conclusions, the internal cost of factual or legal disagreement changes.

That is why the personnel story and the justice story cannot be separated completely.

Press access became a distinct correction issue

The Associated Press dispute concerned physical access to limited-access presidential events after the organization continued using its own editorial terminology for the Gulf of Mexico rather than the administration's preferred name.

The White House did not ban AP from publishing or reporting generally.

The legal controversy concerned access decisions and alleged viewpoint discrimination.

That narrower framing is more accurate and more democratically significant.

Presidential events have limited space.

Presidential administrations of both parties have fought with news organizations, managed pools, restricted interviews, and complained about coverage. That history establishes a common structural tension over access; it does not make every conflict a valid analogue. The relevant comparison changes when government access is allegedly conditioned on an outlet's independent editorial choice, because viewpoint discrimination is a different legal and democratic claim from ordinary logistical selection.

Administrations must select which journalists enter pools, offices, and restricted events.

The First Amendment question becomes sharper when access appears conditioned on an outlet's independent editorial choices rather than logistical or neutral criteria.

That dispute tests whether the executive can use scarcity to discipline an external information institution.

Journalists cannot veto executive orders.

They can expose contradictions, preserve records, compare claims, and communicate judicial or agency findings outside presidential chains of command.

Their corrective capacity is informational rather than coercive.

But a more internally coordinated executive increases the importance of institutions capable of producing public contradiction from outside.

Historical narrative also became an executive policy domain

In March 2025, the administration issued an executive order concerning the Smithsonian, federal monuments, and presentation of American history.

It described its objective as restoring truth and rejecting ideologically distorted narratives.

By July 2026, a second executive order followed a White House review of the National Museum of American History and directed federal officials to use available authorities to encourage corrective action.

The Smithsonian's governance is unusual.

It has statutory structure, federal support, a Board of Regents, and institutional traditions that do not map neatly onto ordinary presidential supervision.

The President can influence appointments, funding proposals, executive policy, and other federal levers.

That does not mean he possesses the same direct command relationship that exists with a Cabinet secretary.

Presidents commission monuments. Congress funds museums. Agencies choose exhibits. National anniversaries receive official narratives. Grants support scholarship.

The existence of governmental influence over history is not new.

The democratic question is whether public historical institutions retain enough professional and plural authority to preserve evidence and revision against the preferences of one administration.

Control does not require a censorship order.

Funding, appointments, exhibit review, grant conditions, contracts, and use of federal property can all affect institutional choices.

The relevant legal authority must be traced mechanism by mechanism.

Persuasion, conditional funding, management, and direct compulsion are not the same act.

Museums, archives, universities, and professional organizations preserve records that future governments and citizens can revisit.

Their democratic value is therefore partly temporal.

A national narrative becomes less corrigible when evidence disappears or professional institutions lose the capacity to maintain competing interpretations.

That is why historical institutions belong in a chapter about correction.

Congress remains powerful on paper and in practice

Congress still controls legislation, appropriations, confirmations, oversight, and impeachment.

Trump II did not abolish any of those constitutional powers.

Yet the practical force of Congress depends heavily on partisan alignment.

A co-partisan majority may increase executive capacity through cooperation rather than confrontation.

In 2025, the Republican Senate changed procedures to facilitate confirmation of groups of executive nominees.

This was not a unilateral presidential seizure of appointment power.

The Senate altered its own procedures.

Presidential capacity increased through action by another constitutional institution.

Separation of powers does not require Congress to oppose the President.

Congress can legitimately help an administration govern.

Tax laws, rescissions, confirmations, appropriations, and structural legislation can all increase executive capacity through democratic lawmaking.

The harder test is whether legislators preserve a willingness to impose costs when the President crosses a boundary they would condemn under the other party.

Presidential power often grows through old statutes rather than new executive invention.

Emergency laws, immigration authorities, trade statutes, defense provisions, and management laws can leave broad discretion in the executive.

When Congress refuses to update those delegations, it is partly responsible for the room later Presidents use.

Emergency power remained a substitution tool

Trump II used emergency declarations and delegated statutes in immigration, trade, energy, and other areas.

An emergency declaration itself does not supply every substantive power.

The map consists of the statutes that become available once the condition is declared or otherwise satisfied.

A prepared Presidency knows where those statutes are.

The tariff decisions show correction without policy substitution

In February 2026, the Supreme Court rejected the administration's use of IEEPA as authority for the sweeping tariffs before it.

The decisions did not forbid tariffs as a policy.

They rejected that statutory route.

Other trade statutes remain available where Congress has expressly delegated tariff authority.

This is judicial friction at its most precise: the court closes one legal road without choosing national trade policy itself.

When one authority fails, an administration that knows the legal terrain can search quickly for another.

That is not automatically evasion.

Congress often creates overlapping authorities.

The democratic boundary is whether the substitute route genuinely authorizes the action or merely relabels what the court already rejected.

If every adverse judgment produces the identical policy under a cosmetically different legal label, judicial review can become ceremonial.

If the revised policy rests on a different statute, different findings, or narrower scope, adaptation may be legitimate.

The evidence lies in the legal substance of the new route.

Rhetoric is not the metric

Trump's attacks on judges, journalists, agencies, political opponents, career officials, and institutions are politically important.

They can shape incentives and public trust.

But institutional analysis cannot stop there.

The decisive question is what action follows the rhetoric.

A President may denounce a judge and still obey the judgment.

He may call a ruling illegitimate and still appeal through ordinary channels.

That behavior is democratically different from refusing to comply with a binding final order.

This distinction should be preserved even when rhetoric is extreme.

Trump II's rapid litigation produces many interim rulings.

Emergency stays determine what happens while the case continues.

They can be enormously consequential.

They do not necessarily settle the underlying legal question.

Every live dispute needs a date and a procedural status.

The system is changing unevenly

Some civil-service protections have weakened.

Presidential removal authority over some independent-agency officials has strengthened.

Universal injunctions have been narrowed.

At the same time, states still sue, courts still rule, GAO still issues adverse appropriations opinions, Congress still legislates, and external information institutions still generate contradiction.

The corrective network is neither intact in its old form nor absorbed by the presidency.

A journalist can reveal a contradiction but cannot enjoin an executive order.

GAO can identify an appropriations-law violation but cannot exercise the same coercive authority as an Article III court.

An inspector can document wrongdoing after damage is done.

Transparency matters, but it should not be confused with direct enforceability.

Congress has enormous constitutional power.

A Senate majority can block nominees. A House majority can refuse appropriations. Congress can legislate against a President.

If partisan incentives make those tools unusable against a co-partisan President, formal corrective capacity remains while political independence weakens.

The institution exists. The check does not necessarily operate.

A court that restores a program two years after its staff has dispersed may be legally effective and practically incomplete.

A successor who recreates an agency after expertise has left may possess authority without continuity.

A disclosure that arrives after an election can be true and still come too late to inform accountability.

Timeliness is therefore part of the architecture of democratic control.

Electoral correction remains the ultimate temporal check

Midterm elections can change congressional control.

Presidential elections can change executive direction.

State elections can replace governors, attorneys general, secretaries of state, and legislators.

Primaries can alter parties from within.

Election remains the widest corrective mechanism because it can replace the officials who control all the others.

An election cannot be scheduled every time a controversy appears.

That is why democracies require institutions capable of correcting government between elections.

Trump II is a particularly useful stress test because a highly prepared executive can act faster than electoral correction can arrive.

The question is what remains in the interval.

Some second-term structures may be reversible by a future President.

Others may become embedded through statute, rulemaking, judicial precedent, personnel departure, contract termination, or institutional attrition.

Formal presidential reversibility is therefore only the beginning of the analysis.

Can the old institutional capacity actually be rebuilt?

The strongest defense of Trump II

Trump won the 2024 election.

His administration entered with clearer priorities, more experienced personnel, stronger transition preparation, and a coherent theory of how to direct the executive branch.

That can be understood as democratic learning.

Voters selected a President, and the President became more capable of turning electoral victory into government.

The same learning identifies the nodes that previously produced refusal.

Personnel protection can be weakened. Independent removal protections can be challenged. Remedial rules can become narrower. OMB can centralize execution. Spending can be accelerated through timing. External information institutions can face access or funding pressure.

The risk is not merely stronger presidential action.

It is the weakening of the routes by which stronger presidential action can still be corrected.

The relevant question is corrigibility, not a regime label

Calling the United States authoritarian or nonauthoritarian does not answer the institutional questions this book has been asking.

Democratic correction can weaken gradually.

It can remain strong in courts and weak in Congress, strong in states and weak inside agencies, strong formally and slow practically.

The better question is whether enough independent routes still exist to force power back into law, fact, and electoral accountability.

Seven routes of correction

Administrative correction comes from internal legal, factual, and professional judgment.

Judicial correction comes from reasoned review backed by binding authority.

Congressional correction comes from money, legislation, appointments, investigations, and impeachment.

Federal correction comes from states with their own powers and litigating capacity.

Informational correction comes from press, inspectors, archives, professional institutions, and public records.

Electoral correction comes from voters.

Successor correction comes from the ability of a future government to undo what the current one has built.

A democracy that relies only on courts becomes a government by litigation.

A democracy that relies only on elections leaves too much unreviewed between them.

A democracy that relies only on internal professional norms becomes vulnerable to personnel replacement.

A democracy that relies only on Congress can fail under party alignment.

The American system has historically depended on overlap.

Trump II is important because it pressures several routes at once.

Personnel reform affects internal correction. Removal doctrine affects independent agencies. CASA changes judicial remedies, while Barbara shows that merits review can still follow. Spending disputes test Congress and GAO. Federal enforcement activates state litigation. Press-access and museum disputes test information institutions.

Concentration is therefore not one dramatic act.

It can emerge through the cumulative weakening of redundancy.

The map still contains obstacles

Trump II has not erased the American constitutional system.

Courts continue to issue adverse judgments. States continue to sue. GAO continues to find violations. Congress can still legislate and control money. Independent institutions continue to contest presidential authority. Elections remain scheduled.

The map contains obstacles.

The question is whether those obstacles still alter the route or merely slow it.

A court that changes nothing is not much of a check.

A congressional hearing that produces no institutional consequence may expose but not correct.

A state lawsuit that never reaches effective relief may symbolize resistance without changing federal action.

The measure is whether an institution can force delay, redesign, compliance, payment, reinstatement, disclosure, legislative change, or political loss.

An institution is not meaningfully independent if every adverse conclusion destroys the official who issued it and prevents successors from repeating the act.

Durability therefore belongs alongside independence in judging whether correction can survive.

Can a judge rule again? Can a prosecutor refuse again? Can a civil servant report again? Can a journalist retain access to evidence? Can a state continue litigating?

Correction requires repeatable corrective capacity, not one heroic moment.

The map must contain roads back

A democracy can tolerate a powerful Presidency.

It can tolerate rapid government.

It can tolerate central coordination, political staffing, executive orders, emergency litigation, and aggressive use of delegated authority.

What it cannot safely lose is the ability to return.

Power must still be reversible through law, elections, institutions, and preserved evidence.

Trump II as a stress test

The second Trump administration therefore should not be judged by whether it resembles the first or whether its rhetoric sounds more extreme.

It should be judged by a harder institutional standard.

Does greater executive preparation make government more capable while leaving independent routes of correction intact?

Or does preparation become a method for shrinking the very institutions that allow a democracy to recover from error?

Part V has followed Trump from outsider candidacy to first-term friction, rejected electoral defeat, inter-term preparation, and second-term institutional coordination.

The case study has now reached its limit.

The next task is no longer to ask what Trump does.

It is to identify, one by one, the institutions that still possess a real corrective capacity to say no.

Sources and notes

- White House — Executive Order 14410, Implementing Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/06/implementing-schedule-policy-career-in-the-excepted-service/>
- White House — Fact Sheet on Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/fact-sheets/2026/06/fact-sheet-president-donald-j-trump-increases-accountability-in-the-federal-workforce/>
- White House — Executive Order 14317, Creating Schedule G, July 17, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/07/creating-schedule-g-in-the-excepted-service/>
- White House — Ensuring Accountability for All Agencies, Feb. 18, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/02/ensuring-accountability-for-all-agencies/>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Slaughter, June 29, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-332_qn12.pdf
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Cook, June 29, 2026. <https://www.supremecourt.gov/>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. CASA, June 27, 2025. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_5426.pdf
- Government Accountability Office — Impoundment Control Act decisions. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/appropriations-law/impoundment-control-act>
- Government Accountability Office — Institute of Museum and Library Services, B-337375, June 16, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337375>
- Ninth Circuit — Newsom v. Trump stay opinion, June 19, 2025. <https://cdn.ca9.uscourts.gov/datastore/opinions/2025/06/19/25-3727.pdf>
- White House — Restoring Truth and Sanity to American History, Mar. 27, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/03/restoring-truth-and-sanity-to-american-history/>

- White House — Restoring Trust in the Smithsonian Institution, July 24, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/07/restoring-trust-in-the-smithsonian-institution-eo61/>
- D.C. Circuit — Associated Press v. Budowich order materials. <https://media.cadc.uscourts.gov/orders/docs/2025/06/25-5109LDSN3.pdf>

Supreme Court — Trump v. Barbara, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_4hdj.pdf

Northern District of California — Newsom v. Trump, Opinion Granting Injunctive Relief, Sept. 2, 2025. <https://cand.uscourts.gov/sites/default/files/wp-content/uploads/Newsom-v-Trump-176-PCA-Order-Granting-Injunctive-Relief.pdf>

PART VI

**CAN THE SYSTEM STILL CORRECT
ITSELF?**

CHAPTER 22

THE INSTITUTIONS THAT STILL SAY NO

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

A no that matters

Power is criticized every day.

Presidents are denounced by columnists, mocked by comedians, opposed by legislators, contradicted by experts, sued by states, investigated by inspectors, and challenged by citizens.

Most of that activity is politically meaningful.

Not all of it is correction.

A democratic correction begins when a disagreement is attached to an institution capable of changing what happens next.

Who can say no?

Can that institution reach the no independently?

Can the no impose a real cost?

Can the same institution say no again tomorrow?

Those questions provide a more useful map of democratic resilience than a list of constitutional powers.

Correction is a sequence

Before any institution can correct power, someone has to detect a possible problem.

The claim must then be verified. Evidence has to move to someone with authority. A decision has to follow. Finally, something has to change.

Detection, verification, transmission, decision, repair.

Different institutions occupy different places in that sequence.

A newspaper can reveal an abuse. An inspector general can document it. GAO can issue a legal opinion. Congress can hold a hearing. A court can issue an injunction.

These are not equivalent acts.

The first lesson of this chapter is therefore simple.

Democratic criticism is abundant. Democratic compulsion is scarce.

The executive branch contains its own correction mechanisms.

Agency lawyers identify legal limits. Career officials preserve institutional memory. Inspectors general audit and investigate. Ethics officers apply recusal rules. Budget officials identify unavailable funds. Scientists report measurements that political officials may dislike.

Internal correction is often the fastest form because it can operate before policy becomes public.

The same feature that makes internal correction fast makes it fragile.

It exists inside a hierarchy ultimately led by the President.

Leadership can reorganize offices, change reporting lines, reassign officials, replace removable appointees, alter personnel categories, or ignore recommendations where law permits.

Internal correction is therefore strongest when professional roles are backed by durable procedures rather than personal courage alone.

Courts: the strongest external compulsion

Federal courts possess a power most watchdogs, journalists, and associations do not: they can issue binding judgments within their jurisdiction.

That does not make courts anti-presidential institutions. The paired June 2026 outcomes in *Trump v. Slaughter* and *Trump v. Cook* illustrate independent adjudication precisely because presidential power expanded in one setting while a different institutional boundary remained protected in another.

Courts are also reactive. They need litigants, jurisdiction, legal claims, records, and time.

Trump v. CASA adds the remedial dimension: a court can remain independent while the breadth of available relief narrows.

The later merits decision in *Trump v. Barbara* is an equally important correction to the picture. In June 2026, the Court held that children born in the United States to parents unlawfully or temporarily present are citizens at birth under the Fourteenth Amendment. *CASA* had narrowed one remedial route; it had not converted the executive position into controlling constitutional law.

The judicial correction test is therefore functional rather than ideological: can an independent court hear the dispute, issue an adverse judgment when law requires it, and have that judgment obeyed?

Congress: the broadest formal toolkit

If courts possess the strongest external coercive judgment, Congress possesses the broadest menu of constitutional tools.

It can legislate, appropriate, investigate, subpoena, confirm, refuse confirmation, restructure agencies, amend delegations, impeach, and create new oversight institutions.

No other body can alter so many parts of the governing architecture at once.

Congress's formal powers do not disappear when one party controls the presidency and both chambers.

What can disappear is the willingness to use them.

Party alignment can turn a constitutionally powerful legislature into a weak corrective institution without changing a single clause of the Constitution.

Intra-party correction is the stronger test

An opposition-controlled committee investigating a President of the other party proves that Congress has political conflict.

A co-partisan committee investigating its own President proves something more difficult.

The most meaningful congressional no is often the one that costs the member something inside the member's own coalition.

Congress can express disapproval through resolutions and hearings.

Money is different.

A refusal to appropriate, a statutory prohibition on use of funds, or a rescission decision can change what the executive is actually able to do.

Appropriations are among Congress's most tangible corrective powers.

Congress frequently writes broad programs and grants agencies implementation discretion.

OMB apportions funds. Agencies choose timing and method. Presidents propose rescissions. Statutes create exceptions.

The question in any spending conflict is therefore not whether Congress controls money in the abstract.

It is what the specific law requires.

GAO gives Congress technical memory

GAO gives Congress a professional institution for audits, evaluations, and appropriations-law judgments outside executive command.

Its 2025 Impoundment Control Act work is useful because the record was mixed: some disputes produced violation findings while others did not.

That mixed pattern is better evidence of institutional judgment than a body that simply opposes the President.

GAO's limitation is enforcement. Its conclusions can shape congressional action, agency behavior, litigation, and public understanding, but they are not Article III injunctions.

It is therefore strong at verification and transmission and more dependent on other institutions for repair.

Inspectors General: access from the inside

Inspectors general occupy an unusual position.

They sit inside executive agencies but are designed to conduct independent and objective audits, investigations, and reviews.

They have internal access that Congress, courts, and journalists often lack.

They also report externally, including to Congress.

An inspector general is not a fourth branch.

The office is embedded in an agency and often depends on agency systems, records, and cooperation.

At the same time, statutory reporting duties, public reports, professional standards, and congressional relationships create distance from ordinary political management.

That hybrid location is the institution's strength.

Most presidentially appointed inspectors general remain removable by the President, subject to statutory procedures.

Congress strengthened those procedures in 2022 by requiring advance notice and a substantive, case-specific rationale.

The law did not make all inspectors general removable only for cause.

The January 2025 removals tested that design

In January 2025, the Trump administration terminated more than a dozen confirmed and acting inspectors general.

CRS reported that the removals appeared not to follow the statutory advance-notice and waiting requirements.

The Council of the Inspectors General on Integrity and Efficiency also questioned the legal sufficiency of the actions.

Presidential conflict over inspector-general removal did not begin in 2025. Reagan removed all sitting inspectors general at the beginning of his administration in 1981; Obama removed Gerald Walpin in 2009; Trump removed or replaced several inspectors general in 2020; and Biden notified Congress of the removal of Railroad Retirement Board Inspector General Martin Dickman in 2024. CRS treats removal controversy as a recurring cross-administration problem. That history does not erase the 2025 distinction: the number of simultaneous removals and the apparent absence of the statutory advance notice made the episode a separate stress test of the post-2022 protections.

The episode exposed a basic weakness: a watchdog may investigate the executive while its leadership remains vulnerable to executive removal.

The controversy generated renewed congressional proposals to strengthen inspector-general removal protection.

That is a form of democratic learning even when legislation does not immediately pass.

A crisis identifies a weak point. Legislators propose to harden it. The political system decides whether the repair is worth the cost in presidential control.

At the research cutoff, bills proposing stronger for-cause protections for inspectors general had been introduced.

They were not the same thing as enacted law.

Democratic repair has to be measured by institutional change, not by the existence of a bill.

An IG can discover contract irregularities, retaliation, waste, misconduct, or program failures before any outside plaintiff has enough information to sue.

That makes inspectors general especially strong at detection and verification.

Their weakness appears later.

Recommendations frequently require agency leadership, Congress, DOJ, or another institution to create repair.

Whistleblowers decentralize detection

No inspector general, congressional committee, or journalist can see everything.

Whistleblowers can bring hidden information into formal channels.

Their democratic role is evidentiary.

A disclosure is not a verdict. It is a claim that becomes useful when a system can verify it.

One courageous employee can expose a scandal.

A durable democratic system cannot depend on one courageous employee.

Potential whistleblowers must believe protected channels will still exist after the first person uses them.

Repeatability is therefore more important than heroism.

Career professionals prevent errors before they become crises

Career civil servants are often discussed either as faceless bureaucracy or heroic resistance.

Both images are misleading.

Their democratic value is more ordinary: they know statutes, systems, data, contracts, field operations, technical standards, and institutional history.

They can catch mistakes before a President ever hears about them.

A civil servant who refuses a lawful policy because of partisan disagreement is not performing constitutional correction.

Career expertise becomes corrective when it identifies a legal prohibition, unavailable appropriation, false factual assumption, safety risk, or procedural defect within the employee's professional role.

The distinction is essential.

Professional judgment is shaped by incentives.

An official who knows that an unwelcome legal or technical conclusion can produce immediate removal will behave differently from one protected against arbitrary dismissal.

That is why civil-service design belongs inside democratic architecture rather than merely employment law.

Personnel design changes the price of internal correction

Chapter 21 established the current Schedule Policy/Career framework. Its importance here is institutional rather than genealogical.

Weaker ordinary removal protection for some policy-influencing career positions may increase presidential responsiveness while also raising the professional cost of delivering an unwelcome legal, scientific, budgetary, or technical conclusion.

Internal correction is fast because it can stop an error before litigation or public controversy. It is vulnerable because the correcting official remains inside the executive hierarchy.

The relevant question is whether role-based professional contradiction remains repeatable under the new personnel incentives.

States are not interest groups

Federalism creates a different kind of corrective institution.

States possess their own elected governments, legislatures, courts, budgets, administrative systems, lawyers, and police powers.

A state opposing Washington is not merely lobbying the federal government.

It is another government.

State attorneys general have become permanent counter-litigants

Republican and Democratic state attorneys general have both built sophisticated litigation practices against administrations of the opposing party.

That pattern is now structural.

It provides a decentralized supply of plaintiffs capable of taking federal executive action to court rapidly.

State correction does not require state victory

California's 2025 National Guard litigation illustrates the federalism point without requiring a full second narration of the dispute.

The state challenged federal action, obtained judicial review, and did not immediately prevail at the appellate stage.

Federalism performed a corrective function because an independently elected government could force Washington to defend its authority in another independent institution.

States remain corrigible too; redundancy is valuable because it multiplies forums, not because state governments are inherently more democratic.

FOIA makes evidence retrievable

The Freedom of Information Act creates a repeatable statutory right to request federal agency records subject to exemptions.

FOIA does not guarantee immediate transparency.

It creates a legal path through which citizens, journalists, organizations, litigants, and researchers can force the executive to process demands for evidence.

Backlogs, classification review, exemptions, consultation, redaction, fees, and litigation can make disclosure take months or years.

A record released after the relevant decision may still matter historically.

It may arrive too late to correct the decision itself.

FOIA is strong on repeatability and weaker on timeliness.

Disclosure alone does not change a statute or restore a fired employee.

Evidence matters when it reaches a court, Congress, an inspector, a prosecutor, a voter, or an organization capable of sustained pressure.

Transparency is often the bridge between hidden conduct and a stronger corrective mechanism.

Journalism is an external detection network

Independent journalism does not need presidential permission to reach an editorial conclusion.

Reporters can compare claims, interview sources, obtain records, analyze data, and preserve contradictions in public view.

The press cannot invalidate an executive order.

It can make the facts necessary for other institutions to act.

The Associated Press controversy under Trump II involved access to certain limited presidential events and alleged viewpoint discrimination.

It was not a general prohibition on AP reporting.

That narrower description matters because democratic analysis should not need exaggeration to identify an institutional problem.

The First Amendment does not guarantee a profitable newsroom.

Local-news decline, fragmented audiences, dependence on platforms, legal costs, shrinking investigative capacity, and public distrust can reduce the practical ability to expose government.

Formal freedom and practical journalistic capacity are not the same thing.

Associations turn information into durable action

Unions, nonprofits, churches, professional organizations, legal groups, universities, advocacy networks, and movements can sustain attention after the news cycle moves on.

They can fund litigation, represent affected people, lobby Congress, preserve expertise, train organizers, and mobilize voters.

Associational life is one of the mechanisms through which weak individuals become stronger collective actors.

Organizations can be wealthy, exclusionary, ideologically closed, or dominated by narrow interests.

Civil society is not neutral simply because it is outside government.

The same organizational capacity that allows associations to challenge power can also amplify inequality.

Professional organizations preserve standards across administrations

Scientific, legal, medical, engineering, academic, historical, and other professional bodies can maintain standards that do not automatically change with presidential elections.

They do not possess sovereign authority.

They preserve reference points against which official claims can be tested.

Archives preserve future correction

A democracy can correct only what it can still know.

Archives, libraries, universities, museums, repositories, and professional publications preserve evidence that outlasts political leadership.

Record preservation is therefore not merely cultural administration.

It is a condition of successor correction.

Trump II's efforts to influence federal historical presentation demonstrate that national memory can itself become an object of executive policy.

Presidents have always shaped commemoration.

The corrective question is whether institutions preserve enough evidence and professional plurality for later reinterpretation.

Elections remain the broadest correction

Courts can invalidate one policy. Congress can change one law. An inspector can expose one failure.

An election can change the people who control several institutions at once.

Presidents, governors, attorneys general, legislators, and local officials can all be replaced through voting.

Election is broad but slow.

A President can act every day. House elections occur every two years. Presidential elections occur every four.

Democracy therefore cannot rely on elections alone to correct unlawful or dangerous government in real time.

Midterms can awaken dormant constitutional powers

The 2018 midterms showed how changing control of one chamber could transform the use of subpoena power, committee investigations, and impeachment without changing constitutional text.

The same structural possibility remains under any administration.

Voters do not merely replace people. They can change which formal powers become active.

Legislators do not answer only to general-election voters.

They also answer to party electorates that may punish resistance to a popular President of the same party.

Primary incentives can therefore weaken congressional independence.

They can also remove legislators seen as too deferential.

Correction inside parties is part of the institutional picture.

Successors are an underestimated check

A future President can revoke executive orders, replace political leadership, change enforcement priorities, restore programs, promulgate new rules, and reopen records.

Successor correction is one reason executive action can be less durable than legislation.

Presidents inherit not only power but the ability to reverse prior presidential choices.

A successor may possess authority to restore a program after its staff has dispersed.

An agency may legally reopen after expertise has left.

A museum may restore an exhibit after records or curatorial teams have changed.

Formal reversibility is therefore not the same as practical reparability.

An executive order may be reversed by another executive order.

A final rule usually requires another rulemaking process.

A statute requires Congress.

A Supreme Court precedent usually requires another case, doctrinal change, or constitutional amendment.

Democratic durability depends partly on which institutional layer absorbs the policy.

Redundancy is the real safeguard

No single institution is enough.

Courts can be slow. Congress can be partisan. States can lose. Inspectors can be removed. career officials can be reassigned. FOIA can take years. Journalists can expose without compelling.

The system becomes resilient when one institution can hand evidence or authority to another.

One institution can trigger another

A whistleblower disclosure can trigger an inspector-general inquiry.

An inspector's report can trigger congressional oversight.

A congressional record can support litigation.

A state lawsuit can produce a judicial ruling.

A journalistic investigation can move voters.

Correction is often a chain rather than a single institutional act.

Multiple veto points create delay.

They can stop unlawful government.

They can also stop lawful government.

A democracy built to correct itself can become so difficult to move that citizens experience every election as symbolic.

That is the strongest argument against treating friction as an unconditional virtue.

The strongest case for presidential control

A President who cannot direct the executive branch cannot be held accountable for executive outcomes.

Career insulation, independent agencies, litigation, state resistance, internal watchdogs, and congressional review can collectively make implementation slow and fragmented.

Democratic responsiveness requires enough presidential control for elections to matter.

Every President is fallible.

Presidents can misread statutes, rely on false claims, reward allies, punish opponents, make administrative mistakes, and respond to short-term incentives.

No President should therefore be the final reviewer of his own legality, evidence, spending, personnel conduct, electoral interests, and historical narrative.

Distributed correction is how a democracy institutionalizes distrust without requiring permanent opposition.

Repeatability is the fourth test

Independence, corrective capacity, and timeliness are not enough.

A corrective institution must survive using its power.

One judge who rules against the President is useful. A judiciary that can do it repeatedly is stronger.

One inspector who publishes a damaging report matters. An inspector system that remains functional afterward matters more.

Article III courts score relatively well on repeatability.

Life tenure protects judges from direct presidential removal.

Jurisdiction, remedy, doctrine, and compliance can still change.

But the institution can hear the next case even after issuing an adverse ruling.

Congress scores differently.

Formal power is highly repeatable.

Political willingness is not.

A committee chair, party leader, primary challenge, or election can transform whether the same oversight tool will be used again.

The January 2025 removals make repeatability a live question for inspectors general.

A watchdog structure is weaker when officeholders believe a sufficiently damaging report may end the leadership of the office.

Removal protection is therefore not merely employment security.

It affects the future supply of institutional contradiction.

Schedule Policy/Career creates a similar test.

Can a lawyer, analyst, scientist, or manager deliver the same unwelcome professional conclusion next year after removal protections have weakened?

The answer cannot be inferred from the regulation alone.

It has to be observed in practice.

Federalism scores well because one state's loss does not eliminate other states' governments.

Different attorneys general can bring different cases. Governors change. Legislatures change. State courts remain.

Separate institutional bases make retaliation by Washington more difficult.

Journalism is formally protected but materially vulnerable.

A newsroom can keep investigating only if it has reporters, sources, lawyers, money, access, and an audience.

The constitutional protection is strong.

The practical corrective capacity varies.

No institution wins every category

Courts score high on binding force and lower on speed.

Congress scores extraordinarily high on formal corrective capacity and unevenly on partisan independence.

States score high on repeatability and external independence but still depend on jurisdiction and law.

Inspectors general score high on internal access but lower on removal protection.

Journalism scores high on editorial independence and low on direct compulsion.

There is no single best safeguard.

The point is complementarity.

An institution weak in one dimension may be strong in another.

The American system works when those differences overlap rather than when one institution dominates every function.

Who can still say no?

Courts can.

Congress can.

States can.

Inspectors general can.

Career professionals can.

GAO can.

Whistleblowers, journalists, associations, and professional institutions can.

Voters can.

The question is badly framed.

A court's binding order matters differently from a journalist's investigation.

A state lawsuit matters differently from an internal legal memorandum.

A vote matters differently from an audit.

Democratic correction comes from the chain connecting them.

The institutions still say no

The United States still possesses multiple centers of independent judgment.

Some have become weaker. Some have gained legal authority. Some are stronger formally than politically. Some detect but cannot compel. Some can compel but only slowly.

The system has not run out of no.

The more difficult question is whether those institutions still have enough overlap to turn no into repair.

Part VI cannot end with institutions.

Every formal power described in this chapter must be used by people.

Judges have to issue judgments. Legislators have to vote against incentives. Inspectors have to publish findings. Civil servants have to preserve records. Journalists have to investigate. Voters have to accept losing as well as winning.

The next chapter therefore turns from law to the democratic habits that make institutional correction possible at all.

Sources and notes

- Supreme Court — Trump v. Slaughter, June 29, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-332_qn12.pdf
 - Supreme Court — Trump v. Cook, June 29, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25a312_5468.pdf
 - Supreme Court — Trump v. CASA, June 27, 2025. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_5426.pdf
 - GAO — Impoundment Control Act decisions. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/appropriations-law/impoundment-control-act>
 - GAO — NIH, B-337203, Aug. 5, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337203>
 - GAO — Head Start, B-337202, July 23, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337202>
 - GAO — Institute of Museum and Library Services, B-337375, June 16, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337375>
 - Congressional Research Service — Removal of Inspectors General: Rules, Practice, and Considerations for Congress. <https://www.congress.gov/crs-product/IF1546>
 - Congress.gov — H.R. 3735, IG Act of 2025. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/house-bill/3735/text>
 - Ninth Circuit — Newsom v. Trump stay opinion, June 19, 2025. <https://cdn.ca9.uscourts.gov/datastore/opinions/2025/06/19/25-3727.pdf>
 - U.S. Department of Justice — Freedom of Information Act. <https://www.justice.gov/oip/freedom-information-act-5-usc-552>
- Supreme Court — Trump v. Barbara, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_4hdj.pdf

CHAPTER 23

DEMOCRACY BEYOND LAW

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The concession that changes nothing—and changes everything

A defeated presidential candidate can concede an election without changing a single vote.

The concession does not certify a state. It does not bind a court. It does not count electoral votes. It does not transfer constitutional authority.

And yet, when it happens, something important changes.

The losing candidate tells supporters that the contest over who will govern has ended and that the contest over how the country should be governed is about to begin again.

No clause of the Constitution requires a losing candidate to give a gracious speech.

No statute can force legislators to treat their opponents as future legitimate majorities.

No court can compel citizens to revise an inconvenient belief simply because the evidence changed.

The American system therefore depends on practices that are not reducible to legal command.

Tocqueville called this realm mores

Tocqueville used the word broadly.

He meant customs, habits, opinions, moral expectations, and ways of acting that make institutions function differently even when the legal text is unchanged.

His point was not that democracy requires polite people.

It was that formal institutions are inhabited by human beings, and human beings carry assumptions about what victory, defeat, authority, opposition, truth, and restraint mean.

Norms are not nostalgia

An appeal to democratic norms can easily become an appeal to an imagined golden age.

American political history does not permit that comfort.

Jim Crow was sustained by custom. Gender exclusion was sustained by custom. Elite deference, patronage, racial hierarchy, and suppression of dissent have all been defended as traditions worth preserving.

A norm is not democratic merely because it is old.

The relevant question is whether an informal practice preserves equal citizenship, peaceful alternation, factual correction, legitimate opposition, and the possibility of future reversal.

Some norms deserve protection.

Others deserve to be broken.

The task is not to defend unwritten rules as such, but to identify which habits keep democratic competition repeatable.

The first habit is accepting temporary defeat

Democracy requires losers.

Not metaphorically. Literally.

Every election produces citizens who believe the wrong person won, the wrong coalition prevailed, or the wrong policy was chosen.

A system of government becomes democratic only when enough losers distinguish political rejection from institutional nullification.

A losing candidate does not have to admire the winner.

Citizens do not have to stop believing the winner is dangerous, corrupt, incompetent, or wrong.

Acceptance means recognizing the temporary authority of the lawful mechanism that decided, while preserving the right to criticize, organize, litigate, protest, and win later.

Concession as a reciprocity test

The last three presidential transfers provide a compact test of the norm.

In 2016, Hillary Clinton conceded despite winning the national popular vote, and the Obama administration transferred power to Trump. Criticism of the Electoral College, Russian interference, and Trump's legitimacy continued without becoming refusal of transfer.

In 2020, Trump did not give a traditional concession and continued trying to alter or delay institutional closure after certifications and unsuccessful challenges. Chapter 19 owns that chronology; its relevance here is the norm failure.

In 2024, Kamala Harris conceded and the Biden administration transferred authority back to Trump.

The comparison is not a claim that one party possesses a permanent monopoly on democratic virtue. It is an act-evidence test of whether losing coalitions remain inside the lawful contest.

A concession has no constitutional force. Its function is social: it tells supporters that the sovereignty dispute has ended and ordinary opposition has resumed.

The second habit is legitimate opposition

Democracy does not require citizens to believe every opponent is admirable.

Some political movements genuinely threaten rights or constitutional order.

But ordinary partisan opponents must remain presumptively legitimate participants in the same political system.

Today's minority has to remain eligible to become tomorrow's majority.

The concept should not be left at the level of tone.

Does the government preserve election machinery that could remove it?

Does it allow opposition parties, associations, and media to operate lawfully?

Does it preserve ballot access and succession mechanisms?

Does it distinguish criminal conduct from ordinary partisan membership?

Those acts tell us more than whether political rhetoric is harsh.

When a coalition begins to describe ordinary opponents as inherently outside the national community, politics changes form.

An election is no longer a temporary decision among citizens.

It becomes a contest over who counts as a citizen entitled to govern at all.

That is a much more dangerous conflict.

Mutual toleration does not mean tolerating criminal violence, racial domination, or explicit rejection of constitutional order.

It means refusing to infer disqualification from ordinary partisan identity alone.

The presumption should be inclusion until conduct demonstrates otherwise.

The third habit is institutional forbearance

Constitutions often give officials more power than democratic life can safely sustain if every actor uses that power to its absolute maximum.

Forbearance is the practice of declining to exploit every legal advantage simply because the text makes it available.

It is one of the least visible and most important parts of democratic stability.

A procedural weapon can be entirely legal.

Senate scheduling, confirmation rules, committee powers, executive orders, emergency statutes, state procedures, litigation tactics, and appointment authorities may all be used lawfully.

The democratic question is whether repeated maximal use destroys the expectation that the same system can be shared after control changes hands.

One-sided restraint is unstable.

If one coalition repeatedly declines maximal tools while the other repeatedly uses them, the restrained side faces a rational incentive to escalate.

Norm erosion therefore has a feedback structure.

Each breach becomes the precedent that excuses the next.

Garland and Barrett show why consistency matters

The Senate's refusal to consider Merrick Garland in 2016 and its confirmation of Amy Coney Barrett in 2020 under a differently framed principle became a classic reciprocity dispute.

The Constitution did not forbid either Senate from acting as it did.

The norm question is different.

Would the institutional principle have been defended if party control had been reversed?

A democratic principle becomes credible when a coalition accepts it at political cost.

Standards that survive only when convenient are not restraints.

They are temporary arguments.

The act-evidence is whether actors maintain the same rule when it hurts them.

Compromise is not the same thing as democracy

Calls for bipartisan compromise can become sentimental.

Some injustices should not be split down the middle.

Equal citizenship does not become more democratic because exclusion is reduced by half.

The value of compromise lies elsewhere.

Plural citizens often hold incompatible but legitimate preferences.

They have to govern together anyway.

Compromise becomes democratically useful when it prevents every disagreement from turning into a fight for permanent domination.

It is a method of continued coexistence, not a moral law requiring a midpoint on every question.

Polarization makes compromise costly

When partisan identity becomes socially total, bargaining changes meaning.

A compromise can look less like negotiation and more like betrayal.

Primary electorates, media incentives, donors, activists, and geographic sorting can all raise the cost of cooperation.

Norm erosion therefore has institutional causes, not only moral ones.

Parties teach what is disqualifying

Political parties are not merely vehicles for winning elections.

They nominate candidates, distribute resources, shape reputations, discipline members, and decide which conduct ends a political career.

A democratic norm becomes stronger when a party is willing to enforce it against its own coalition.

Strong party gatekeeping can protect constitutional competition.

It can also exclude legitimate insurgents, protect incumbents, and suppress voter demands.

Chapter 17 already showed the tension.

Democratic culture requires enough gatekeeping to reject genuine anti-democratic conduct without turning parties into closed oligarchies.

The fourth habit is factual self-correction

Democracy does not require a common ideology.

It requires enough willingness to distinguish evidence from partisan usefulness.

An institution cannot correct power if every unwelcome fact is automatically treated as enemy propaganda.

Citizens can agree that an event occurred and disagree about its meaning.

A statistic can be real and politically ambiguous.

A judicial ruling can be binding and still open to criticism.

A historical archive can support more than one interpretation.

Factual self-correction requires a shared enough floor, not one national opinion.

Journalists, courts, election officials, scientists, auditors, and statisticians can produce evidence.

That evidence still has to be received.

If leaders and citizens adopt a rule that every adverse source is illegitimate, the best factual institutions in the world cannot produce political correction.

Trust should be conditional

Democratic trust is not institutional worship.

Courts can err. Agencies can err. Journalists can err. Scientists revise conclusions. Election administrators make mistakes.

Healthy trust means accepting procedures provisionally while preserving appeal, scrutiny, reform, and replacement.

The central democratic claim is modest.

A mechanism can possess enough authority to settle a dispute for now without being infallible forever.

That is what makes appeal and alternation compatible with obedience.

Citizens can accept an outcome and continue arguing about whether the institution should change.

The fifth habit is political nonviolence

Democracy cannot remove anger from politics.

It must keep ordinary political defeat from becoming a justification for intimidation or violence.

Violence changes who is willing to participate.

It can turn a formally open institution into one staffed only by people willing to endure personal danger.

Election workers, judges, legislators, journalists, public-health officials, and civil servants may retain legal authority while facing severe personal threats.

If ordinary people conclude that holding these roles carries intolerable risk, institutional capacity declines without any constitutional amendment.

Culture can therefore weaken the state by changing who is willing to serve.

Democratic citizens may protest, strike where lawful, boycott, demonstrate, litigate, organize, and engage in civil disobedience.

Disruption is not identical to violence.

A constitutional democracy must be able to distinguish confrontational political action from intimidation aimed at determining who may participate.

The sixth habit is role morality

Officeholders occupy roles that impose obligations different from personal preference.

A judge must decide as a judge.

A prosecutor must distinguish evidence from political demand.

A secretary of state must certify according to election law.

A legislator must sometimes weigh institutional authority against party advantage.

Officials do not acquire a personal veto merely because they possess expertise.

Political leaders are entitled to direct lawful policy.

The point is bounded responsibility.

Professional judgment is legitimate where the office assigns it, just as democratic direction is legitimate where elections and law assign it.

Same-party refusal is the strongest evidence

The most revealing cases occur when role obligation imposes a cost on the official's own coalition.

Brad Raffensperger in Georgia, Jeffrey Rosen and Richard Donoghue at DOJ, Mike Pence on January 6, and senators who rejected electoral objections all illustrate the pattern.

The individuals need not be canonized.

The relevant fact is that institutional role sometimes defeated partisan advantage.

One courageous official can matter in a crisis.

A stable system must make role-based refusal ordinary enough that the next official can do the same thing.

That is why norms, personnel protections, professional standards, and formal rules reinforce one another.

The seventh habit is losing an argument without losing membership

Political disagreement has become intertwined with geography, religion, education, race, class, culture, and lifestyle.

Partisan identity can therefore feel like a judgment about who belongs.

The democratic habit is to lose a policy argument without treating the winning voters as a foreign people.

Cross-cutting identities reduce political totalism

A citizen who belongs simultaneously to a union, church, profession, sports club, neighborhood group, and political party lives inside overlapping loyalties.

Those ties can soften the idea that one partisan identity defines the whole person.

When political identity absorbs every other social identity, compromise becomes harder because disagreement threatens the entire self.

Associations can bridge

Tocqueville emphasized associations because they teach citizens to act with others.

Modern associations can create cross-partisan habits when members cooperate around work, faith, profession, neighborhood, recreation, or local problems.

They can provide a political education in repeated interaction with people one does not fully agree with.

Organizations can reward ideological conformity and screen out dissent.

More association is not automatically more democracy.

The question is whether organizations build bridging capacity as well as bonding capacity.

Local democracy teaches small defeats

School boards, municipal councils, unions, churches, clubs, and neighborhood organizations expose citizens to procedure, compromise, repeated interaction, and losing votes.

These are small political experiences.

They matter because national politics becomes harder to moderate when citizens rarely practice self-government anywhere else.

Religious communities can remind citizens that politics is not the whole of moral life.

They can create institutions outside direct state control and encourage duties that limit political absolutism.

They can also become vehicles for partisan identity or exclusion.

The Tocquevillian point is therefore not that religion automatically moderates democracy, but that nonstate moral communities can either restrain or intensify political totalism.

Professional ethics are modern mores

Lawyers, doctors, scientists, auditors, election administrators, judges, historians, and journalists operate under professional standards that survive changes in political leadership.

These standards are not sovereign law.

They create expectations about evidence, disclosure, method, and role that can help institutions correct themselves.

Professional communities can also become closed, ideological, or defensive.

Expertise can be used to exclude outsiders or protect institutional prestige.

Professional norms therefore deserve the same test as political norms: do they preserve evidence, equal citizenship, and corrigibility?

The eighth habit is preserving future reversibility

Every governing coalition is tempted to make victory durable.

Democratic culture asks something harder.

Will winners preserve the machinery by which they can later lose?

Election administration must remain capable of certifying an adverse result.

Opposition parties must remain able to organize.

Courts must remain independent enough to issue unwelcome judgments.

Media and associations must remain lawful.

Records must survive.

Succession must remain possible.

Chapter 24 will name the book's final standard.

Chapter 23 prepares it through behavior.

A democratic culture is one in which winners preserve the mechanisms that can undo their own victory.

Constitutional hardball belongs here

Political scientists use constitutional hardball to describe aggressive use of lawful powers in ways that violate or strain prior expectations.

The concept is useful when tied to specific institutions.

It becomes vague when it simply means politics one dislikes.

An actor may exploit an ambiguity that everyone assumed would remain unused.

The response can be statutory clarification, procedural reform, or litigation.

In that sense, norm conflict can reveal where democracy relied too heavily on unwritten restraint.

If every breach is answered by a broader breach rather than a durable rule, the system enters an escalation cycle.

The law still functions.

The shared expectation that power will remain reversible weakens.

No legal code can specify every future conflict.

Government depends on some ordinary role interpretation because total specification would be impossible.

Democratic culture occupies the gap between the rule as written and the rule used as a weapon.

Good faith is not a mental state that can be reliably observed.

It should be measured through acts.

Does a principle survive partisan reversal? Does the actor comply with judgments? Does new evidence narrow a claim? Does defeat close a procedure? Does the winner preserve future opposition rights?

Reciprocity is the best first test

Ask of every claimed norm: would the actor defend the same institutional rule if the parties were reversed?

The test is imperfect because contexts differ.

It remains a powerful way to distinguish principle from temporary advantage.

Different acts can violate the same norm to different degrees.

A rhetorical attack on legitimacy is not equivalent to a sustained effort to prevent transfer of power.

A procedural escalation is not automatically equivalent to institutional entrenchment.

Compare scale, duration, repetition, and effect.

Winners need self-restraint

Winning an election grants authority.

It does not turn temporary control into ownership of the state.

A democratic majority remains bounded by rights, statutes, federalism, courts, and future elections.

The cultural expectation is that victory should remain temporary in principle.

Losers need resilience

Democratic losers are not passive.

They organize, sue, criticize, investigate, recruit candidates, raise money, protest, and prepare to win.

The important thing is that they remain inside the common contest rather than declaring the mechanism illegitimate merely because it produced defeat.

The line appears when institutions are treated as valid only if they return favorable outcomes.

At that point politics is no longer a contest over temporary government.

It becomes a contest over whether the shared mechanism has authority at all.

Norm skepticism has a strong case

Informal norms are often written by incumbents, elites, and winners.

Calls for civility and restraint can be used to discipline outsiders, protect unjust institutions, or stigmatize disruptive reform.

A democratic argument for norms must concede this rather than hide it.

Civil-rights history defeats norm nostalgia

Abolition, women's suffrage, labor organizing, civil-rights activism, and other democratic expansions often violated prevailing expectations.

Progress sometimes required disruption.

The test is not whether a norm was inherited.

It is whether breaking it increased equal citizenship and future contestability.

Breaking an unjust convention can deepen democracy when the replacement creates a more inclusive and reversible system.

Breaking a reciprocal restraint simply to entrench one coalition can do the opposite.

The destination matters.

Democratic culture is learned through repetition

Citizens watch what leaders do after losing.

They watch whether courts are obeyed, whether recounts end disputes, whether same-party officials accept adverse facts, whether opponents remain eligible to govern, and whether transitions occur peacefully.

Repeated practice creates expectation.

A norm can erode because people observe that breaking it brings rewards.

If political escalation produces attention, money, nominations, or loyalty from supporters, restraint becomes harder to sustain.

Culture changes through incentive as much as sermon.

Conflict, novelty, outrage, and personal confrontation attract attention.

Quiet institutional restraint rarely becomes a spectacle.

That asymmetry can create a market in which norm-breaking is more visible and politically profitable than norm-preserving behavior.

Digital networks allow claims of fraud, betrayal, corruption, and illegitimacy to circulate long before courts, election offices, or investigative institutions complete slower procedures.

The problem is not merely false speech.

It is the speed mismatch between accusation and verification.

Ordinary people decide whether to forward unsupported claims, accept corrections, intimidate local officials, participate in associations, vote in primaries, and remain socially connected to people outside their partisan camp.

Democratic culture is reproduced from below as well as above.

A President, governor, senator, pastor, journalist, judge, or party leader cannot create democratic culture alone.

High-status figures can nevertheless change what followers understand as normal.

Norms are transmitted partly by example.

There was no pre-Trump golden age

Watergate, McCarthyism, Jim Crow, machine politics, contested Reconstruction, political violence, patronage, and constitutional hardball all predate Trump.

The modern concern is not that democratic norms were once pure.

It is that polarization, nationalized identity, fragmented media, and stronger executive governing capacity may reduce the margin of informal restraint that formal correction depends on.

Trump's political style and institutional conflicts intensified several existing trends.

He did not invent polarization, distrust, partisan media, emergency power, executive orders, hardball, or contested legitimacy.

Treating him as the sole origin would make the diagnosis too shallow to survive him.

Clinton conceded in 2016 and the Obama administration transferred power.

State officials, courts, DOJ officials, Pence, and Congress completed the 2020 transfer despite presidential resistance.

Congress clarified the Electoral Count framework in 2022.

Harris conceded in 2024 and the Biden administration transferred power to Trump.

Same-party officials have sometimes applied rules that damaged their own coalition.

Norms weaken when standards reverse with party control.

They weaken when institutions are described as legitimate only when they produce favorable outcomes.

They weaken when threats make ordinary democratic service dangerous.

They weaken when factual institutions are pressured to state claims unsupported by evidence.

They weaken when lawful power is used to make future alternation materially harder.

Democracy beyond law

Law can tell us who holds office.

It can tell us how long the term lasts.

It can tell us how to count votes, how Congress passes legislation, and how courts exercise jurisdiction.

It cannot by itself make citizens accept temporary defeat, make parties preserve future opposition, make officials honor professional roles, or make evidence politically receivable.

The final cultural test

The strongest democratic culture is not one in which everyone agrees.

It is not one in which institutions are trusted blindly.

It is one in which conflict remains reversible.

Winners preserve the rules that can remove them. Losers remain inside the lawful contest. Officeholders sometimes prefer role obligation to coalition advantage. Facts can cross partisan lines. Political defeat does not end political membership.

Chapter 22 asked which institutions can still say no.

Chapter 23 asks why people inside and outside those institutions are willing to make the no matter.

The final chapter can now ask the broader question.

Can the system still correct itself not once, but repeatedly?

Sources and notes

- American Presidency Project — Hillary Clinton concession remarks, Nov. 9, 2016. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/documents/remarks-new-york-city-conceding-the-2016-presidential-election>
- National Archives — 2016 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2016>
- National Archives — 2020 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2020>
- American Presidency Project — Kamala Harris concession remarks, Nov. 6, 2024. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/>
- Public Law 117-328 — Electoral Count Reform Act provisions. <https://www.congress.gov/117/plaws/publ328/PLAW-117publ328.pdf>
- U.S. Senate — historical nomination and roll-call records. <https://www.senate.gov/>

CHAPTER 24 CORRIGIBILITY

OF DEMOCRACY IN AMERICA

The anatomy of a correction

A political system makes a mistake.

That sentence should not be controversial. Democracies elect bad leaders, pass bad laws, misread facts, overreach in emergencies, tolerate corruption, misallocate money, protect insiders, and sometimes fail to protect citizens whose rights they formally recognize.

The important question is what happens next.

Someone has to see the problem. Evidence has to survive. A claim has to be tested. An institution has to be able to hear an argument the government does not want to hear. A decision has to carry consequences. Damage has to be repaired if repair is still possible. And the mechanism that performed the correction has to remain available for the next mistake.

If democracy meant a political system that never violated its own principles, no democracy would survive the definition.

The United States has combined democratic aspiration with slavery, disenfranchisement, racial domination, patronage, machine politics, judicial error, violence, corruption, unequal representation, administrative abuse, and repeated crises of legitimacy.

That history does not prove that every failure is compatible with democracy.

It proves that democratic judgment has to ask whether failure can still be exposed, contested, reversed, and learned from.

Corrigibility

This book has used one word for that capacity: corrigibility.

The word is uncommon but precise. A corrigible system is one that can be corrected.

Applied to democracy, the concept is larger than the ability to reverse one policy. It asks whether the political order preserves enough independent institutions, factual procedures, legal remedies, electoral competition, social pluralism, and institutional memory to make correction possible across repeated conflicts.

The promise is not infallibility. It is revisability.

A system can survive by becoming less democratic.

It can preserve elections while narrowing competition. It can preserve courts while reducing their remedies. It can preserve legislatures while making partisan independence practically costly. It can preserve agencies while weakening the ability of professional officials to contradict political leadership.

Survival therefore tells us too little.

The stronger test is whether the surviving institutions can still alter the course of power.

Correction has stages

The first stage is detection: someone identifies a possible error, abuse, illegality, or factual contradiction.

The second is verification: evidence is tested through a procedure capable of distinguishing allegation from supportable claim.

The third is transmission: the verified information reaches an institution or public capable of acting on it.

The fourth is decision: an authorized actor determines what follows.

The fifth is repair: policy, law, personnel, funding, procedure, or leadership actually changes.

A political system that survives a crisis and forgets it has not learned much.

Records, statutes, judicial opinions, audit findings, professional standards, institutional reforms, and public archives preserve lessons beyond the people who first learned them.

The Electoral Count Reform Act of 2022 is one clear example. The crisis of 2020 exposed weaknesses in a process that had depended partly on convention and contested interpretation. Congress later clarified parts of the framework in statute.

The correction became portable.

One successful act of resistance does not prove durable corrective capacity.

One judge can rule against a President. One official can refuse an unlawful demand. One state can file a suit. One reporter can expose a contradiction.

The harder question is whether the institution survives the act of correction strongly enough to do the same thing again.

Repeatability is what converts courage into architecture.

Nine dimensions of corrigibility

The evidence in this book can be organized around nine questions.

Can error be detected? Can claims be verified? Can reviewers reach independent conclusions? Can they impose consequences? Can they act in time? Can damage be repaired? Can correction be repeated? Can policy be reversed by future lawful governments? And can the governing coalition actually lose power?

These are not nine separate virtues.

They are nine ways a democracy can retain—or lose—the ability to learn that it was wrong.

Detectability

A government cannot correct what remains invisible.

Freedom of Information Act requests, inspectors general, whistleblowers, audits, public dockets, legislative inquiries, journalists, archives, agency records, and professional documentation all contribute to detectability.

Opacity is therefore not merely a transparency problem.

It is a democratic design problem because hidden action cannot enter the correction sequence.

Verifiability

Detection produces claims. Democracy still needs procedures for testing them.

Courts test evidence through adversarial process. Election officials audit and recount. GAO analyzes appropriations law. Scientists use replicable methods. Journalists compare records and sources. Legislative committees can compel testimony and documents.

Without verification, every accusation can become politically equivalent to every finding.

A corrigible democracy needs institutions capable of narrowing uncertainty.

Independence

A reviewer who cannot reach an unwelcome conclusion is not much of a reviewer.

Article III judges derive independence from life tenure and salary protection. States derive it from separate governments and electoral bases. GAO derives it from its legislative-branch position. The press and civil society derive it from constitutional and social independence outside executive command. Career systems and inspectors general possess more limited forms of procedural independence inside government.

No institution is perfectly independent.

The democratic question is whether enough centers remain independent of the actor being reviewed.

Corrective capacity

Independence without consequence can produce criticism without correction.

A court can issue a binding order. Congress can legislate or deny money. Voters can replace officeholders. States can sue and govern within their own authority. GAO can issue legal findings but generally requires other institutions for stronger enforcement. Journalism can expose but not itself invalidate an executive action.

Correction depends on the distribution of different kinds of corrective capacity rather than one universal guardian.

Timeliness

A correction can be legally complete and practically late.

A workforce may already have dispersed. Grants may have ended. Contracts may have been terminated. Expertise may have left. A public narrative may have hardened. An election may already have passed.

American institutional procedure often values deliberation, record development, appeal, and caution.

Those virtues become weaker when power can move much faster than review.

Reparability

Some democratic errors are cheap to reverse.

A successor can revoke many executive orders quickly. An agency can change guidance. Congress can amend a statute. A court can invalidate a legal theory.

Other changes create path dependence. Rebuilding a gutted office, restoring lost expertise, compensating people harmed by unlawful policy, recreating a terminated network, or rebuilding public trust can take far longer than formal reversal.

Corrigibility therefore asks not only whether the law permits repair but whether repair remains realistically available.

Repeatability

The first correction can weaken the institution that performed it.

An inspector can be removed. A whistleblower can be retaliated against. A newsroom can lose access or resources. A civil servant can be reassigned. A court can face jurisdictional or remedial limits. A congressional committee can change leadership.

Resilience is stronger when the corrective channel can survive imposing a cost on power.

This is why repeatability belongs near the center of the concept.

Reversibility

Democracy makes temporary authority meaningful by preserving the possibility that future governments can change direction.

Executive orders are generally easier to reverse than statutes. Statutes are easier to change than constitutional provisions. Judicial precedent can be harder still. Practical institutional damage may outlast every formal rule.

The layer in which a policy becomes embedded determines the cost of future reversal.

Alternation

The final test is simpler.

Can the people who govern lose?

If elections continue but the governing coalition cannot realistically be replaced, the rest of the correction system becomes increasingly cosmetic.

Alternation is therefore the terminal democratic test.

2016, 2020, 2024

The last decade provides three different kinds of evidence.

In 2016, power changed parties after an election in which the Electoral College winner lost the national popular vote. The outgoing Obama administration transferred authority to Donald Trump.

In 2020, Trump rejected the result, yet states certified, courts adjudicated, executive officials refused unsupported claims, Congress completed the count after January 6, and Joe Biden took office.

In 2024, voters returned Trump to power and the Biden administration transferred authority back to him.

That sequence is strong evidence that American electoral competition remains capable of changing national power.

It is not proof that the corrective capacity is permanently secure.

Corrigibility is not established once and stored forever.

Each future loss has to be accepted and each future transfer has to remain possible.

2020 is evidence of danger and correction at once

The 2020 crisis cannot be used honestly as evidence for only one side of the democratic diagnosis.

It revealed how much pressure an incumbent President could place on election administration, courts, state officials, the Justice Department, the Vice President, Congress, and the factual authority of the electoral process.

It also revealed that those institutions, acting in combination, could produce closure despite presidential refusal.

The warning and the correction are the same case.

2022 is evidence of learning

The Electoral Count Reform Act matters because it altered law after a demonstrated vulnerability.

Its importance is not that Congress made electoral conflict impossible.

It is that the system did not simply rely on the hope that the next Vice President, legislature, or party would interpret the same ambiguity the same way.

A soft point was partially hardened.

Correction is plural

Chapter 22 compared the institutions that can still impose, document, or transmit a democratic no. The final point is not to rank them again, but to see why their differences matter.

Courts supply binding legal judgment but depend on cases, remedies, time, and compliance. Congress possesses the broadest formal toolkit but can become politically dormant under co-partisan alignment. States provide durable federal redundancy, yet require correction themselves.

The 2025–2026 birthright-citizenship litigation illustrates why those dimensions must be kept separate. *Trump v. CASA* narrowed the availability of universal

injunctions without deciding the citizenship merits; *Trump v. Barbara* later reached those merits and held that children born in the United States to parents unlawfully or temporarily present are citizens at birth under the Fourteenth Amendment. Remedial narrowing therefore changed the path to correction without eliminating substantive correction itself.

Professional administration, inspectors general, and GAO can detect problems and preserve institutional knowledge before outside actors understand what occurred. Their independence and coercive powers differ sharply, which is why none can substitute for all the others.

The democratic resource is overlap. A weak channel can hand evidence to a stronger one; a dormant channel can reactivate after an election; a state can create a case a court can decide; a watchdog can create a record Congress later uses.

Corrigibility therefore resides less in any single guardian than in a system where several forms of independence and corrective capacity remain simultaneously available.

Information is the most fragile prerequisite

A democracy cannot correct what it cannot know.

Fragmented media, distrust, disinformation, secrecy, the decline of local reporting, partisan factual ecosystems, and rapid social-media circulation can break correction before any court hears a case.

If citizens cannot agree on enough procedures for determining what occurred, institutional findings lose their corrective capacity to produce closure.

Democracy does not require one national interpretation.

It requires enough shared procedures that an adverse fact remains politically available even when its meaning is contested.

Courts, audits, official statistics, recounts, professional standards, archives, and investigative reporting all contribute to that procedural floor.

Mores are infrastructure too

Chapter 23 established that formal institutions depend on habits law cannot fully command: accepting temporary defeat, preserving legitimate opposition, honoring role obligations, receiving adverse facts, and restraining political violence.

Corrigibility needs those habits because a legal remedy cannot replace every unwritten expectation. When experience shows that one convention carries too much constitutional weight, selective codification can harden the soft point without pretending that all politics can be legalized.

Every correction reallocates power

Strengthening one safeguard can weaken another democratic value.

More judicial control can mean more judicial policymaking. Stronger career protection can make elected government less responsive. Stronger presidential control can weaken professional independence. More federal authority can protect national rights while reducing local autonomy.

Corrigibility is therefore not the maximization of friction.

It is the preservation of feedback without destroying governing capacity.

Complex systems remain stable partly through mechanisms that counter runaway change.

The analogy is useful for democracy if used carefully.

Courts, elections, audits, federalism, appropriations, opposition, professional norms, and public criticism can all function as negative feedback on political power.

None of them makes government motionless. They make correction possible.

Political systems can also amplify themselves.

Gerrymandering can protect incumbents who then control future district rules. Donor concentration can finance access that strengthens future fundraising. Media incentives can reward outrage that generates more attention. Personnel changes can weaken internal resistance, making further personnel change easier.

The danger is not merely strong power.

It is self-reinforcing power.

Entrenchment matters more than volume

A loud executive order may be reversible the next morning by a successor.

A quieter structural change that makes future opposition less able to compete may matter more democratically.

The final chapter should therefore judge political acts by their effect on future correction rather than by theatrical intensity.

Political debate often searches for the day democracy ended.

Real institutional erosion is usually less cinematic.

One correction pathway weakens. Another becomes slower. A third remains formally available but politically dormant. A fourth survives only through exceptional individuals.

Functional thresholds are more useful than ceremonial dates.

A functional rupture threshold

The deepest warning signs would be visible when elections can no longer realistically remove incumbents, opposition organization becomes impossible, courts lose meaningful independence or binding force, spending and statutes can be ignored without consequence, factual institutions can no longer contradict official claims, violence closes ordinary participation, succession rules are durably manipulated, or future governments cannot realistically repair what current power has changed.

No single item should be applied mechanically.

The diagnosis is cumulative.

As of August 2026, competitive elections still produce alternation.

Courts still issue decisions the executive must answer. States still litigate and govern independently. Congress still legislates and controls appropriations. GAO and watchdogs still publish adverse findings. Independent journalism, universities, associations, professions, and archives still operate. Future administrations retain substantial authority to reverse many executive actions.

These are not decorative survivals.

They are real correction pathways.

Acceptance of adverse electoral and factual outcomes is less reliable.

Partisan alignment can deactivate congressional checking power. Some internal personnel protections have weakened. Independent-agency removal protection has narrowed. Universal injunction doctrine has narrowed one route to rapid nationwide relief. Institutional shrinking can create practical irreversibility before final judicial review. Political threats raise the personal cost of public service. A faster executive can move before slower institutions respond.

These are not proof of collapse.

They are reasons corrigibility cannot be treated as automatic.

Neither complacency nor catastrophe

Two conclusions are too easy.

The first says that institutions survived, so the democratic danger was exaggerated.

The second says that serious erosion occurred, so institutional survival is meaningless.

The evidence supports neither.

American democracy remains corrigible, but correction has become uneven in cost, speed, and reliability.

Corrigibility is graded

A country can be strongly corrigible in election administration and weakly corrigible in information markets.

It can have robust judicial review and weak congressional oversight. It can have formal legal reversibility and weak practical reparability because of severe path dependence.

The concept is designed to permit mixed diagnosis rather than force a regime into a binary category before the evidence requires it.

Elections, appointments, laws, court decisions, technologies, organizations, and norms constantly alter the balance.

August 2026 is a research cutoff, not a historical endpoint.

The final judgment must therefore remain revisable too.

Every proposed constraint on Donald Trump should be tested under a future Democratic President.

Every defense of presidential control should be tested under an opposing President whom the defender distrusts.

A democratic standard that fails partisan reversal is not a stable standard.

The rule should be reciprocal. The record need not be symmetrical.

Different actors can use the same mechanism at different scales, with different persistence, and with different effects on future competition.

The evidence should preserve those differences.

Democracy requires more than a right to complain.

Opposition parties and movements need to be able to organize, select candidates, raise resources, formulate policy, win elections, and assume office.

A powerless opposition can coexist with ceremonial elections.

Corrigibility requires an alternative government in waiting.

A democracy that can stop itself but cannot act will eventually lose legitimacy.

Citizens do not elect governments merely to observe procedural caution.

If every policy requires extraordinary effort to survive overlapping veto points, political leaders will search for bypasses and citizens will reward them.

Governability is therefore part of democratic resilience.

Capable government under reversible authority

The final synthesis is not weak government.

It is capable government under reversible authority.

Elections should matter enough to change policy. Institutions should remain independent enough to correct unlawful or unsupported action. Future elections should remain capable of changing policy again.

That is the balance the entire book has been tracing.

What to preserve

Preserve genuine alternation.

Preserve independent evidence.

Harden soft points when experience proves that one person's restraint is carrying too much constitutional weight.

Keep correction plural. Keep remedies timely enough to matter. Preserve enough governing capacity for elections to produce action. Require power to explain itself through reasons and records. Protect repeatable corrective capacity in institutions that impose costs on power.

Not every inherited friction deserves defense.

Not every independent institution deserves insulation from political accountability.

Not every norm deserves reverence. Not every federal or local variation is democratic.

Not every veto point protects liberty.

The standard is whether the arrangement improves equal citizenship, contestability, reversibility, and correction.

The Noosophical contribution, if the book names it at all, is methodological rather than evidentiary.

Distinguish fact from interpretation, interpretation from hypothesis, and hypothesis from normative judgment. Integrate contradiction without forcing symmetry. Revise conclusions when evidence changes.

Those are habits compatible with corrigibility because they make the analysis itself revisable.

The strongest defense of the American system

Perhaps the book has mistaken ordinary conflict for democratic danger.

The United States has always been partisan, unequal, noisy, litigious, violent at times, suspicious of institutions, and willing to push constitutional boundaries.

Many contemporary conflicts may be evidence not of democratic decay but of democracy working through disagreement, stronger presidential accountability, state resistance, litigation, and electoral change.

If every aggressive executive action is called authoritarian, the concept becomes useless.

If every judicial loss is called institutional collapse, ordinary constitutional conflict becomes impossible.

If every partisan procedural maneuver becomes a regime crisis, the analysis stops distinguishing hard politics from democratic rupture.

The book has tried to avoid that error.

Democratic health is not tranquility.

Polarization, hard policy conflict, executive ambition, state resistance, and constitutional litigation can all coexist with democracy.

The relevant question is whether conflict remains reversible.

Can the loser still return? Can the evidence still matter? Can another institution still impose a consequence? Can the rules still be changed through ordinary law?

The strongest objection to qualified optimism

Perhaps the opposite mistake is more dangerous.

Formal elections, courts, media, and legislatures can survive after the practical possibility of correction has already degraded severely.

An incumbent can reshape personnel, remedies, information, funding, and institutional corrective capacity while leaving the constitutional facade intact.

Pointing to surviving institutions is therefore not enough.

That is exactly why corrigibility measures what institutions can do rather than whether they exist.

Independence, corrective capacity, timeliness, reparability, repeatability, reversibility, and alternation are functional tests.

By those tests, the American system remains meaningfully corrigible—but not uniformly, cheaply, or automatically.

The answer after Tocqueville

Tocqueville saw democratic freedom sustained by multiplicity: local governments, courts, lawyers, newspapers, associations, religion, customs, and dispersed authority.

The modern forms are different, but the underlying lesson survives.

American democratic strength still lies in the number of places from which contradiction can emerge.

Its danger lies in making those places dependent on the same power, the same party, the same funding, the same information system, or the same institutional permission.

The democratic promise

The aim is not to preserve every friction inherited from the past.

It is not to make elected government weak enough to be harmless.

It is to preserve a political order capable of acting and capable of changing its mind.

That requires authority strong enough to govern and institutions strong enough to make authority temporary.

A way back

Democracy will make mistakes again.

It will elect leaders some citizens fear and enact policies some courts later reject. It will misread emergencies, overestimate evidence, underestimate costs, reward insiders, and occasionally fail to repair harm in time.

The deepest safeguard is therefore not the hope that power will always be wise.

It is the preservation of a way back.

A democracy is not a system that never errs.

It is a system that can still make its errors revisable.

Sources and notes

- National Archives — 2020 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2020>
- Public Law 117-328 — Electoral Count Reform Act. <https://www.congress.gov/117/plaws/publ328/PLAW-117publ328.pdf>
- National Archives — 2024 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2024>
- OSCE/ODIHR — United States 2024 General Elections Final Report, Apr. 11, 2025. <https://odihr.osce.org/odihr/589239>
- Supreme Court — Slip Opinions, October Term 2025. <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/slipopinion/25>
- Government Accountability Office — Impoundment Control Act decisions. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/appropriations-law/impoundment-control-act>
- Pew Research Center — Multiple indicators show a decline in the health of America’s democracy in 2025, Apr. 15, 2026.

<https://www.pewresearch.org/short-reads/2026/04/15/multiple-indicators-show-a-decline-in-the-health-of-americas-democracy-in-2025/>

- Democratic Resilience: How Democracies Endure. Cambridge University Press.
<https://www.cambridge.org/core/books/democratic-resilience/how-democracies-endure/9B839B83199F24BFAD22BC6E96D5EB24>
- A systems framework for remedying dysfunction in U.S. democracy. PNAS.
<https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2102154118>

Supreme Court — Trump v. Barbara, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_4hdj.pdf

BIBLIOGRAPHY

This consolidated bibliography deduplicates the chapter-local source lists while preserving chapter provenance. The chapter lists remain in place for immediate evidentiary traceability; the chapter numbers below show where each source is used.

- 10 U.S.C. § 12406 — National Guard federal service. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?req=granuleid:USC-prelim-title10-section12406> [Chapter 15]
- 28 C.F.R. Part 600 — Special Counsel regulations. <https://www.ecfr.gov/current/title-28/chapter-VI/part-600> [Chapter 16]
- 50 U.S.C. § 1622 — termination and continuation of national emergencies. <https://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/text/50/1622> [Chapter 15]
- A systems framework for remedying dysfunction in U.S. democracy. PNAS. <https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2102154118> [Chapter 24]
- Administrative Office of the U.S. Courts — Judicial Vacancies and Confirmations. <https://www.uscourts.gov/judges-judgeships/judicial-vacancies> [Chapter 4]
- Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, Part I, trans. Henry Reeve (1835), Project Gutenberg research text. <https://www.gutenberg.org/files/815/815-h/815-h.htm> [Chapter 1]
- American Presidency Project — Hillary Clinton, Remarks in New York City Conceding the 2016 Presidential Election, Nov. 9, 2016. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/documents/remarks-new-york-city-conceding-the-2016-presidential-election> [Chapters 17, 23]
- American Presidency Project — Kamala Harris concession remarks, Nov. 6, 2024. <https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/> [Chapter 23]
- AmeriCorps — Volunteering and Civic Life in America, 2023 data. https://www.americorps.gov/sites/default/files/document/2025-01/CEV2023_HeadlineReport_12192024_508.pdf [Chapter 7]
- Brookings Institution — The Primaries Project. <https://www.brookings.edu/projects/the-primaries-project/> [Chapter 6]
- Brookings Institution — Tracking Turnover in the Trump Administration. <https://www.brookings.edu/articles/tracking-turnover-in-the-trump-administration/> [Chapter 18]
- Bureau of Labor Statistics — American Time Use Survey 2024. https://www.bls.gov/news.release/archives/atus_06262025.pdf [Chapter 8]
- Bureau of Labor Statistics — Union Members 2025, Feb. 18, 2026. <https://www.bls.gov/news.release/pdf/union2.pdf> [Chapter 7]
- California Secretary of State — California Redistricting and Proposition 50. <https://www.sos.ca.gov/elections/california-redistricting> [Chapter 6]
- California Secretary of State — Nov. 4, 2025 Statement of Vote, Proposition 50. <https://www.sos.ca.gov/elections/prior-elections/statewide-election-results/statewide-special-nov-4-2025/statement-vote> [Chapter 6]
- CISA — Joint Statement from Elections Infrastructure Government Coordinating Council and Sector Coordinating Executive Committees, Nov. 12, 2020. <https://www.cisa.gov/news-events/news/joint-statement-elections-infrastructure-government-coordinating-council-election-infrastructure> [Chapter 19]
- Congress.gov — H.R. 3735, IG Act of 2025. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/house-bill/3735/text> [Chapter 22]
- Congress.gov — H.Res.755, All Actions. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/116th-congress/house-resolution/755/all-actions> [Chapter 18]
- Congress.gov — H.Res.755, Articles of Impeachment. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/116th-congress/house-resolution/755/text> [Chapter 18]
- Congress.gov — S.Res.377, 119th Congress. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/senate-resolution/377/text> [Chapter 14]
- Congress.gov — S.Res.532, 119th Congress. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/senate-resolution/532/text> [Chapter 14]
- Congressional Research Service — National Emergency Powers and related statutory frameworks (background reference). <https://crsreports.congress.gov/> [Chapters 2, 3, 15]
- Congressional Research Service — Removal of Inspectors General: Rules, Practice, and Considerations for Congress. <https://www.congress.gov/crs-product/1F1546> [Chapter 22]

- Constitution Annotated, Article V and equal suffrage in the Senate.
<https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/article-5/> [Chapters 1, 2]
- Constitution Annotated, Impeachment. https://constitution.congress.gov/browse/essay/artI-S2-C5-1/ALDE_00001082/ [Chapter 2]
- Constitution Annotated, Twenty-Fifth Amendment.
<https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/amendment-25/> [Chapter 2]
- Constitution Annotated, “Equal Representation of States in the Senate.”
https://constitution.congress.gov/browse/essay/artI-S3-C1-1/ALDE_00013339/ [Chapter 1]
- Corporation for Public Broadcasting — Board Votes to Dissolve, Jan. 5, 2026.
<https://cpb.org/pressroom/corporation-public-broadcasting-board-votes-dissolve-organization-act-responsible> [Chapter 12]
- Corporation for Public Broadcasting — Impact of Federal Rescission, Oct. 9, 2025.
<https://cpb.org/spotlight/impact-federal-rescission-public-media> [Chapter 12]
- D.C. Circuit — Associated Press v. Budowich order materials.
<https://media.cadc.uscourts.gov/orders/docs/2025/06/25-5109LDSN3.pdf> [Chapter 21]
- Defense Production Act of 1950, 50 U.S.C. §§ 4501 et seq.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter55&edition=prelim> [Chapter 15]
- Democratic Resilience: How Democracies Endure. Cambridge University Press.
<https://www.cambridge.org/core/books/democratic-resilience/how-democracies-endure/9B839B83199F24BFAD22BC6E96D5EB24> [Chapter 24]
- Department of Justice — Attorney General Sessions Statement on Recusal, Mar. 2, 2017.
<https://www.justice.gov/archives/opa/pr/attorney-general-sessions-statement-recusal> [Chapter 18]
- Department of Justice — North Carolina HAVA voter-list consent order, Sept. 2025.
<https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/court-enters-consent-order-requiring-north-carolina-fix-inaccurate-voter-list> [Chapter 5]
- Department of Justice — Report on the Investigation into Russian Interference in the 2016 Presidential Election. <https://www.justice.gov/d9/report.pdf> [Chapter 18]
- District of Columbia Home Rule Act resources.
<https://code.dccouncil.gov/us/dc/council/code/titles/1/chapters/2/subchapters/V-A> [Chapter 3]
- FBI/ODNI/CISA — Joint statement on Russian election influence efforts, 2024.
<https://www.fbi.gov/news/press-releases/joint-odni-fbi-and-cisa-statement-on-russian-election-influence-efforts> [Chapter 11]
- Federal Election Commission — Contribution Limits for 2025–2026.
<https://www.fec.gov/documents/5661/contribution-limits-chart-2025-2026.pdf> [Chapter 9]
- Federal Election Commission — Federal Elections 2016.
<https://www.fec.gov/resources/cms-content/documents/federaelections2016.pdf> [Chapter 17]
- Federal Election Commission — PAC and Party Committee Data / Independent-Expenditure-Only Committees. <https://www.fec.gov/data/committees/pac-party/> [Chapter 9]
- Federal Election Commission — SpeechNow.org v. Federal Election Commission.
<https://www.fec.gov/legal-resources/court-cases/speechnoworg-v-fec/> [Chapter 9]
- Federal Election Commission — Statistical Summary of 24-Month Campaign Activity of the 2023–2024 Election Cycle. <https://www.fec.gov/updates/statistical-summary-of-24-month-campaign-activity-of-the-2023-2024-election-cycle/> [Chapter 9]
- Federal Election Commission, “Election Results and Voting Information.”
<https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/> [Chapter 1]
- Federal Election Commission, “Federal Elections 2016.” <https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/federal-elections-2016/> [Chapter 1]
- Federal Election Commission, “Federal Elections 2020.” <https://www.fec.gov/introduction-campaign-finance/election-results-and-voting-information/federal-elections-2020/> [Chapter 1]
- Federal Reserve — Changes in U.S. Family Finances from 2019 to 2022.
<https://www.federalreserve.gov/publications/october-2023-changes-in-us-family-finances-from-2019-to-2022.htm> [Chapter 8]
- Federal Reserve — Distributional Financial Accounts.
<https://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/z1/dataviz/dfa/> [Chapter 8]
- Federal Reserve — Greater Wealth, Greater Uncertainty: Changes in Racial Inequality in the Survey of Consumer Finances. <https://www.federalreserve.gov/econres/notes/feds-notes/greater-wealth-greater-uncertainty-changes-in-racial-inequality-in-the-survey-of-consumer-finances-20231018.html> [Chapter 8]
- Federal Reserve — Survey of Consumer Finances.
<https://www.federalreserve.gov/econres/scfindex.htm> [Chapter 8]

- Federal Trade Commission — 2023 Merger Guidelines remain in effect, Feb. 2025. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2025/02/ftc-chairman-andrew-n-ferguson-announces-ftc-doj-joint-2023-merger-guidelines-are-effect> [Chapter 10]
- Federal Trade Commission — Deere & Company settlement, July 8, 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2026/07/ftc-states-secure-settlement-deere-company-advancing-farmers-right-repair> [Chapter 10]
- Federal Trade Commission — FTC appeal in Meta monopolization case, Jan. 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/news-events/news/press-releases/2026/01/ftc-appeals-ruling-meta-monopolization-case> [Chapter 10]
- Federal Trade Commission — FTC v. Meta Platforms. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/cases-proceedings/191-0134-facebook-inc-ftc-v> [Chapter 10]
- Federal Trade Commission — Noncompete Rule status. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/rules/noncompete-rule> [Chapter 10]
- Federal Trade Commission — Rollins noncompete matter, 2026. <https://www.ftc.gov/legal-library/browse/cases-proceedings/251-0011-rollins-inc-matter> [Chapter 10]
- GAO — Head Start, B-337202, July 23, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337202> [Chapter 22]
- GAO — NIH, B-337203, Aug. 5, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337203> [Chapter 22]
- Government Accountability Office — 2025 Lobbying Disclosure: Observations on Compliance, July 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108486.pdf> [Chapter 9]
- Government Accountability Office — DHS Acting Secretary succession, B-331650, Aug. 14, 2020. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-331650> [Chapter 18]
- Government Accountability Office — Federal Agency Workforce Changes, June 17, 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108583.pdf> [Chapter 13]
- Government Accountability Office — Federal Vacancies for the Trump Administration. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/federal-vacancies-reform-act/federal-vacancies-prior-administration> [Chapter 18]
- Government Accountability Office — Impoundment Control Act decisions. <https://www.gao.gov/legal/appropriations-law/impoundment-control-act> [Chapters 2, 21, 22, 24]
- Government Accountability Office — Institute of Museum and Library Services, B-337375, June 16, 2025. <https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337375> [Chapters 2, 21, 22]
- Government Accountability Office — PLUM Reporting, GAO-26-108164. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108164.pdf> [Chapter 14]
- Government Accountability Office — Recent Federal Workforce Changes at OPM, July 2026. <https://www.gao.gov/assets/gao-26-108916.pdf> [Chapter 13]
- GovInfo / Federal Register — Proclamation 10989, Granting Pardons for Certain Offenses Related to the 2020 Presidential Election, Nov. 7, 2025. <https://www.govinfo.gov/app/details/DCPD-202501105> [Chapter 16]
- GovInfo — January 6th Committee Final Report. <https://www.govinfo.gov/collection/january-6th-committee-final-report> [Chapter 19]
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — News Coverage of the 2016 General Election. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/news-coverage-2016-general-election/> [Chapter 17]
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — News Coverage of the 2016 Presidential Primaries. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/news-coverage-2016-presidential-primaries/> [Chapter 17]
- Harvard Shorenstein Center — Pre-Primary News Coverage of the 2016 Presidential Race. <https://shorensteincenter.org/resource/pre-primary-news-coverage-2016-trump-clinton-sanders/> [Chapter 17]
- Help America Vote Act of 2002. <https://www.eac.gov/about/help-america-vote-act> [Chapter 5]
- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 Continues Development of Presidential Administration Academy. <https://www.heritage.org/press/project-2025-continues-development-presidential-administration-academy> [Chapter 20]
- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 launch and personnel preparation, Apr. 14, 2022. <https://www.heritage.org/press/heritage-announces-2025-presidential-transition-project-hiring-paul-dans-direct-new> [Chapter 20]
- Heritage Foundation — Project 2025 Reaches 100 Coalition Partners, Feb. 20, 2024. <https://www.heritage.org/press/project-2025-reaches-100-coalition-partners-continues-grow-preparation-next-president> [Chapter 20]
- HHS Office of Inspector General — Communication and Management Challenges Impeded HHS's Response to the Zero-Tolerance Policy. <https://oig.hhs.gov/newsroom/news-releases-articles/hhs-oig-communication-and-management-challenges-impeded-hhss-response-zero-tolerance-policy/> [Chapter 18]

- HHS Office of Inspector General — Separated Children Placed in Office of Refugee Resettlement Care. <https://oig.hhs.gov/reports/all/2019/separated-children-placed-in-office-of-refugee-resettlement-care/> [Chapter 18]
- INS v. Chadha, 462 U.S. 919 (1983). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/462/919/> [Chapter 15]
- Insurrection Act, 10 U.S.C. §§ 251–255.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title10/subtitleA/part1/chapter13&edition=prelim> [Chapter 15]
- Internal Revenue Service — Political Campaign Intervention guidance for 501(c)(3) organizations. https://www.irs.gov/pub/irs-tege/tax-exempt_organizations_should_avoid_political_campaign_intervention.pdf [Chapter 7]
- International Emergency Economic Powers Act, 50 U.S.C. §§ 1701–1708.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter35&edition=prelim> [Chapter 15]
- Judicial Conference of the United States — 2024 case-assignment policy materials.
<https://www.uscourts.gov/news/2024/03/12/judicial-conference-approves-policy-promote-random-case-assignment> [Chapter 4]
- Medill Local News Initiative — State of Local News 2025.
<https://www.medill.northwestern.edu/news/2025/news-deserts-hit-new-high-and-50-million-have-limited-access-to-local-news-study-finds.html> [Chapter 12]
- Meta — More Speech and Fewer Mistakes, Jan. 7, 2025. <https://about.fb.com/news/2025/01/meta-more-speech-fewer-mistakes/> [Chapter 11]
- Michigan Department of State / certified results materials — 2016 presidential result.
<https://www.michigan.gov/sos/elections/election-results-and-data> [Chapter 17]
- Mike Pence — Statement on the Electoral College Certification Process, Jan. 6, 2021.
<https://www.presidency.ucsb.edu/documents/statement-vice-president-mike-pence-the-electoral-college-certification-process> [Chapter 19]
- National Archives — 2016 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2016> [Chapters 17, 23]
- National Archives — 2020 Electoral College Results. <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2020> [Chapters 19, 23, 24]
- National Archives — 2020 Presidential Election Unofficial Certificates.
<https://www.archives.gov/foia/2020-presidential-election-unofficial-certificates> [Chapter 19]
- National Archives, “2024 Electoral College Results.” <https://www.archives.gov/electoral-college/2024> [Chapters 1, 24]
- National Conference of State Legislatures — State Primaries Toolkit, updated June 5, 2026.
<https://www.ncsl.org/elections-and-campaigns/state-primaries-toolkit> [Chapter 6]
- National Conference of State Legislatures — State Primary Election Types, updated May 19, 2026.
<https://www.ncsl.org/elections-and-campaigns/state-primary-election-types> [Chapter 6]
- National Emergencies Act, 50 U.S.C. §§ 1601–1651.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@title50/chapter34&edition=prelim> [Chapter 15]
- National Labor Relations Board — FY2024 representation-petition data. <https://www.nlr.gov/news-outreach/news-story/union-petitions-filed-with-nlr-double-since-fy-2021-up-27-since-fy-2023> [Chapter 7]
- National Labor Relations Board — FY2025 Performance and Accountability Report.
<https://www.nlr.gov/sites/default/files/attachments/pages/node-130/nlr-fy2025-par.pdf> [Chapter 7]
- National Voter Registration Act of 1993. <https://www.justice.gov/crt/national-voter-registration-act-1993-nvra> [Chapter 5]
- Ninth Circuit — Newsom v. Trump, stay opinion, June 19, 2025.
<https://cdn.ca9.uscourts.gov/datastore/opinions/2025/06/19/25-3727.pdf> [Chapters 15, 21, 22]
- Northern District of California — Newsom v. Trump, Opinion Granting Injunctive Relief, Sept. 2, 2025. <https://cand.uscourts.gov/sites/default/files/wp-content/uploads/Newsom-v-Trump-176-PCA-Order-Granting-Injunctive-Relief.pdf> [Chapter 21]
- Office of Legal Counsel — Authority to Obtain and Share Statewide Voter Roll Data, May 12, 2026.
<https://www.justice.gov/olc/media/1440346/dl> [Chapter 5]
- Office of Personnel Management — Federal Workforce Data: Workforce Changes.
<https://data.opm.gov/explore-data/analytics/workforce-changes> [Chapter 13]
- Office of Personnel Management — Federal Workforce Data: Workforce Size & Composition.
<https://data.opm.gov/explore-data/analytics/workforce-size-and-composition> [Chapter 13]

- Office of Personnel Management — Memorandum implementing Executive Order 14410, June 8, 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/chcoc/latest-memos/opm-memo-re-executive-order-implementing-schedule-policycareer-in-the-excepted-service.pdf> [Chapter 13]
- Office of Personnel Management — PLUM Reporting / Government-Wide Limitations, 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/about-us/open-government/plum-reporting/government-wide-limitations/> [Chapter 13]
- Office of Personnel Management — PLUM Reporting. <https://www.opm.gov/about-us/open-government/plum-reporting/> [Chapter 14]
- Office of Personnel Management — Schedule Policy/Career Final Rule materials, Feb. 2026. <https://www.opm.gov/news/news-releases/opm-finalizes-schedule-policycareer-rule-to-strengthen-accountability/> [Chapter 13]
- Office of Personnel Management — Schedule Policy/Career. <https://www.opm.gov/policy-data-oversight/hiring-information/hiring-authorities/schedule-policycareer/> [Chapter 13]
- Office of the Director of National Intelligence — Assessing Russian Activities and Intentions in Recent U.S. Elections, Jan. 6, 2017. https://www.dni.gov/files/documents/ICA_2017_01.pdf [Chapter 17]
- Opportunity Insights — Changing Opportunity, Quarterly Journal of Economics, 2026. <https://opportunityinsights.org/paper/changingopportunity/> [Chapter 8]
- OSCE/ODIHR — United States 2024 General Elections Final Report, Apr. 11, 2025. <https://odihr.osce.org/odihr/589239> [Chapter 24]
- Pew Research Center — An Examination of the 2016 Electorate, Based on Validated Voters. <https://www.pewresearch.org/politics/2018/08/09/an-examination-of-the-2016-electorate-based-on-validated-voters/> [Chapter 17]
- Pew Research Center — Multiple indicators show a decline in the health of America’s democracy in 2025, Apr. 15, 2026. <https://www.pewresearch.org/short-reads/2026/04/15/multiple-indicators-show-a-decline-in-the-health-of-americas-democracy-in-2025/> [Chapter 24]
- Pew Research Center — News Influencers Fact Sheet, 2025. <https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/fact-sheet/news-influencers-fact-sheet/> [Chapter 11]
- Pew Research Center — Religion, partisanship and ideology, Feb. 26, 2025. <https://www.pewresearch.org/religion/2025/02/26/religion-partisanship-and-ideology/> [Chapter 7]
- Pew Research Center — Social Media and News Fact Sheet, Sept. 25, 2025. <https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/fact-sheet/social-media-and-news-fact-sheet/> [Chapter 11]
- Pew Research Center — The Political Gap in Americans’ News Sources, June 10, 2025. <https://www.pewresearch.org/journalism/2025/06/10/the-political-gap-in-americans-news-sources/> [Chapter 11]
- Project 2025 — Mandate for Leadership: The Conservative Promise. https://static.project2025.org/2025_MandateForLeadership_FULL.pdf [Chapter 20]
- Public Law 117-328 — Electoral Count Reform and Presidential Transition Improvement Act provisions. <https://www.congress.gov/117/plaws/publ328/PLAW-117publ328.pdf> [Chapters 19, 23, 24]
- Public Law 119-28, Rescissions Act of 2025. <https://www.congress.gov/119/plaws/publ28/PLAW-119publ28.pdf> [Chapter 2]
- Rescissions Act of 2025 — Public Law text. <https://www.congress.gov/bill/119th-congress/house-bill/4/text> [Chapter 12]
- Smithsonian Institution — Our Organization. <https://www.si.edu/about/organization> [Chapter 12]
- Smithsonian Institution — Statement on Board of Regents and Secretary Governance, June 9, 2025. <https://www.si.edu/newsdesk/releases/smithsonian-statement> [Chapter 12]
- Smithsonian Institution — The Smithsonian Board of Regents, Apr. 13, 2026. <https://www.si.edu/newsdesk/factsheets/smithsonian-board-regents> [Chapter 12]
- Supreme Court docket — Republican National Committee v. Mi Familia Vota, No. 25-1017. <https://www.supremecourt.gov/docket/docketfiles/html/public/25-1017.html> [Chapter 5]
- Supreme Court of the United States, Arizona v. United States, 567 U.S. 387 (2012). <https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/11-182b5e1.pdf> [Chapter 3]
- Supreme Court of the United States, Department of State v. AIDS Vaccine Advocacy Coalition, No. 25A269, stay order, Sept. 26, 2025. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/25a269_bp7c.pdf [Chapter 2]
- Supreme Court of the United States, Dobbs v. Jackson Women’s Health Organization, 597 U.S. 215 (2022). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/21pdf/19-1392_6j37.pdf [Chapter 3]
- Supreme Court of the United States, Murphy v. NCAA, 584 U.S. 453 (2018). https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/16-476_dbfi.pdf [Chapter 3]

- Supreme Court of the United States, *NFIB v. Sebelius*, 567 U.S. 519 (2012).
<https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/11-393c3a2.pdf> [Chapter 3]
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Trump v. Barbara*, No. 25-365 (June 30, 2026).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_new_51f6.pdf [Chapter 3]
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Trump v. CASA, Inc.* (2025).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_g314.pdf [Chapters 3, 4]
- Supreme Court of the United States, *Trump v. Slaughter*, No. 25-332 (June 29, 2026).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-332_qn12.pdf [Chapters 4, 14, 21, 22]
- Supreme Court — *Arizona v. Inter Tribal Council of Arizona, Inc.*, 570 U.S. 1 (2013).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/12pdf/12-71_7148.pdf [Chapter 5]
- Supreme Court — *California Democratic Party v. Jones*, 530 U.S. 567 (2000).
<https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/530/567/> [Chapter 6]
- Supreme Court — *Citizens United v. Federal Election Commission*, 558 U.S. 310 (2010).
<https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/09pdf/08-205.pdf> [Chapter 9]
- Supreme Court — *Corner Post, Inc. v. Board of Governors*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-1008_1b82.pdf [Chapter 4]
- Supreme Court — *Crawford v. Marion County Election Board*, 553 U.S. 181 (2008).
<https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/07pdf/07-21.pdf> [Chapter 5]
- Supreme Court — *Janus v. AFSCME*, 585 U.S. 878 (2018).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/16-1466_2b3j.pdf [Chapter 7]
- Supreme Court — *Learning Resources, Inc. v. Trump / Trump v. V.O.S. Selections*, Feb. 20, 2026.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-1287_4gcj.pdf [Chapter 15]
- Supreme Court — *Loper Bright Enterprises v. Raimondo*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-451_7m58.pdf [Chapters 4, 13]
- Supreme Court — *Louisiana v. Callais* (Apr. 29, 2026).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-109_2103.pdf [Chapter 6]
- Supreme Court — *McCutcheon v. Federal Election Commission*, 572 U.S. 185 (2014).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/13pdf/12-536_e1pf.pdf [Chapter 9]
- Supreme Court — *Moody v. NetChoice / NetChoice v. Paxton*, 603 U.S. 707 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-277_d18f.pdf [Chapter 11]
- Supreme Court — *Murthy v. Missouri*, 603 U.S. 43 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/23-411_3dq3.pdf [Chapter 11]
- Supreme Court — *National Republican Senatorial Committee v. Federal Election Commission*, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/24-621_h315.pdf [Chapter 9]
- Supreme Court — *NLRB v. Noel Canning*, 573 U.S. 513 (2014).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/13pdf/12-1281_bodg.pdf [Chapter 14]
- Supreme Court — *NRA v. Vullo*, 602 U.S. 175 (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-842_6kg7.pdf [Chapter 11]
- Supreme Court — *Rucho v. Common Cause*, 588 U.S. 684 (2019).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/18pdf/18-422_901.pdf [Chapter 6]
- Supreme Court — *SEC v. Jarkesy*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/22-859_1924.pdf [Chapter 4]
- Supreme Court — Slip Opinions, October Term 2025.
<https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/slipopinion/25> [Chapter 24]
- Supreme Court — *Tashjian v. Republican Party of Connecticut*, 479 U.S. 208 (1986).
<https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/479/208/> [Chapter 6]
- Supreme Court — *Texas v. Pennsylvania*, Dec. 11, 2020 order.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/orders/courtorders/121202r_p86o.pdf [Chapter 19]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. American Federation of Government Employees*, July 8, 2025.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a1174_h3ci.pdf [Chapter 13]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Barbara*, June 30, 2026. https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25-365_4hdj.pdf [Chapters 21, 22, 24]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. CASA*, June 27, 2025.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/24pdf/24a884_new_5426.pdf [Chapters 21, 22]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Cook*, June 29, 2026. <https://www.supremecourt.gov/> [Chapter 21]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Cook*, June 29, 2026.
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/25pdf/25a312_5468.pdf [Chapters 4, 14, 22]
- Supreme Court — *Trump v. Hawaii*, 585 U.S. 667 (2018).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/17pdf/17-965_h315.pdf [Chapter 18]

- Supreme Court — *Trump v. United States*, 603 U.S. ____ (2024).
https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/23pdf/23-939_e2pg.pdf [Chapters 4, 16]
- Supreme Court — *Washington State Grange v. Washington State Republican Party*, 552 U.S. 442 (2008). <https://supreme.justia.com/cases/federal/us/552/442/> [Chapter 6]
- Texas Legislature — Redistricting, Plan C2333 status for 2026 elections.
<https://redistricting.capitol.texas.gov/> [Chapter 6]
- Trump White House Archive — Executive Order 13957, Creating Schedule F, Oct. 21, 2020.
<https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/executive-order-creating-schedule-f-excepted-service/> [Chapters 18, 20]
- U.S. Census Bureau — 2024 Presidential Election Voting and Registration Tables.
<https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2025/2024-presidential-election-voting-registration-tables.html> [Chapter 8]
- U.S. Census Bureau — Civic Engagement and Volunteering Supplement, Nov. 19, 2024.
<https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2024/civic-engagement-volunteering-supplement.html> [Chapter 7]
- U.S. Census Bureau — Civic engagement and volunteerism research, Nov. 2024.
<https://www.census.gov/library/stories/2024/11/civic-engagement-and-volunteerism.html> [Chapter 7]
- U.S. Census Bureau — Income in the United States: 2024.
<https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2025/demo/p60-286.html> [Chapter 8]
- U.S. Census Bureau — Income, Poverty and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2024.
<https://www.census.gov/newsroom/press-releases/2025/income-poverty-health-insurance-coverage.html> [Chapter 8]
- U.S. Census Bureau — Opportunity Atlas Data Tables.
<https://www.census.gov/programs-surveys/ces/data/public-use-data/opportunity-atlas-data-tables.html> [Chapter 8]
- U.S. Census Bureau, Government Organization Summary Report: 2022 & 2025.
<https://www.census.gov/library/publications/2026/econ/govtorg2225.html> [Chapter 3]
- U.S. Census Bureau, QuickFacts / Vintage 2025 population estimates.
<https://www.census.gov/quickfacts/> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Census Bureau, “2020 Census Apportionment Results.”
<https://www.census.gov/data/tables/2020/dec/2020-apportionment-data.html> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Census Bureau, “Computing Apportionment.”
<https://www.census.gov/topics/public-sector/congressional-apportionment/about/computing.html> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Code — 5 U.S.C. § 706. <https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?edition=prelim&num=0&req=granuleid%3AUSC-prelim-titles-section706> [Chapter 13]
- U.S. Code — Federal Vacancies Reform Act, 5 U.S.C. §§ 3345-3349d.
<https://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?path=/prelim@titles/part3/subpartB/chapter33/subchapter3&edition=prelim> [Chapter 14]
- U.S. Congress, Presidential Vacancy and Disability: The Twenty-Fifth Amendment resources.
<https://www.congress.gov/> [Chapter 2]
- U.S. Constitution and Constitution Annotated — Article III, judicial power, appointments, impeachment, separation of powers. <https://constitution.congress.gov/> [Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7]
- U.S. Constitution — Article II, Section 2, pardon power.
<https://constitution.congress.gov/constitution/article-2/> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Department of Education — History Rocks! 50-State Tour Completion, June 17, 2026.
<https://www.ed.gov/about/news/press-release/us-department-of-education-concludes-50-state-history-rocks-tour-commemorate-americas-250th-birthday> [Chapter 12]
- U.S. Department of Education — Presidential 1776 Award, Dec. 15, 2025.
<https://www.ed.gov/about/news/press-release/us-department-of-education-launches-presidential-1776-award-celebrate-americas-semiquincentennial> [Chapter 12]
- U.S. Department of Justice / Federal Trade Commission — 2023 Merger Guidelines.
<https://www.justice.gov/atr/2023-merger-guidelines> [Chapter 10]
- U.S. Department of Justice — AI-enhanced Russian bot farm disruption, July 9, 2024.
<https://www.justice.gov/usao-ndil/pr/justice-department-leads-efforts-among-federal-international-and-private-sector> [Chapter 11]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Doppelganger disruption, Sept. 4, 2024. <https://www.justice.gov/usao-edpa/pr/justice-department-disrupts-covert-russian-government-sponsored-foreign-malign> [Chapter 11]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Freedom of Information Act. <https://www.justice.gov/oip/freedom-information-act-5-usc-552> [Chapter 22]

- U.S. Department of Justice — Google Ad Tech monopolization case.
<https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/departments-justice-prevails-landmark-antitrust-case-against-google> [Chapter 10]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Justice Manual § 1-8.600, Communications with the White House.
<https://www.justice.gov/jm/jm-1-8000-congressional-relations> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Justice Manual § 9-27, Principles of Federal Prosecution.
<https://www.justice.gov/jm/jm-9-27000-principles-federal-prosecution> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Office of the Pardon Attorney. <https://www.justice.gov/pardon> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Significant Remedies Against Google, Sept. 2, 2025.
<https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/departments-justice-wins-significant-remedies-against-google> [Chapter 10]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Special Counsel Jack Smith archive and Final Report, Volume One, Jan. 2025. <https://www.justice.gov/archives/sco-smith> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Department of Justice — U.S. and Plaintiff States v. Google LLC [Search].
<https://www.justice.gov/atr/case/us-and-plaintiff-states-v-google-llc> [Chapter 10]
- U.S. Department of Justice — Weaponization Working Group FACE Act report and press release, Apr. 14, 2026. <https://www.justice.gov/opa/pr/justice-department-reveals-biden-administrations-weaponization-federal-law-against-pro-life> [Chapter 16]
- U.S. Election Assistance Commission — 2024 Election Administration and Voting Survey.
<https://www.eac.gov/news/2025/06/30/us-election-assistance-commission-releases-2024-election-administration-and-voting> [Chapter 5]
- U.S. GAO, B-337581, Review of the President's June 3, 2025 Special Message.
<https://www.gao.gov/products/b-337581> [Chapter 2]
- U.S. House of Representatives, History, Art & Archives, “Determining Apportionment.”
<https://history.house.gov/Institution/Apportionment/Determining-Apportionment/> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. House of Representatives, History, Art & Archives, “Party Divisions.”
<https://history.house.gov/Institution/Party-Divisions/Party-Divisions/> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Senate Historical Office, “Equal State Representation.” <https://www.senate.gov/about/origins-foundations/senate-and-constitution/equal-state-representation.htm> [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Senate Roll Call Vote 125, May 18, 2026.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/voten192/vote_119_2_00125.htm [Chapter 2]
- U.S. Senate Roll Call Vote 526, Sept. 18, 2025.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/voten191/vote_119_1_00526.htm [Chapter 2]
- U.S. Senate Select Committee on Intelligence — Russian Active Measures Campaigns and Interference in the 2016 U.S. Election, Volume 5.
https://www.intelligence.senate.gov/sites/default/files/documents/report_volumes.pdf [Chapter 17]
- U.S. Senate — Civilian Executive Nominations Confirmed.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nom_conf.htm [Chapter 14]
- U.S. Senate — Cloture Motions, 119th Congress. <https://www.senate.gov/legislative/cloture/119.htm> [Chapter 14]
- U.S. Senate — Donald J. Trump Cabinet Nominations.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nominations/Trump_47_cabinet.htm [Chapter 14]
- U.S. Senate — Electoral objection roll calls, Jan. 6–7, 2021.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_lists/roll_call_vote_cfm.cfm?congress=117&session=1&vote=00001 [Chapter 19]
- U.S. Senate — historical nomination and roll-call records. <https://www.senate.gov/> [Chapter 23]
- U.S. Senate — Judicial nominations overview.
<https://www.senate.gov/about/powers-procedures/nominations/judicial-nominations-overview.htm> [Chapter 4]
- U.S. Senate — Lobbying Disclosure Act and Public Disclosure. <https://www.senate.gov/lobby/> [Chapter 9]
- U.S. Senate — Quarterly Reporting Requirements for Registered Lobbyists.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/Lobbying/Lobby_Disclosure_Act/5_Reports_by_Registered_Lobbyists.htm [Chapter 9]
- U.S. Senate — Second impeachment trial vote, Feb. 13, 2021.
https://www.senate.gov/legislative/LIS/roll_call_votes/voten171/vote_117_1_00059.htm [Chapter 19]

- U.S. Senate — Supreme Court nominations history.
<https://www.senate.gov/legislative/nominations/SupremeCourtNominations1789present.htm>
 [Chapter 4]
- U.S. Senate, Constitution of the United States.
https://www.senate.gov/civics/constitution_item/constitution.htm [Chapter 1]
- U.S. Senate, Impeachment Trials.
<https://www.senate.gov/about/powers-procedures/impeachment/impeachment-list.htm> [Chapter 2]
- United States v. Armstrong, 517 U.S. 456 (1996).
<https://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/boundvolumes/517bv.pdf> [Chapter 16]
- Voteview — Party Polarization and Party Unity series.
https://voteview.com/articles/party_polarization [Chapter 6]
- White House archive — Executive Order 13769, Jan. 27, 2017.
<https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/executive-order-protecting-nation-foreign-terrorist-entry-united-states/> [Chapter 18]
- White House archive — Proclamation Declaring a National Emergency Concerning the Southern Border, Feb. 15, 2019. <https://trumpwhitehouse.archives.gov/presidential-actions/presidential-proclamation-declaring-national-emergency-concerning-southern-border-united-states/> [Chapter 18]
- White House — Declaring a National Emergency at the Southern Border, Jan. 20, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/declaring-a-national-emergency-at-the-southern-border-of-the-united-states/> [Chapter 15]
- White House — Declaring a National Energy Emergency, Jan. 20, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/declaring-a-national-energy-emergency/> [Chapter 15]
- White House — Designation of Acting Cabinet and Cabinet-Level Positions, Jan. 20, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/designation-of-acting-leaders/>
 [Chapter 14]
- White House — Directing the Repeal of Unlawful Regulations, Apr. 9, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/04/directing-the-repeal-of-unlawful-regulations/> [Chapter 13]
- White House — DPA §303 determination on grid infrastructure and supply-chain capacity, Apr. 20, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/04/presidential-determination-pursuant-to-section-303-of-the-defense-production-act-of-1950-as-amended-on-grid-infrastructure-equipment-and-supply-chain-capacity/> [Chapter 15]
- White House — Ensuring Accountability for All Agencies, Feb. 18, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/02/ensuring-accountability-for-all-agencies/> [Chapters 20, 21]
- White House — Executive Order 14248, Preserving and Protecting the Integrity of American Elections, Mar. 25, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/03/preserving-and-protecting-the-integrity-of-american-elections/> [Chapter 5]
- White House — Executive Order 14253, Restoring Truth and Sanity to American History, Mar. 27, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/03/restoring-truth-and-sanity-to-american-history/> [Chapters 12, 21]
- White House — Executive Order 14257, reciprocal tariff emergency, Apr. 2, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/04/regulating-imports-with-a-reciprocal-tariff-to-rectify-trade-practices-that-contribute-to-large-and-persistent-annual-united-states-goods-trade-deficits/> [Chapter 15]
- White House — Executive Order 14317, Creating Schedule G, July 17, 2025.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/07/creating-schedule-g-in-the-excepted-service/> [Chapters 14, 20, 21]
- White House — Executive Order 14399, Ensuring Citizenship Verification and Integrity in Federal Elections, Mar. 31, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/03/ensuring-citizenship-verification-and-integrity-in-federal-elections/> [Chapter 5]
- White House — Executive Order 14410, Implementing Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026.
<https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/06/implementing-schedule-policy-career-in-the-excepted-service/> [Chapters 20, 21]
- White House — Executive Order 14416, Restoring Trust in the Smithsonian Institution, July 24, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2026/07/restoring-trust-in-the-smithsonian-institution-eo61/> [Chapters 12, 21]
- White House — Executive Order, Ending the Weaponization of the Federal Government, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/ending-the-weaponization-of-the-federal-government/> [Chapter 16]

- White House — Fact Sheet on Schedule Policy/Career, June 3, 2026. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/fact-sheets/2026/06/fact-sheet-president-donald-j-trump-increases-accountability-in-the-federal-workforce/> [Chapters 20, 21]
- White House — Implementing the President's Department of Government Efficiency Workforce Optimization Initiative, Feb. 11, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/02/implementing-the-presidents-department-of-government-efficiency-workforce-optimization-initiative/> [Chapter 20]
- White House — January 6 Pardons and Commutations Proclamation, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/granting-pardons-and-commutation-of-sentences-for-certain-offenses-relating-to-the-events-at-or-near-the-united-states-capitol-on-january-6-2021/> [Chapter 16]
- White House — Regulatory Freeze Pending Review, Jan. 20, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/regulatory-freeze-pending-review/> [Chapter 13]
- White House — Unleashing Prosperity Through Deregulation, Jan. 31, 2025. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/presidential-actions/2025/01/unleashing-prosperity-through-deregulation/> [Chapter 13]
- YouTube — U.S. Election Misinformation Policy Update, June 2, 2023. <https://blog.youtube/inside-youtube/us-election-misinformation-update-2023/> [Chapter 11]



American democracy does not fail only when elections disappear. It can erode while elections remain, while institutions continue to function in form, and while citizens still speak in the language of freedom. The deeper question is whether a democracy retains the capacity to correct itself.

In *Of Democracy in America*, Noosophe AI examines the contemporary United States in the spirit of Tocqueville, not to imitate his prose, but to renew his inquiry. This book studies institutions, parties, courts, elections, the presidency, money, media, federalism, and the habits of democratic life in order to ask a harder question than whether American democracy is healthy or sick: can it still be corrected?

Donald Trump appears here not as the whole story, but as the great stress test of the regime. Through him, the book investigates how democratic systems absorb shock, conceal weakness, harden asymmetry, and sometimes discover their own limits.

At the center of the inquiry is a single concept: democratic *corrigibility* — the ability of a political order to detect error, confront power, repair damage, reverse course, and preserve both self-government and the capacity to govern.

